



Patry Parveth 125
Ricky L. Whitney

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

BY

RUTH SHEPARD PHELPS

ASSISTANT PROFESSOR OF ITALIAN IN THE UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA

GINN AND COMPANY

BOSTON • NEW YORK • CHICAGO • LONDON
ATLANTA • DALLAS • COLUMBUS • SAN FRANCISCO

COPYRIGHT, 1917, BY
RUTH SHEPARD PHELPS

ALL RIGHTS RESERVED

217.5

The Athenæum Press
GINN AND COMPANY · PRO-
PRIETORS · BOSTON · U.S.A.

PREFACE

What is new in this work is chiefly the division and arrangement of topics, though the Introduction assembles material upon pronunciation and versification not hitherto brought together in English, and there is some novelty in subject matter in the exercises for translation. The plan of the book has the merit of having grown directly out of the needs of the classroom. The arrangement is such, it is hoped, as will make the book equally serviceable for the classroom and for private study, and will give it certain of the advantages of both "first book" and reference grammar.

The beginning has been deliberately made very easy. Even the definite article, with which most Italian grammars naturally begin, has been deferred in favor of the indefinite, which, as it lacks a plural, has fewer forms itself and does not immediately require the plural of nouns. This leaves the attention free to center upon the single new principle of the "*s* impure." The definite article with its more complicated forms is not introduced until the fourth lesson, and the main body of rules governing its syntax not until the twenty-second. The plural of nouns is treated in its simpler aspects in the third lesson, and extensively in the thirtieth.

This method of breaking up the more difficult subjects and presenting them at first piecemeal, reserving more thorough-going treatment for a later chapter, has been followed throughout. The subjunctive, for example, is introduced one rule at a time, each illustrated by a sentence or two in all subsequent exercises, so that its use in a few standard cases at least will become automatic, and the student will not fall into the way of regarding it as an unusual, unnatural tense, reserved for special occasions. The subject is

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

treated as a whole in Lesson XXVIII. Many of the idiomatic uses of *da*, likewise, are introduced early, although the general treatment of prepositions, including a great number of idioms constructed by means of them, is one of the last in the book. The verbs *essere* and *avere*, except for the indispensable present indicative, are postponed until the regular verbs have been completely learned. The subject of conjunctive pronouns, sometimes presented in a single lesson, is here divided among four, not consecutive, while sentences in the intervening and subsequent exercises continue practice upon them.

In consequence of this method of introducing a working knowledge of many difficult principles early, while leaving their more complicated treatment for later chapters, the book can be divided rather easily, if desired, into first and second year work. Twenty-seven lessons, let us say, would introduce more or less fully all the more important principles, and cover completely the subject of conjunctive pronouns. These lessons, with the irregular verbs of the remaining lessons, might constitute the first year's work, leaving twelve lessons of more complicated questions of syntax for the second year.

It has not always seemed desirable to be entirely consistent in this breaking up of the more difficult subjects; logical arrangement has sometimes seemed to require, as in the case of the person in address, a complete treatment at first. Where this has been the case, the paragraphs dealing with the more subtle points are marked with a star, and may be assigned merely to be read over, or omitted altogether, as the exercises do not illustrate them. In any case the index makes scattered material readily available.

As to the exercises, the older custom has been observed of making them accompany the lessons they illustrate, in the belief that this arrangement keeps the student better in mind of all the work he has done and facilitates review. In designing the work which illustrates the new principles as they are introduced, the desirability of continuing practice on principles already acquired has been kept

PREFACE

steadily in mind. If the instructor prefers fewer sentences for translation, the assignment may be limited to those which illustrate the current lesson. Where the vocabulary seems long, there will usually be found a large proportion of those words whose meaning can be guessed at a glance, and far more of them occur in the paragraphs of Italian reading matter than in the sentences for translation. The paragraphs of Italian on which the exercises for translation are based are in small part original, in large part borrowed or adapted from Italian school readers designed for the lower grades. So they furnish practice from the first in reading connected prose, offer a good practical vocabulary, and deal attractively with Italian home and school life, and the history of modern Italy. Thanks are due to Messrs. Bemporad e Figlio for permission to use selections from the readers *Il mondo nuovo* by Renato Fucini and two *Libri di lettura* by Neretti and Gironi, and to the Società Laziale Editrice of Rome for permission to make similar use of paragraphs from *La terza Italia* in Lessons XXVIII and XXIX. These last, it may to-day be necessary to add, were not selected with any idea of influencing American sentiment, but to show what topics were agitating the Italian mind in the last days before the Great War broke out.

The series of dialogues in the latter part of the book offers a little practice in familiar idiom; they are especially intended for travelers, as they include a good many words useful in the shops and hotels, on the railway, and so on. They are composed in a Tuscan too colloquial to form the basis of exercises, and may be entirely omitted at the pleasure of the instructor.

The third person as the person of address in ordinary intercourse, being the only one for which most travelers have occasion, is introduced very early, before the habit of the true second person is acquired. Accordingly, in the exercises it is the latter which is made to seem the unusual form.

Questions of pronunciation, accent, orthography, and the like are treated in the Introduction, along with an outline of the Italian

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

system of versification and some hints as to the reading of Italian poetry. As the pronunciation cannot be perfectly represented for English readers by any system of equivalent spellings, the instructor will find it necessary to supplement *viva voce* what is said here.

Of the many works that have been consulted in the preparation of this book, those which have been most closely followed are R. Fornaciari's *Grammatica italiana dell' uso moderno*, Parts I and II, and, especially for the Introduction, *Ortoepia e ortografia italiana moderna*, by G. Malagòli. The dictionaries of Edgren and Petrocchi have been constantly consulted; suggestions as to material and arrangement have been gained from the Italian work of Morandi and Cappuccini and from my American predecessors in this field, and for several hints as to Tuscan idiom I am indebted to the grammars of N. Orlandi and Alina Vannini. And I desire to thank Professor A. A. Livingston of Columbia University for kindly undertaking the laborious task of reading this book in proof, and for his very valuable suggestions on many points.

UNIVERSITY OF MINNESOTA

RUTH SHEPARD PHELPS

CONTENTS

	PAGE
INTRODUCTION	
Alphabet	1
Pronunciation	2
Syllabification	15
Tonic Accent	15
Graphic Accents	19
Elision	20
Truncation	22
Variant Forms of Words	24
Capitalization	25
Archaic and Poetic Forms	26
Versification	28
 LESSONS	
I. Indefinite Article	33
II. Present of <i>avere</i> and <i>essere</i> . Pronouns in Address	36
III. Plural of Nouns. Future Indicative	39
IV. Definite Article. Past Absolute Indicative	41
V. Contraction of Article. Past Future	45
VI. Gender of Nouns	48
VII. Adjectives and Adverbs	51
VIII. Regular Verbs	58
IX. Conjunctive Pronouns	63
X. <i>Essere</i> . The Passive Voice	67
XI. Conjunctives Continued. Auxiliaries with Intransitive Verbs	71
XII. Reflexive Verbs	76
XIII. Possessives	81
XIV. Changes of Letters in Regular Verbs. Relative Pronouns	86
XV. The Comparative	90
XVI. The Verb <i>avere</i>	95

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

LESSONS	PAGE
XVII. Two Conjunctive Objects. Conjunctive Adverbs . . .	100
XVIII. Irregular Verbs	103
XIX. <i>Dare, sapere, volere</i>	107
XX. Disjunctives. <i>Venire</i>	111
XXI. Tenses. Verb and Subject	117
XXII. Definite Article. <i>Andare</i> . L'Arrivo	126
XXIII. Cardinal Numerals. <i>Morire</i>	135
XXIV. Ordinal Numerals, Collectives, etc. <i>Parere</i>	142
XXV. Indefinite Article. <i>Fare</i> . Dialogue: L'Albergo . .	149
XXVI. Impersonal Verbs. <i>Stare</i>	155
XXVII. Conjunctive with Dependent Infinitive. <i>Potere</i> . Dia- logue: Dalla sarta	160
XXVIII. The Subjunctive. <i>Dolere</i>	164
XXIX. The Infinitive. <i>Dire</i>	170
XXX. Number of Nouns. <i>Piacere</i>	175
XXXI. Modal Auxiliaries. <i>Dovere</i> . Dialogue: Dal sarto .	184
XXXII. Relative, Demonstrative, and Interrogative Pro- nouns. <i>Udire</i>	190
XXXIII. Participles. <i>Porre</i> . Dialogue: Dal calzolaio . .	196
XXXIV. Gender of Nouns. <i>Uscire</i>	203
XXXV. Indefinites. <i>Scegliere</i> . L'Automobile	209
XXXVI. Adverbs. <i>Valere</i>	220
XXXVII. Prepositions. Dialogue: Dalla modista	232
XXXVIII. Augmentatives and Diminutives. Dialogue: Si fanno le compre	246
XXXIX. Conjunctions and Interjections	251
 ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS	 261
ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY	275
ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY	301
INDEX	323

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

INTRODUCTION

I. THE ALPHABET

1. The Italian alphabet is composed of twenty-one letters. Those whose names end in *-a* are of feminine, those in *-e* of common, and the others of masculine gender; but they all may be treated as feminine, to agree with *lettera* understood. They do not change for the plural. Their Italian names are —

LETTERS	ITALIAN NAMES	PRONUNCIATION	LETTERS	ITALIAN NAMES	PRONUNCIATION
a	a	(ah)	n	enne	(ennay)
b	bi	(bee)	o	o	(toll)
c	ci	(cheat)	p	pi	(pea)
d	di	(Dee)	q	cu	(coo)
e	e	(ale)	r	erre	(erray)
f	effe	(effay)	s	esse	(essay)
g	gi	(genius)	t	ti	(tea)
h	acca	(ahkkah)	u	u	(ooze)
i	i	(machine)	v	vu	(voodoo)
l	elle	(ellay)	z	zeta	(dzayta)
m	emme	(emmay)			

a. The letter *j* (*i lungo*) exists, but only as a diacritical mark used by some writers to indicate the use of *i* as semivowel (cf. 4): *giojelli*, *operajo*; or instead of *ii*: *desiderj*; or for the spelling of foreign words.

b. The following consonants also exist in Italian, for the spelling of foreign words: *k* (*cappa*), *w* (*doppio vu*), *y* (*ipsilon* or *i greco*), and *x* (*icse* or *ics*).

II. PRONUNCIATION OF THE LETTERS

2. The Vowel Sounds. There are seven vowel sounds in Italian, as follows :

a = ah	fa
e (close) = <i>ale</i>	pepe
e (open) = <i>men</i>	bella
i = <i>machine</i>	Mimi
o (close) = <i>low</i>	solò
o (open) = <i>ought</i>	sò
u = <i>moon</i>	luna

a. As the rules given (cf. 3) for determining the close and open **e** and **o**, besides being difficult to remember, do not cover all cases, these vowels, when accented, will be marked in this book (as indicated above) when appearing in the text for the first time, in the special vocabularies, and in the complete vocabulary at the end of the volume.

b. People accustomed to speak English incline to mispronounce **a**, **i**, and **u** in certain combinations, slackening and dulling their quality by analogy with English; this tendency is apparent in **a** when final, as in **America**, and in **i** and **u** when followed by two or more consonants, or by **l** or **r** when accented in the antepenult. Thus **i** in **virtù** 'virtue,' **ninfa** 'nymph,' **mirra** 'myrrh,' **principe** 'prince,' is slackened to the *i* of 'virile'; **u** in **singulto** 'sob,' **Bulgaro** 'Bulgarian,' **giunto** 'arrived,' to the *u* of 'pull.' This tendency should be avoided, and the sound of these vowels kept identical in all combinations.

3. Close and Open E and O. A few rules apply alike to both, but there are numerous special rules for each.

a. Both are Close when followed by **gn**, **lm**, **mm**, **nn** (*except* **donna** 'woman,' **monna** 'Lady,' **nonno** 'grandfather').
 EXAMPLES : **pegno** 'pledge,' **sogno** 'dream,' **elmo** 'helmet,' **olmo** 'elm,' **vendemmia** 'vintage,' **sommo** 'supreme,' **venni** 'I came.'

b. Both are Open —

1. When followed by **ns, q, str,** or (nearly always) a single consonant + two vowels. **EXAMPLES:** **pēns**o 'I think,' **cōn**sole 'consul,' **ē**quo 'equal,' **nō**stro 'our,' **finē**stra 'window,' **Venē**zia 'Venice,' **commē**dia 'comedy,' **purgatō**rio 'purgatory,' **collē**gio 'college.'

2. When preceded by a consonant + **l**: **glō**bo 'globe,' **splē**ndido 'splendid.'

3. *Contrary to rules*, in so-called 'learned' words, not in common use by the people at large: **precō**ce 'precocious,' **testimō**ne 'witness,' **alfabē**to 'alphabet,' **dittō**ngo 'diphthong,' **napoleō**nico 'Napoleonic,' **recō**ndito 'recondite,' **Califō**rnia.

c. E is Close (Lat. ĭ, ē, oe > It. e) —

1. In unaccented syllables: **Pē**truccio; **cō**mē 'like.'

2. In monosyllables and oxytones ending in **e**: **mercē** 'thanks to,' **rē** 'King.' **EXCEPTIONS:** **chē**! 'what!' and other interjections; **è** 'is,' **rē** (musical note), **diē** 'he gave,' **piē** 'foot,' and foreign nouns like **caffē** 'coffee,' **Noē** 'Noah.'

3. In the endings **-ē**fice, **-ē**ggio, **-ē**mbro, **-ē**sco **-a**, **-ē**se, **-ē**simo (in nouns), **-ē**ssa, **-ē**to (in collectives), **-ē**tto **-a** (cf. *d*, 6), **-ē**vole, **-mē**te, and **-mē**to. **EXAMPLES:** **orē**fice 'goldsmith,' **passē**ggio 'walk,' **mē**mbro 'member,' **Francē**sco 'Francis,' **mē**se 'month,' **battē**simo 'baptism,' **contē**ssa 'countess,' **olivē**to 'olive-grove,' **allegrē**tto 'cheerful,' **onorē**vole 'honorable,' **facilē**mente 'easily,' **appartamē**to 'apartment.'

4. Before **cc, ce, pp, zz** (*except* **ē**cco 'here is,' **spē**cchio 'mirror,' **vē**ecchio 'old,' **Giusep**pe 'Joseph,' **sē**ppe 'he knew,' **mē**zzo 'half,' **pē**zzo 'piece,' **prē**zzo 'price,' and a few others). **EXAMPLES:** **zē**cca 'mint,' **orē**cchio 'ear,' **in**vēce 'instead,' **cē**ppi 'fettters,' **ricchē**zza 'richness.'

5. In the pronouns **mē** 'me,' **nē** 'of it,' **tē** 'thee,' **gliē** 'to her'; **egli**, **ei**, 'he'; **quē**sto 'this,' **quē**llo 'that'; **stē**sso, **medē**simo, 'self.'

6. In the contracted prepositions **nello** 'in the,' **dello** 'of the,' etc.; in the conjunctions **e** 'and,' **che** 'that,' **finchè** 'as long as,' **mentre** 'while,' **perchè** 'why,' **se** 'if,' etc.; in the adverbs **dentro** 'within,' **meno** 'less,' **spesso** 'often'; in the numerals **tre** 'three,' **trēdici** 'thirteen,' **sēdici** 'sixteen,' **vēnti** 'twenty,' **trēnta** 'thirty.'

7. In verbs: whenever accented in the infinitive, past descriptive, future, past absolute, and past subjunctive; in the second plural of the present indicative and imperative; in the second singular and first and second plural of the past future, and in past absolutes and past participles in **-ēsī** and **-ēsō -a**, except **chiēsī** 'I asked' and its compounds.

d. E is Open (*Lat.* ĕ, *ae* > *It.* iē, ē) —

1. When preceded by **i**, or when **i** has been dropped from before it: **ciēco** 'blind,' **sēte** (for **siēte**) 'you are.'

2. In the endings **-ello -a** (*except* **capello** 'hair' and **stella** 'star'), **-ēma**, **-ēndo -a** (*except* **vēndo** 'I sell,' **scēndo** 'I descend'), **-ēnse**, **-ēnte -o -i -a**, **-lēnto**, **-ēnza**, **-ēro** (in nouns of more than two syllables), **-ēšimo** (in numerals). EXAMPLES: **bello** 'beautiful,' **problēma** 'problem,' **bēnda** 'band,' **estēnse** 'of Este,' **Benevēnto**, **vivēnte** 'living,' **sonnolēnto** 'somnolent,' **prudēnza** 'prudence,' **im-
pēro** 'empire,' **ventēšimo** 'twentieth.'

3. When followed by a single vowel: **sēi** 'six,' **ebvēro** 'Hebrew.'

4. In foreign nouns, when final and accented: **Moišē** 'Moses,' **tē** 'tea.'

5. In the adverbs **bēne** 'well,' **cēрто** 'surely,' **mēglio** 'better,' **pēggio** 'worse,' **prēssō** 'near,' **sēmpre** 'always,' **vērso** 'towards,' in the preposition **sēnza** 'without,' and in the numerals **tērzo** 'third,' **sēsto** 'sixth,' **sētte** 'seven,' **sēttimo** 'seventh.'

6. In verbs: in past absolutes in **-ētti** and past participles in **-ēnto** and **-ētto**; in present participles in **-ēndo** and **-ēnte**; in the first and third singular and third plural of the past future; in **chiēsī** and its compounds, and **ēbbi** 'I had,' **ēbbe** 'he had,' **ēbbero**

'they had.' EXAMPLES: *credetti* 'I believed,' *attento* 'attentive,' *letto* 'read,' *potrei* 'I might,' *avrebbe* 'he would have,' *saprebbero* 'they would know.'

e. The following are a few of the words which, although spelled alike, differ in meaning according as the *e* is close or open :

<i>acçetta</i> hatchet	<i>acçetta</i> from <i>accettare</i> to accept
<i>dette</i> from <i>dire</i> to say	<i>dette</i> from <i>dare</i> to give
<i>legge</i> law	<i>legge</i> from <i>leggere</i> to read
<i>mële</i> apples	<i>mële</i> (<i>miële</i>) honey
<i>mënte</i> memory	<i>mënte</i> from <i>mentire</i> to lie
<i>pësca</i> from <i>pescare</i> to fish	<i>pësca</i> peach
<i>pëste</i> footprints	<i>pëste</i> pest
<i>sëte</i> thirst	<i>sëte</i> (<i>siëte</i>) you are
<i>tëma</i> from <i>temere</i> to fear	<i>tëma</i> theme

f. *O* is Close (*Lat.* *ö*, *ō* > *It.* *o*) —

1. In the endings *-oce*, *-doio*, *-soio*, *-toio*, *-one* -o -a, *-ore* -a, *-oso* (in adjectives). EXAMPLES: *feroce* 'ferocious,' *corridoio* 'corridor,' *vassoio* 'tray,' *scrittoio* 'writing-desk,' *portone* 'great gate,' *padrona* 'mistress,' *imperatore* 'emperor,' *stiratora* 'laundress,' *glorioso* 'glorious,' *suntuoso* 'sumptuous.'

2. Before *r* + *l*, *m*, *n*, *r*, *s*; before *m* or *n* + any consonant except *s*; and before *l* + *c*, *f*, *p*, *s*, or *t* (*except* in the inflections of *cogliere* 'to pluck,' *sciogliere* 'to loosen,' *togliere* 'to take away,' *volgere* 'to turn': *colto*, *sciolsi*, *tolse*, *volta*, etc.). EXAMPLES: *orlo* 'margin,' *forma* 'form,' *forno* 'oven,' *torre* 'tower,' *torso* 'torso,' *Örsola* 'Ursula,' *ombra* 'shadow,' *compra* 'buys,' *gondola* 'gondola,' *tronco* 'trunk,' *contro* 'against,' *monte* 'mountain,' *biondo* 'blonde,' *bronzo* 'bronze,' *oppongo* 'I oppose,' *solco* 'furrow,' *dolce* 'sweet,' *golfo* 'gulf,' *volpe* 'fox,' *colto* 'cultivated.'

3. In past absolutes and past participles in *-osi*, *-oso* (*except* *esploso*, *esplösi*), *-osto*, *-otto*. EXAMPLES: *nascosi* 'I hid,' *roso* 'gnawed,' *opposto* 'opposed,' *rotto* 'broken.'

4. In the pronouns *lò* 'him,' *loro* 'their,' *coloro*, *costoro*, 'they,' *ogni* 'every'; in the numerals *dodici* 'twelve,' *quattōrdici* 'fourteen,'; in *molto* 'much'; in the prepositions and conjunctions *come* 'like,' *dopo* 'after,' *dove* 'where,' *oltre* 'beyond,' *sopra* 'over,' *sotto* 'under'; in the negative *non*; and in the past subjunctive of *essere* 'to be': *fossi* 'I might be' etc.

g. O is Open (*Lat.* *ō*, *au* > *It.* *uo*, *o*) —

1. After *u*, and in words from which a preceding *u* has been dropped. EXAMPLES: *fuoco* 'fire,' *novo* (for *nuovo*) 'new.' Cf. *f*, 1.

2. In monosyllables and oxytones ending in *o*, except *lò*. EXAMPLES: *ciò* 'that,' *andò* 'he went,' *farò* 'I shall do,' *Pò* the river, *dò* 'I give.'

3. When followed by a vowel (*except* in *noi*, *voi*, and the endings *-doio*, *-soio*, *-tōio*). EXAMPLES: *Savōia* 'Savoy,' *nōia* 'annoyance,' *erōe* 'hero,' *Balbōa*, *tuōi* 'thy.'

4. Before *b*, *d* (*except* *coda* 'tail,' *dodici* 'twelve,' *rodo* 'I gnaw'), *f*, *ns*, *-cchi-*, *-rchi-*. EXAMPLES: *rōba* 'things,' *gōbbo* 'hunchback,' *brōdo* 'broth,' *stōffa* 'goods,' *responso* 'response,' *ginōcchio* 'knee,' *rimōrchio* 'towing.'

5. When accented in the antepenult before a single *t* or *s*, or any double consonant except *m* or *r*. EXAMPLES: *esōtico* 'exotic,' *propōsito* 'resolution,' *zōccolo* 'wooden shoe,' *sōffoca* 'suffocates,' *viōttola* 'lane.'

6. In the endings *-occio*, *-olo*, *-ōntico*, *-oto*, *-otto* (*except* past participles, cf. *f*, 3), *-ozzo*. EXAMPLES: *carrōccio* 'cart,' *Tirōlo* 'Tyrol,' *anacreōntico* 'Anacreontic,' *ignōto* 'unknown,' *aquilōtto* 'eaglet,' *bōzzo* 'sketch.'

7. In the adverbs *oggi* 'to-day,' *poco* 'little,' *talvōlta* 'sometimes,' *tōsto* 'soon,' *trōppo* 'too much'; the conjunctions *perō* 'however,' *perciō* 'on this account,' etc.; the negative *nō* 'no'; and the numerals *nōno* 'ninth,' *nōve* 'nine.'

8. In past absolutes in *-ossi*, *-olsi*. EXAMPLES: *mōssi* 'I moved,' *sciōlse* 'he loosened.'

h. Some of the words which, although spelled alike, differ in meaning according as the **o** is close or open :

CLOSE	OPEN
cogli <i>contracted prep.</i> with the	cogli <i>from cōgliere</i> to pluck
collo <i>contracted prep.</i> with the	collo neck
fosse <i>from ēssere</i> to be	fosse ditches
rosa <i>from rōdere</i> to gnaw	rosa rose
torre tower	torre (<i>tōgliere</i>) to take away
tosco Tuscan (<i>poetic</i>)	tosco poison
vulgo ignorant class	vulgo <i>from vōlgere</i> to turn
volto face	volto <i>from vōlgere</i> to turn

4. Semivowels and Diphthongs. Any two vowels pronounced as one syllable constitute a diphthong. The vowels **i** and **u** before another vowel are usually pronounced respectively **y** and **w**, and are then called semivowels. (See below, **4, d.**)

Diphthongs are of two kinds: **a. Rising** diphthongs, in which a "weak" vowel (**i** or **u**) precedes a "strong" vowel (**e**, **o**, or **a**) and the strong is stressed. **EXAMPLES:** **lieto** 'joyous,' **fuoco** 'fire,' **guardi** 'look,' **uomo** 'man,' **ieri** 'yesterday.'

b. Falling diphthongs, in which a strong vowel precedes a weak, and still receives the stress. **EXAMPLES:** **noi** 'we,' **poichè** 'since,' **Europa** 'Europe,' **Laura**.

1. When two weak vowels combine, the second usually takes the stress. **EXAMPLES:** **guida** 'guide,' **giù** 'down.'

c. Triphthongs. A strong vowel between two weak ones, or a weak between two strong, may form a triphthong, which is really two diphthongs in one, a rising and a falling. **EXAMPLES:** **mièi** 'my,' **suoi** 'his,' **studiai** 'I studied,' **bestiuola** 'small creature.'

1. Four or even five vowels may be contiguous, and pronounced together; but usually the first of these stands after *g* or *c* merely to give it a special sound (cf. 5, *a*), and so only three, or four, are heard. EXAMPLES: *gioiello* 'jewel,' *merciaio* 'dry-goods merchant,' *bagagliaio* 'baggage room,' *Acciaiuolo*.

d. In many words, often compound or derivative, *i* and *u* are not semivowels but are pronounced as a separate syllable. In such case the combination is not a diphthong. EXAMPLES: *spi-a* 'spy,' *spi-are* 'to spy,' *signori-a* 'lordship,' *obli-o* 'oblivion,' *ri-esco* 'I succeed,' *ri-uscire* 'to succeed,' *pi-uolo* 'rung,' *tri-orno* 'triumph,' *vi-aggio* 'journey,' *sontu-oso* 'sumptuous,' *ambigu-o* 'ambiguous.'

5. **Consonant Sounds.** *a*. The following consonant sounds occur in Italian, all of them being pronounced more explosively than in English, except when standing alone between two vowels.

b, as in English.

c, *cc*, (hard) before *a*, *o*, *u*, = *k*: *caro* 'dear,' *con* 'with,' *cura* 'care.'

c, *cc*, (soft) before *i* or *e*, = *ch*: *Cina* 'China,' *centro* 'center.'

ch (used only before *i* or *e*), = *k*: *chi* 'who?'

ci before another vowel, = *ch*: *cieco* 'blind,' *ciuco* 'donkey,' *provincia* 'province.'

d, *t*, pronounced with the tip of the tongue farther forward than in English.

f, as in English.

g (hard) before *a*, *o*, *u*, = 'go': *Belga* 'Belgian,' *gola* 'throat,' *laguna* 'lagoon.'

g, *gg*, (soft) before *i* or *e*, = 'gin': *gente* 'people,' *gita* 'excursion.'

gh (used only before *i* or *e*), = 'go': *aghi* 'needles,' *botteghe* 'shops.'

gi before another vowel, = 'gin': *mangiare* 'to eat,' *Giovanni* 'John,' *giudice* 'judge.'

gl before *i*, = 'million': *gli* 'to him,' *figli* 'sons.' (But cf. 5, *c*.)

gli before another vowel, = 'million': *gliè* 'to her,' *Baglioni*, *Pagliacci*.

h, silent.

l and **n**, pronounced with the tongue a little nearer the front teeth than in English.

m, **p**, **q**, as in English.

n before the hard sound of **c** or **g** or **q**, = *ng*: **franco** 'franc,' **fungo** 'mushroom,' **cinque** 'five.'

r, always rolled, especially when double.

s, = 'sir': **sę** 'if,' **sprone** 'spur.'

ş, = 'rose': **rõsa** 'rose,' **şmeraldo** 'emerald,' **şbaglio** 'mistake.'

sc before **i** or **e**, = *sh*: **scĩmmia** 'monkey,' **conõscere** 'to be acquainted with.'

sci before another vowel, = *sh*: **scià** 'shah,' **lĩscio** 'smooth,' **scięnza** 'science.'

v, as in English.

z, = *ts*: **conversazione** 'conversation,' **pazzo** 'mad.'

z, = *dz*: **męzzo** 'half,' **dozzina** 'dozen,' **zẹro** 'zero.'

b. Double Consonants. Double consonants must be pronounced double, but without hiatus. Few single words (such as *unnatural*, *tailless*) present this phenomenon in English; but it is easily illustrated by combinations of two words, such as *mad dog*, *big gun*, *a mile long*, *room-mate*, *pine knot*, etc. Pronounce on this principle **bęllo** 'beautiful,' **tęrra** 'earth,' **Boccaccio**, **mõsso** 'moved.'

Note that **cci** and **ggi** sound not as *c-ci* and *g-gi* but as *t-ci* and *d-gi*; similarly **cc** and **gg** before **e**. Also that **zz**, **zẹ**, sound like **z**, **z**, not doubled.

This distinction between the single and double consonant should be carefully observed, as there are many words whose meaning, when spoken, would otherwise be mistaken. The following are some of these:

aringa herring

baco silkworm

bęla baa

camino hearth

canõne large dog

arringa harangue

Bacco Bacchus

bęlla beautiful

cammino road

cannõne cannon

casa house	cassa money-chest
copia plenty	coppia couple
dita fingers	ditta firm
Ino Ino	inno hymn
Luca Luke	Lucca the city
nonno ninth	nonno grandfather
risa laughter	rissa quarrel
sonetto sonnet	sonnetto nap
Trācia Thrace	traccia trace
vano vain	vanno they go

1. Similarly, **l, m, n, r**, in an accented syllable before another consonant, are prolonged, and pronounced as if double. EXAMPLES: **altro** (all-tro) 'other,' **quando** (quann-do) 'when,' **Dante** (dann-te), **novembre** (novemm-bre) 'November,' **porta** (porr-ta) 'door,' **anche** (ang-che) 'also,' **pongo** (pong-go) 'I put,' **stanco** (stang-co) 'tired,' **propinquo** (proping-quo) 'near.'

2. **Special Doublings.** A word ending in an accented vowel, or a monosyllable ending in a vowel, has in pronunciation the effect of doubling the initial consonant of the following word. Thus **Si**, **Signora** 'Yes, madam,' is actually pronounced **sissignora**; **ma ch ** 'what!' is pronounced **macch **; **va bene** 'all right,' **vabb ne**; etc.

a. When compounds are made of words in such groups, the spelling follows the pronunciation. EXAMPLES: **pi ** 'more' and **t sto** 'soon' combine in **piutt sto** 'rather'; **chi** 'who,' **che** 'that,' and **sia** 'be,' in **chicchessia** 'whoever.'

b. The following words, although not accented on the last syllable, double the initial consonant of the following word: **come** 'how,' **d ve** 'where,' **qualche** 'some,' **sopra** 'upon.' EXAMPLES: **comemmai** (come mai) 'how in the world,' **dovevv ?** (dove va) 'where does he go?' **qualchevv lta** (qualche volta) 'sometimes,' and the compound **soprattutto** (sopra tutto) 'above all.'

c. The words **dio**, **d a**, **d i**, **d e**, 'god' and 'goddess,' singular and plural, double their initial consonant after any word ending in a vowel, as **b llad ea** (bella dea) 'beautiful goddess.'

d. Doubling does not take place where there is any break in the sense between the two words; after a conjunctive pronoun object (cf. 94), because, being proclitic, it never takes the accent; or after a word ending with an apostrophe, as *sta' quiëto* 'be quiet,' unless the succeeding word be a conjunctive pronoun (see below).

e. But when the conjunctive object follows a form of the verb which is accented on the last syllable, even with the apostrophe, its initial consonant is doubled (cf. 100, *b*). EXAMPLES: *parlòmmi* (*parlò mi*) 'he spoke to me,' *dille* (*dì' le*) 'tell her,' *fallo* (*fa' lo*) 'do it.'

c. *Gli* keeps the hard sound of *g* when preceded by *n*, as *ganglio* 'ganglion,' and in the words *geroglifico* 'hieroglyphic,' *glicerina* 'glycerine,' *negligente* 'negligent,' and a few others.

d. *Tuscan Peculiarities.* In Tuscan speech a single *c* or *g* between vowels of which the second is *i* or *e*, whether in the same word or in a group of two words, is softened, the *c* almost to *sh* and the *g* almost to *zh* (*s* in *pleasure*). A slight touch of this softening is an elegance of pronunciation anywhere in Italy. EXAMPLES: *diëci* 'ten,' *bugia* 'lie,' *ricëvere* 'to receive,' *diligente* 'diligent,' *la gente* 'the people,' *bella città* 'beautiful city.'

Likewise, a slight softening and aspirating of the hard *c* and *g*, and of *q*, to a sound approximating the German *ch*, is acceptable to the Tuscans, though the exaggeration of it heard among the lower classes is a vulgarism. This "attenuation" (which should not be adopted by foreigners without great discretion) occurs either at the beginning or in the middle of a word, if the consonant stands between two vowels, or is preceded by a vowel but followed by *r* or *l*. EXAMPLES: *nemico* 'enemy,' *ëquo* 'equal,' *lago* 'lake,' *questa cösa* 'this thing,' *democrätico* 'democratic,' *agro* 'sour,' *la glötta* 'glottis,' *una classe* 'a class.'

e. *S and Z.* As with the close and open vowels, the rules cannot be made to fit all cases; accordingly in this

book **s** = *sz* will be marked (in the vocabularies or when appearing for the first time in the text) **ś**, and *z* = *dz* will be marked **z**.

1. **S** is pronounced **s** :

a. When initial before a vowel, as in **santo** 'saint.'

b. When double, as in **rosso** 'red.'

c. When followed by **c, f, p, q, t**. EXAMPLES: **scala** 'stair,' **schërzo** 'joke,' **Schiavo** 'Slay,' **sfera** 'sphere,' **rispōndere** 'to reply,' **squilla** 'bell,' **stanza** 'room.'

d. In words ending in **-eso -a -e -i** or **-oso -a -e -i**, with the vowel close (cf. 3, c, 7; f, 1, 3), and their derivatives. EXAMPLES: **atteso** 'awaited,' **impresa** 'enterprise,' **mese** 'month,' **presi** 'I took,' **generoso** 'generous,' **generosità** 'generosity,' **Tolosa** 'Toulouse,' **impose** 'he imposed,' **nascosi** 'I hid.'

EXCEPTIONS :

cortese kind

francese French

lęsi -o, from **lędere** (*rare*) to damage

marchese marquis

paese country

palęse evident

tošo shaven

2. **S** is pronounced **ś** :

a. When followed by **b, d, g, l, m, n, r**, or **v**. EXAMPLES: **şbaglio** 'mistake,' **şdegno** 'indignation,' **şgradęvole** 'disagreeable,' **dişlacciare** 'to unlace,' **entusiaşmo** 'enthusiasm,' **şnodare** 'to untie,' **şradicare** 'to eradicate,' **şvernare** 'to winter.'

b. Between two vowels, as in **āşilo** 'asylum,' with the following important exceptions :

(1) Cf. 1, *d*, above.

(2) When a prefix is set before a word normally beginning with **s**. EXAMPLES: **di-serrare** 'to unlock' (but **dişereditare** 'to disinherit'), **pro-secuzione** 'prosecution,' **pre-servare** 'to preserve,' **ri-sorgimento** 'resurrection,' **tręnta-şęi** 'thirty-six.'

(3) And in the following words :

annusare to smell at	parasito parasite
āsino donkey	Pisa
casa house	pisello pea
Chiusi a town	pōsa, ripōso, repose
chiusi -o, <i>from</i> chiūdere to close	raso satin
cōsa thing	Ricāsoli
così thus	rimasi I remained
desidērio desire	riso laugh
fuso spindle	susina plum

3. Z is pronounced z :

a. Before ia, ie, io. EXAMPLES : pazzia 'madness,' grāzie 'thank you,' nazione 'nation.'

b. In all words not listed under 4.

4. Z is pronounced z :

a. In verbs ending in -izzare, of more than four syllables in the infinitive ; as organizzare 'to organize.'

b. When single between two vowels, except as under 3, a. EXAMPLES : bizantino 'Byzantine,' Donizetti, ozono 'ozone.'

c. When initial, except in the following words :

zācchera mud stain	zāzzera long hair	zittella spinster
zaffo bung	zēcca mint	zitto hush
zampa paw	zecchino sequin	zōccolo wooden shoe
zampillo fountain	zēppa wedge	zolfo sulphur
zampogna reed	zimbello decoy	zoppo lame
zana basket	zingaro gipsy	zucca squash
zāngola charm	zinzino sip	zuccherò sugar
zanna tusk	zio uncle	zuffa fray
zappa mattock	zìpolo spigot	zūfolo whistle
zatta raft	zirlare to whistle	zuppa broth

d. In the following words :

aguzzino slave-driver	azzurro blue	bronzo bronze
amāzzone amazon	brezza breeze	donzella damsel

dozzina	dozen	orzo	barley
gazzella	gazelle	pettegolezzo	gossip
gazzetta	gazette	pranzo	dinner
ghiribizzo	caprice	razzo	spoke
Lāzzaro	Lazarus	ribrezzo	shiver
lazzaretto	pest-house	romanzo	novel
lezzo	unpleasant odor	ronzo	buzzing
magazzino	storehouse	scorza	bark
marzocco	lion of Florence	zanzara	mosquito
mezzo	half, middle	zēnzero	ginger
orizzonte	horizon		

And the following less common words, and others still more uncommon :

arzigōgolo	bōnzo	gazza	olezzo	suzzācchera
arzilla	bōzzima	ghezzo	pēnzolo	suzzato
āzzimo	bōzzo ('pool')	ghiōzzo	razza (fish)	sverza
baragozzo	buzzo	grezzo	rezzo	verzicare
barzelletta	calenzuolo	intirizzare	rozzo	verziere
bazza	eczema	lacchezzo	rubizzo	zizzānia
bazzana	Elzeviri	lazzeruola	ruzzo	zizzola
bazzōffia	frizzo	lazzo	scarza	zonzo
belzuino	frōnzolo	manzo	sfarzo	zozza
Belzebù	ganzo	Manzoni	sgabuzzino	
bizza	garza	mōzzo ('hub')	sizza	
bizzēffe	garzo	Nazzareno	sōzzo	

A few words differ in meaning according to whether the **z** is "voiced" (**z**) or "unvoiced" (**z**), among which are the following :

bōzzo	pool	bōzzo	sketch
mezzo	half, middle	mezzo	wet, ripe
mōzzo	hub	mōzzo	cabin-boy
razza	ray (fish)	razza	race, lineage

NOTE. In derived words, **s** or **z** keeps the sound that it has in the root word, even contrary to rule. EXAMPLES: sorriso 'smile' from riso, ronzo 'continued buzzing' from ronzo.

III. SYLLABIFICATION

The division of words into syllables is very exact in Italian.

6. Nearly all syllables must end in a vowel, which may be preceded by as many as three consonants. **EXAMPLES :** *ca-sa, ta-sca, a-vrò, ri-u-sci-re, e-strē-mo, şbra-na-re, e-spri-me, mi-glio, va-ghe, tō-sto, Ti-şbe, fi-nē-stra, sfu-ma-re.*

7. But double consonants, and groups consisting of a liquid (l, r) or nasal (m, n) followed by a mute (b, c, d, g, p, t) or spirant (f, v, s, z), or of a liquid and a nasal, are divided. **EXAMPLES :** *qua-drēt-ti, bēl-lo, bus-se, al-lac-ciati, da-van-zale, şen-to, sel-cia-to, rim-bōm-bo, mar-mo, scēn-do, al-tro, sin-cē-ro, Ar-no, al-ma, stir-pe, or-gō-glio.*

8. Words to be divided at the end of a line of print or writing must be divided on these principles, and an apostrophe may never be left at the end of a line. For example, *tutt' altro, all' Italia*, must be divided *tut-t' altro, al-l' Italia*.

IV. TONIC ACCENT

9. The distribution of the tonic accent, or the question on which syllable of a word to lay the stress, is one of the chief difficulties of Italian pronunciation for the foreigner. A few rules may be given, but there are many exceptions. The accentuation of a word, like its gender, should be learned along with its meaning. In this book, all stressed antepenults, and *i* when accented in the final groups *ia, ie, io, ii*, will be marked with a macron, thus : *gōndola, Signorīa*.

10. The majority of Italian words are accented on the penult, and are called *parole piane* : *vedo* 'I see,' *luna* 'moon,' *invece* 'instead,' *reverberare* 'reverberate,' *finirete* 'you will finish.'

11. Words accented on the last syllable are called *parole tronche* : *poichè* 'since,' *virtù* 'virtue,' *curiosità* 'curiosity.'

12. Words accented on the antepenult are called *parole sdrucciole* : *cēlebre* 'famous,' *ammīrano* 'they admire,' *organīz-zano* 'they organize.'

13. Those accented on the syllable preceding the antepenult are called *bisdruciole* : *andāndosene* 'going away,' *cēlebrano* 'they celebrate.'

a. Most of these are the third persons plural of verbs having more than three syllables in the infinitive, of which the first person singular is accented on the antepenult ; but it is not easy to be sure whether the first person singular is so accented in a given instance. However, if the verb be derived from a noun, the first person singular will follow the accent of the noun ; and when the infinitive ends in *-borare*, *-iugare*, *-iuvare*, *-ipare*, *-minare* preceded by a single vowel, or *-erare* preceded by a liquid + a mute, or its ending is preceded by a mute + a liquid, the first person singular will be accented on the antepenult. But if the infinitive ending is preceded by any two consonants except a mute and a liquid, the first person singular will be accented on the penult. EXAMPLES : *inganno* 'deceit,' *inganno* 'I deceive,' *ingānnano* 'they deceive'; *ōpera* 'work,' *ōpero* 'I work,' *ōperano* 'they work'; *integrare* 'to complete,' *integrano* 'they complete'; *corroborare* 'to corroborate,' *corrōboro*; *coniugare* 'to conjugate,' *cōniugano*; *dissipare* 'to dissipate,' *dīssipo*; *seminare* 'to sow,' *sēmīno*; *illuminare* 'to illuminate,' *illūminano*; *camminare* 'to walk,' *cammino*.

NOTE. In verbs of Latin derivation, the quantity of the vowel in the penult of the first person singular of the root verb is a fairly safe guide to the tonic accent in the Italian derivative. EXAMPLES : *indīco* > *indico*, *īmītor* > *imīto* or *imito*, *conjūro* > *congiūro*.

14. The syllable that receives the tonic accent is usually a few tones higher in pitch than the others, particularly in the important

word of the sentence. The failure to observe this difference will make even well-pronounced Italian sound foreign. Sometimes, as in calling to a distant person, the tonic accent will be an octave above :

Su, Corrado,
Vieni a veder che Dio per grazia volse.
(Oh, Corrado, come and see what God has willed !)

In exclamations, or in questions expressing amazement or incredulity, and to some extent in all speech, the whole sentence takes a kind of tonic accent. This falls sometimes on the first syllable of the sentence. A comparison of the sentences "*Are* you going to-day?" "*Are* you *going* to-day?" "*Are* you going *to-day*?" will illustrate this, but in Italian such variety is not reserved exclusively for particular rhetorical effects. English as spoken in England presents a closer analogy than American speech to this peculiarity of Italian.

15. Many words are distinguished in meaning from their homonyms only by the tonic accent. The following are a few of these :

ancōra still	āncora anchor
capitāno captain	cāpitano <i>from</i> capitare to fall
compīto <i>from</i> compire to fulfill	cōmpito task
Cupīdo Cupid	cūpido eager
impāri <i>from</i> imparare to learn	împari uneven
pagāno pagan	pāgano <i>from</i> pagare to pay
perdōno pardon	pērdono <i>from</i> perdere to lose
prīncipî beginnings, principles	prīncipi princes
rubīno ruby	rūbino <i>from</i> rubare to rob

V. WORDS FOR PRACTICE IN PRONUNCIATION

16. For practice on the consonants :

pazzo	svisceratezza	sgattigliare	santo
scianto	ella	lascio	sguaglianza
macchia	Brèscia	sonno	giungeva
Guglielmo	stortigliatura	montagna	glauche
floscio	stagno	sfoglia	negli
sragionevole	staiuolo	scròscio	somigliano
segni	fatto	bagagli	occhio
vecchio	malizia	somiglianza	chicche
sgagliardare	ingegno	luoghi	sciogliere
curiosa	guai	srugginire	svolazzatoio
allo	lusinghiéro	ghiacciai	sferza
lasciare	pioggia	secco	azzurro
scricchiolare	slanciamento	sdraire	sfilacciatura
sfregiare	svogliatamente	seccia	accostandoglisi
attesa	Russia	uscio	sceglie
secche	sbirracchiolo	figlioccia	gloriosa
ginocchi	sloggiare	secchita	chiacchierare
sfregacciare	bianche	smemorataccio	sassoso
tedeschi	roccia	stovigliaio	villaggio
dramma	disse	sciente	svegliamento
gloria	scheggetta	qualche	scusa
sghimbescio	smagio	bisbiglio	sguardo
scricchiolano	tacque	stanche	giudizio
gigli	zero	vizio	fertilizzare

17. For practice on close and open vowels :

allora	Londra	Siena	dolce
forestiere	settembre	elemosina	parente
solenne	senza	bronzo	borchia
luogo	legno	togliere	buono
rotondo	dormitorio	Maremma	moda
membro	deplora	inchiestro	donna
fuori	prendo	Orfeo	femmina
milanese	colmo	contento	insolenza

cielo	nōcciolo	Raffaello	Po
silenzio	piega	ecco	Pietro
talvolta	penitenza	ponte	Spezzia
allegrezza	faticoso	chioso	atteso

VI. GRAPHIC ACCENTS

18. Three graphic accents are used in Italian: the grave (˘), the most common; the circumflex (ˆ), used in a few cases; and the acute (´), which is rare in Italian.

19. The grave accent is used —

a. On final accented vowels of words of more than one syllable.

EXAMPLES: *virtù* 'virtue,' *città* 'city.'

b. On final vowels of monosyllables to indicate a diphthong.

EXAMPLES: *può* 'he can,' *più* 'more,' *ciò* 'that,' *già* 'already.'

c. On the truncated forms (cf. 31, *a*; 48, *c*) of the poetic past absolutes in *-aro*, *-iro*, *-ero*, to distinguish them from the truncated infinitives of the same verbs. Thus, *amàr* = *amaro* (*amārono*), not *amare*.

d. On monosyllables that have been combined with some other word or prefix, in order to keep the tonic accent in the same place.

EXAMPLES: *fa* 'makes,' *rifà* 'remakes'; *re* 'king,' *vicere* 'viceroy.'

e. On certain monosyllables in common use, to distinguish them from others identical in spelling but of different meaning.

<i>chè</i> that	<i>chè</i> because	<i>la, li, articles</i>	<i>là, lì, there</i>
<i>da</i> from	<i>dà</i> gives	<i>nè</i> of it, of them	<i>nè</i> neither
<i>di</i> of	<i>dì</i> day	<i>sè</i> if	<i>sè</i> himself
<i>e</i> and	<i>è</i> is	<i>si</i> himself	<i>sì</i> so, yes
<i>fè</i> he did	<i>fè</i> faith	<i>tè</i> thee	<i>tè</i> tea

20. The circumflex is used on certain shortened forms such as *tôrre* (*tôgliere*) 'to take away,' and often over final *i* when it represents *ii*. EXAMPLE: *desiderio* 'desire,' *pl.* *desideri* (written also *desiderii*, *desiderj*).

21. The acute accent is used —

a. To indicate that a certain word with close *e* or *o* is meant, and not its homonym with open vowel; as *tòsco*, indicating the poetic word for Tuscan, instead of *tòsco* 'poison.'

b. In poetry, when the tonic accent is altered to suit the rhythm.

c. In dictionaries it serves to indicate the close vowels, and the grave the open.

d. The tendency is increasing among grammarians to encourage the use of the acute accent over final *i* and *u*, and final close *e* and *o*, when these are accented.

VII. ELISION

22. Elision is the omission of the final vowel of one word before the initial vowel of the following word. It takes place only between two words closely bound together in sense, as verb and subject or object, preposition and object, adjective or article and noun; and any pause or punctuation mark prevents its use. It is indicated by the apostrophe. **EXAMPLES:** *l' uòmo* 'the man,' *nell' aria* 'in the air,' *tutt' altro* (cf. 8). It may occur in the following cases, but is most usual with the articles.

23. In the articles *lo*, *la*, *gli*, *le*, alone or when contracted with prepositions (cf. 75). *Gli* is elided only before *i*; *le* only before *e*, and then not if the word is unchanged in the plural. **EXAMPLES:** *l(o)' amico* 'the friend,' *l(a)' anima* 'the soul,' *dell(o)' amore* 'of love,' *all(a)' amica* 'to the friend' (f.), *l(e)' erbe* 'the herbs,' *gl(i)' Inglese* 'the English,' *le età* 'the ages,' *gli uòmini* 'the men.'

24. In the singular feminine form of the indefinite article: *un(a)' ora* 'an hour.'

25. In the pronoun objects *mi*, *ti*, *si*, *vi*, *ne*, *lo*; and *ci* before *i* or *e*. EXAMPLES: *m' abìtuo* 'I accustom myself,' *t' insegna* 'he teaches thee,' *s' intēde* 'that is understood,' *n' ha parlato* 'he has spoken of it,' *l' aspētto* 'I await him,' *c' imita* 'he imitates us,' *c' ěrano* 'there were.'

26. In the pronouns *ogni*, *questo*, *quello*, *codesto*, *altro*, *nulla*, *niente*; the adverbs *poco*, *tanto*, *quanto*; the prepositions *di*, *da*, *oltre*, *presso*, and *senza*, in certain adverbial expressions; the adjectives *santo*, *bello*, and *buono*, when immediately followed by their substantives; the conjunctions *anche*, *che*, *dove*, *onde*, *come*, and *se* before *e*; and the numerals *secondo*, *terzo*, *quarto*, *quattro*, *cinque*, *dēcimo*, etc., *venti*, *trēta*, *cēto*, *mille*, *mezzo*.

EXAMPLES: *ogn' altro* 'every other,' *quest' animale* 'this animal,' *quell' amico* 'that friend,' *codest' uomo* 'that man,' *altr' ieri* 'day before yesterday,' *null' uomo* 'no man,' *nient' affatto* 'nothing at all,' *poc' altro* 'little else,' *tant' ě* 'so it is,' *quant' oro* 'how much gold,' *tazza d(i)' acqua* 'cup of water,' *oltr' Arno* 'beyond the Arno,' *press' a poco* 'nearabout,' *senz' altro* 'without delay,' *d(a)' allōra* 'from then,' *Sant' Ōrsola* 'Saint Ursula,' *bell' aria* 'beautiful air,' *buon' anima* 'good soul,' *dov' ě* 'where is it?' *anch' io* 'I too,' *com' ě* 'how is it?' *ond' andō* 'whence he went,' *ch' hanno* 'that they have,' *s' ě vero* 'if it is true,' *second' anno* 'second year,' *terz' ūltimo* 'third from the last,' *quattr' aranci* 'four oranges,' *vent' anni* 'twenty years,' *mill' anni* 'a thousand years,' *mezz' ora* 'a half-hour.'

27. In the first and third persons singular of verbs before a pronoun subject, and in the third person singular of the past future before a word beginning with *e*. EXAMPLES: *diss' io* 'said I,' *dic' egli* 'says he,' *potrēbb' ěssere* 'it might be.'

28. In the following contracted forms:

a' for ai to the
bē' for bene well

mō' for mōdo manner
nē' for nei in the

cò' for còi with the
dà' for dai from the
dè' for dei of the
dì' for dici say
è' for ei he
fè' for fece he did
fra' for frai among the
gua' for guarda look
ma' for mali evils
mè' for meglio better

pè' for pei for the
pò' for poco little
prò' for pròde brave
què' for quei those
su' for sui on the
tè' for tieni hold
tò' for toglì take away
tra' for trai among the
vè' for vedi see
vò' for voglio I will

NOTE. All these contractions are used in speech with the greatest frequency, but their use in the written language depends upon the discretion and taste of the author. The forms *be'*, *dì'*, *gua'*, *te'*, are Tuscan popular forms; *ma'*, *me'*, *pro'*, are poetic forms; the others are admissible in prose.

VIII. TRUNCATION

29. Truncation (*troncamento*) is the dropping of the final unaccented vowel or sometimes syllable of a word under certain conditions, as *amòr* for *amòre*, *val* for *valle*, *caval* for *cavallo*.

30. It takes place only under the following conditions :

- a.* In a word of more than one syllable, not accented on the last.
- b.* When the final vowel (as a rule not *a*, cf. **32**) is immediately preceded by *l*, *n*, *r*, rarely *m*.
- c.* When the word to be truncated is not followed by one beginning with two consonants or (generally speaking) a vowel, and is not (in prose) a plural substantive.
- d.* When the two words are closely bound together without pause or break in the sense. EXAMPLES : *andar(e) via* 'to go away,' *nòbil(e) donna* 'noble lady,' *bèn(e) fatto* 'well done,' *ci siam(o) tutti* 'we are all here,' *caval(lo) di battaglia* 'war horse,' *un(o) bèl(lo) giòrno* 'a fine day.'

31. Words regularly truncated are —

a. Those ending in **-le**, **-lo**, **-llo**, **-ano**, **-eno**, **-ino**, **-ono**, **-nno**, **-ne**, **-re**, **-ero**. EXAMPLES: **cattedral(e)** 'cathedral,' **vuql(e)** 'he will,' **figliuql(o)** 'son,' **castel(lo)** 'castle,' **man(o)** 'hand,' **fræn(o)** 'check,' **fin(o)** 'till,' **fan(no)** 'they do,' **diran(no)** 'they will say,' **buqn(o)** 'good,' **viæn(e)** 'comes,' **mar(e)** 'sea,' **par(e)** 'appears,' **pensiær(o)** 'thought.'

b. The words **uqm(o)** 'man,' **insiëm(e)** 'together,' **un(o)** 'one' and its compounds, **doman(i)** 'to-morrow,' **fuqr(i)** 'outside,' **iær(i)** 'yesterday,' **põver(o)** (only before a vowel) 'poor,' **par(o)** 'pair'; the first person plural of verbs in **-mo** (not **-mmo**), as **sarëm** 'we shall be,' **andavam** 'we were going'; and the third person plural in **-ro**, as **sẽpper(o)** 'they knew,' **potrẽbber(o)** 'they might,' **fõsser(o)** 'they would be.'

c. Titles before proper names, or one proper name before another. EXAMPLES: **dottør(e)** **Antønio** 'Doctor Anthony,' **si-gnør(e)** **Bõndi** 'Mr. Bondi,' **Giovan(ni)** **Battista** 'John the Baptist,' **Val(le)** **di Chiana** 'Valley of the Chiana,' **Antøn(io)** **Piëtro** 'Anthony Peter,' **Piær(o)** **Antønio** 'Peter Anthony.'

d. In poetry: plurals in **-ni**, **-ri**; nouns in **-iro**, **-oro**, nouns and adjectives in **-aro**, **-uro**, and adjectives in **-ero**; *parole sdrucchiole* in **-re**; and **van(o)** 'vain,' **san(o)** 'sane,' **ver(o)** 'true,' **color(o)**, **costør(o)**, 'those.' EXAMPLES: **can(i)** 'dogs,' **pensiær(i)** 'thoughts,' **acciar(o)** 'steel,' **sicur(o)** 'sure,' **dur(o)** 'hard,' **gir(o)** 'circle,' **lavør(o)** 'labor,' **fiær(o)** 'proud.'

32. Irregular truncations are **ør(a)** 'hour' and its compounds, **suqr(a)** 'Sister' (a nun), **fra(te)** 'Brother' (a friar), **søl(a)** 'only,' **san(to)** 'Saint,' and **gran(de)** 'large' (cf. 85). EXAMPLES: **ør øra** 'just now,' **finør** 'until now,' **suqr Maria** 'Sister Mary,' **fra Girõlamo** 'Brother Jerome,' **una søl vølta** 'just once,' **san Luigi** 'Saint Louis,' **gran caso** 'important circumstance.'

33. Truncation does not affect the tonic accent. As it may be used in poetry before a pause or at the end of a line, truncation provides "masculine endings" which otherwise could scarcely occur in Italian verse.

IX. VARIANT FORMS OF WORDS

34. For a good many words there are two different, equally correct forms, though one will be generally preferred, and the other often confined in its use to Tuscany. Compare English *crawfish*, *crayfish*; *toward*, *towards*; *special*, *especial*. Among such variable words are —

altèro, altièro, 'haughty'; àngelo, àngiolo, 'angel'; castigo, gastingo, 'punishment'; cèppo, cippo, 'log'; ciliègia, ciriègia, 'cherry'; crōnaca, crōnica, 'chronicle'; decembre, dicembre, 'December'; denaro, danaro, 'money'; domani, dimani, 'to-morrow'; forestière, forestièro, 'foreigner'; nativo, natìo, 'native'; nërvo, nërbo, 'nerve'; nuovo, nõvo, 'new'; Pancrazio, Brancazio, 'Pancras'; pellegrino, peregrino, 'pilgrim'; rinunciare, rinunciare, 'to renounce'; riva, ripa, 'bank'; sciròcco, siròcco, 'sirocco.'

In addition to such sporadic divergences, there are certain principles of variation, as follows:

35. Apheresis. The first syllable is sometimes dropped, as in *evangèlo*, *vangèlo*, 'gospel'; *arèna*, *rèna*, 'sand.'

36. Syncope. The middle syllable is sometimes dropped. **EXAMPLES:** *òpera*, *òpra*, 'work'; *anderò*, *andrò*, 'I shall go', *togliere*, *tòrre*, 'to take away'; *onorèvole*, *orrèvole*, 'honorable.'

37. Apocope. The last syllable may be dropped, as in *fedè*, *fè*, 'faith'; *piède*, *piè*, 'foot'; *umiltade*, *umiltà*, 'humility'; *su* and *giù* 'up' and 'down' for *suso* and *giuso* (now current

only in poetry); and (in poetry only) *amaro*, *finiro*, *temëro* (cf. 48, c), etc., for *amārono*, *finīrono*, *temërono*, 'they loved,' 'they finished,' 'they feared.'

38. Prefixion of *i*. When a word ending in a consonant is followed by one beginning with *s impure* (cf. 59, a, 1), an *i* is prefixed to the latter to prevent the juxtaposition of too many consonants. This is more common in speaking than in writing. **EXAMPLES:** *in i-stiva* 'in the hold,' *per i-schërzo* 'in jest.'

39. Conversely, the words *a* 'to,' *e* 'and,' *o* 'or,' and *su* 'on,' may become respectively *ad*, *ed*, *od*, *sur* before a word beginning with a vowel, especially if it is the same one. **EXAMPLES:** *ad esèmpio* 'for example,' *ad Anna* 'to Anna,' *ed ebbe* 'and he had,' *o ferro od oro* 'either iron or gold,' *sur una tāvola* 'on a table.'

40. Metathesis. Letters may be reversed, as in *sūcido* for *sūdicio* 'dirty.'

X. CAPITALIZATION

41. Italian capitalization is in general governed according to the same rules as English, but presents the following differences of usage:

42. Capitals are usually omitted, contrary to English usage,

a. From all but the first word of book titles, unless the title consist of but one word and that a noun. **EXAMPLES:** *Alcune relazioni del Fōscolo con la letteratura tedesca* 'Certain Relations between Foscolo and German Literature,' *Il Santo* 'The Saint.'

b. From proper adjectives, sometimes even used substantively. **EXAMPLES:** *il pōpolo toscano* 'the Tuscan people,' *le guërre napoleōniche* 'the Napoleonic wars,' *il linguaggio manzoniano* 'the language of Manzoni,' *i Tedeschi* 'the Germans.'

c. From titles, when followed by a proper name. **EXAMPLES:** *don Carlo* 'Don Carlos,' *dottor Antonio* 'Doctor Anthony,' *il principe Umberto* 'Prince Humbert,' *il signor Martini* 'Mr. Martini.'

d. From the names of the days and the months. **EXAMPLES:** *venerdì* 'Friday,' *luglio* 'July.'

e. In most contemporary poetry, from the first word of each line, unless the rules of prose would call for it.

NOTE. Usage in Italian books will often be found to vary considerably from these rules, which have, however, the support of the best authorities.

43. Capitals are used, though not invariably, for the more formal pronoun of address which is borrowed from the third person (cf. 65, *a*). **EXAMPLES:** *Lui, Ella, Loro* 'you' (singular and plural), *Suo* 'your,' *Le* 'to you.'

XI. ARCHAIC AND POETIC FORMS

44. In Italian poetry and old Italian occur many forms unfamiliar to the student of modern Italian prose. The following are the most important of such variations:

45. In general, open *e* and *o* often replace respectively *ie* and *uo*: *tēn* for *tiēne*, *lōco* for *luōgo*, etc.; and *e* is often added to a final vowel, as in *ēe* for *è*, *tue* for *tu*, etc.

46. Nouns. Nouns in *-allo*, *-ello*, often form their plural in *-ai*, *-agli*, *-ei*, *-egli*: *cavallo*, *pl. cavai*, *cavagli*; *fratello*, *pl. fratei*, *fratagli*.

47. Pronouns. The forms *mēl*, *tēl*, *sēl*, etc. are very common substitutes for *mē lō*, *tē lō*, *sē lō*, etc.; *mēn*, *tēn*, etc., for *mē nē*, *tē nē*, etc.; and *nōl* for *nōn lō*.

48. Verb-Endings in Particular Tenses.

a. Present Indicative: in the first person plural, *-iemo, -emo, -imo*, for *-iamo*.

b. Past Descriptive: in the first and third persons singular of the second and third conjugations, *v* is often dropped: *temea* for *temeva*, *seguia* for *seguiva*.

c. Past Absolute: in the third singular, *temeo, finio*, for *temè, finì*; in the third plural, *trovaro, trovar, trovarno, trovōrono, trovōnno*, for *trovārono*; *colpiro, colpir, colpino, for colpirono; temero, temer, temenno, for temērono*.

d. Future: in the first person singular, *-aggio, -abbo, for -o*; in the third plural, *-āggiono, -ābbono, for -anno: troveraggio, troverabbo, for troverò; finirāggiono, finirābbono, for finiranno, etc.*

e. Past Future: in the first and third singular, *-ia* for *-ei, -ebbe*; *troveria* for *troverei, troverebbe, etc.*; in the third plural, *-iano, -ēbbono, for -ēbbero: finiriano, finirēbbono, for finirēbbero, etc.*

f. Present Subjunctive: in the singular, *e* for *i* in the first conjugation, *i* for *a* in the second and third: *tröve, finischi, temi, for trövi, finisca, tema*.

g. Past Subjunctive: in the first person singular, *e* for *i*: *trovasse, finisse, temesse, for trovassi, finissi, temessi*. In the third plural, *-āssino, -āsseno, -āssono, for -āssero; -ēssino, -ēsseno, -ēssono, for -ēssero; and -īssino, -īsseno, -īssono for -īssero: trovāssino etc., finīssino etc., temēssino etc.*

h. Past Participle: in the first conjugation *-at-* is omitted, leaving such forms as *acconcio* for *acconciato*, *cārico* for *caricato*.

49. Special Forms of Particular Verbs:

a. *Avere*: *aggio, abbo, avo, aio, for hò; aggia, aia, for abbia; ei, ēbbimo, for ēbbi, avemmo; arò etc. for avrò etc., and similar forms in the conditional.*

b. *Dare*: *diè* for *diède; dièr, dièro, dièrono, for diēdero*.

c. *Dovere*: present indicative *dèo, dèi, dèe, dovemo, dovete, dèono* or *dènno*.

d. *Èssere*: *eramo, erate*, for *eravamo, eravate*; *sēm, sēte*, for *siamo, siēte*; *ēnno, ēn*, for *sōno* (pl.); *sie, sīeno*, for *sia, sīano*; *u* for *o* in the past absolute and past subjunctive; *furo, fōro*, for *fūrono*, and *fue* for *fu*; *fīa, fīano* or *fīeno*, for *sarà, saranno*; *fōra, fōrano*, for *sarēi, sarēbbe, sarēbbero*; *sēndo* for *essendo*; *suto, essuto, issuto*, for *stato*.

e. *Fare*: *faci, face*, for *fai, fa*; a past descriptive *fēa* etc.; a past absolute *fēi, fēsti, fē* or *fēo, fēmno, fēste, fērono* or *fēnno*.

f. *Potere*: a past future *porīa* etc.; *puōte, pōnno*, for *può, pōssono*.

g. *Volere*: *vuogli* or *vuōli* for *vuoi*; *vōlsi, vōlse, vōlsero*, for *vōlli, vōlle, vōllero*.

XII. VERSIFICATION

50. Italian versification is reckoned not in feet but in syllables. These are grouped and divided by the "rhythmic accent," which falls at least twice in every line, on the penultimate syllable and at least one other.

Nel mezzò del cammin di nostra vita.

51. An Italian verse or line, like an Italian word, is either *piano*, *tronco*, or *sdrucciolo*, according as the closing accent falls on the penultimate, ultimate, or antepenultimate syllable. But all lines are counted as *piani*, since if represented in musical notation the time would be the same; that is, the accented ultimate of a *verso tronco* would equal the two syllables of a *verso piano*, while the last two short syllables of a *verso sdrucciolo* would be no longer than the final unaccented one of a *verso piano*. For example, in the following stanza each line is counted as having seven syllables:

Tu che, da tanti sēcoli,
 Soffri, combatti e prēghi;
 Che le tue tēde spiēghi
 Dall' uno all' altro mar.

52. Elision always occurs when a word ending in a vowel is followed by a word beginning with one, and the two syllables are counted, not pronounced, as one. There are two in the above selection, *combatti e* and *uno all'*, and it would be difficult to find a stanza in which there was no example of elision.

53. Diphthongs are counted as two syllables at the end of a verse, and usually as one in the middle. But those which begin with *i* are often, and others sometimes, counted as two in the middle of a verse, and are then marked with a diæresis.

Di tal superbia qui si paga il fio.
 Se buōna oraziōn.lui non aīta.

a. Triphthongs are counted usually as one syllable.

E cōme già sēi dē' miēi rari amici.

54. Number of Syllables. Italian verses are classified as either even-numbered (*parisillabi*) or odd-numbered (*imparisillabi*) according as the number of syllables is even or odd. The *parisillabi* are often *tronchi* but rarely *sdrucchioli*; the *imparisillabi* may be either. There are four varieties of each:

a. Parisillabi:

The four-syllabled verse (*quaternario*) and the eight-syllabled (*ottonario*) give the effect of trochaic meter.

Bēn ē vēr, quando ē giocondo
 Ride il mōdo,
 Ride il ciēl quando è gioiōso;
 Bēn ē vēr; ma non san pōi
 Cōme vōi
 Fare un riso grazīōso.

1. The six-syllabled verse (*senārio*) is amphibrachic :

Stringiamci a coorte,
Siam pronti alla morte :
Italia chiamò !

2. The ten-syllabled verse (*decasillabo*) is anapæstic :

Oh giornate del nostro riscatto !
Oh dolente per sempre colui
Che da lunge, dal labbro d'altrui,
Come un uomo straniero, le udrà.

b. Imparisillabi :

1. The seven-syllabled (*settenārio*) and eleven-syllabled (*endecasillabo*) verses are the most employed of all : the latter is iambic in effect ; the former, either iambic or anapæstic. The two are often combined :

Non è questo un morire,
Immortal Margherita,
Ma un passar anzi tempo a l'altra vita.

Benigne stelle che compagne fêrse
Al fortunato fianco
Quando 'l bel parto giù nel mondo scôrse !

2. The *endecasillabo*, or heroic measure (*verso erōico*), when *tronco*, corresponds exactly to a line of English blank verse ; when normally *piano*, to one of feminine ending. It may also be *sdrucchiolo*.

O folle Aragne, sì vedea io tē
Già mezza aragna, trista in su gli stracci
Dell'ōpera che mal per tē si fē'.

Innanzi assai ch' all'ōpra inconsumābile
Fosse la gente di Nembròt attēta.

3. The five-syllabled verse (*quinārio*), when accented on the first syllable, gives the effect of a dactyl plus a spondee ; when

accented on the second, of an iamb plus an amphibrach. It is sometimes combined with the *endecasillabo*.

Oh bell' andare
Per barca in mare
Verso la sera
Di primavera!

Chieser mercè de l'alta sterpe e de la
Gloria di Roma.

4. The nine-syllabled verse (*novenário*) is variously accented, but never very effective or musical.

Fu spōsa, fu madre felice.
Quel rubino ch' è il mio tesoro.
A duro stral di ria ventura.

55. Rhyme. The rhyme-word is *piano* or *tronco*, rarely *sdrucchiolo*. Close and open vowels may rhyme with each other, and the voiced and unvoiced *s* and *s*; but not *z* and *z*. The same word may be used as rhyme-word, if taken in a different meaning. Thus *chiēsa* may rhyme with *impresa*, *rōsa* with *gloriosa*, *pure* 'pure' with *pure* 'however,' but not *mezza* with *tenerezza*.

56. Blank Verse is written in unrhymed *endecasillabi*, and is called *verso sciolto*.

57. Strophes. Strophes are formed of lines combined in a certain pattern. They are often grouped in pairs, their final verses rhyming on a word that is *tronco*, which makes a ringing sonorous effect among the more numerous feminine endings. The following are the commoner forms of strophe:

Tērza rima, the measure of the "Divina Commedia," is made up of *endecasillabi* grouped in threes, and rhyming *aba bcb cdc*.

The **quartina** consists of four lines rhyming *abab* or *abba*.

The **sestina** consists of six lines, rhyming **abbacc** or **ababcc**.

Ottava rima consists of eight *endecasillabi*, rhyming **abababcc**.

The sonnet is the sonnet of English poetry, composed of *endecasillabi*. The octave must have but two rhyme-sounds, rhyming either **abba** on the Petrarchan or **abab** on the Shakespearean model.

The Petrarchan strophe is an extremely complicated arrangement of *endecasillabi* and *settenari*, in usually from nine to twenty lines. It is divided into two parts: the first, of six or eight lines, with intricate rhyme-scheme; the second an arrangement of tercets and couplets, connected with the first by a line (called the **chiave**, 'key') which rhymes with the one preceding it.

The old **sestina** is a form composed of six stanzas of six lines each, and a seventh stanza of three lines. These are unrhymed, but the end words of the first stanzas are repeated in all the others, after a fixed order, the last word in the first line of each stanza being identical with that of the last line of the one preceding. The seventh stanza has one of these words at the end, and one in the middle, of each of its three lines.

LESSON I

INDEFINITE ARTICLE

58. Indefinite Article.

MASCULINE SINGULAR

un
uno

FEMININE SINGULAR

una
un'

59. Masculine. *a. Un* is used before a masculine noun beginning with a vowel, or with any consonant except *s impure* or *z*.

Un padre
Un uomo

A father
A man

1. The *s impure* is *s* followed by another consonant.

b. Uno is used before a masculine noun beginning with *s impure* or *z*.

Uno schioppo
Uno zio

A gun
An uncle

60. Feminine. *Una* is used before a feminine noun beginning with a consonant.

a. Una becomes *un'* before a vowel.

Una madre
Un' ora

A mother
An hour

61. The article in Italian, whether definite or indefinite, must be repeated before each noun.

Un ragazzo e una ragazza

A boy and girl

62. Interrogative sentences. *a.* The interrogative is commonly expressed merely by the inflection of the voice and the use of the interrogation point.

La donna parla a un ragazzo

The woman speaks to a boy

La donna parla a un ragazzo?

Does the woman speak to a boy?

b. The order may be inverted, the subject being thrown at the very end of the sentence.

Parla a un ragazzo **la donna**?

Does the woman speak to a boy?

Torna a mezzogiorno **il padre**?

Does the father return at noon?

1. 'Do' or 'does,' used as auxiliary, does not exist in Italian.

63. Present Indicative of the Three Conjugations.

trovare 'find'		pêrdere 'lose'		capire 'understand'	
trôvo	troviamo	pêrdo	perdiamo	capisco	capiamo
trôvi	trovate	pêrdi	perdete	capisci	capite
trôva	trôvano	pêrde	pêrdono	capisce	capiscono

a. Subject pronouns are usually omitted, except when required for clearness or emphasis.

VOCABULARY

un bambino a child, little boy

un libro a book

un padre a father

un panchetto a stool, footstool

uno schioppo a gun

uno scolare a pupil

parlare speak

tornare return

finire finish

rispōndere reply

ecco here is, here are

il the (*m.*)

tutti all, everybody (*pl. verb*)

una bambina a child, little girl

una madre a mother

una scuola a school

a, ad (*cf. 39*) to, at

dice (*fr. dire, irr.*) says

dicono (they) say

dopo after

mezzogiorno noon

Buon giorno! Good morning!

Buona sera! Good evening!

e, ed (*cf. 39*) and

la the (*f.*)

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

Buon giorno! — dice un bambino. — Buon giorno! — rispondono il padre e la madre. — Buon giorno! — dicono tutti. Il bambino torna a scuola e dice — Buon giorno! — ad uno scolare. Dopo mezzogiorno tutti dicono — Buona sera!

II

1. Finisco; torna; perdiamo; rispondete; trovano: capiscono; finisci. 2. Ecco un libro ed un panchetto. 3. Ecco un bambino ed una bambina. 4. Finiamo un libro. 5. Parla ad uno scolare. 6. Risponde — Buona sera! 7. Un padre e una madre parlano. 8. Ecco uno scolare. 9. Uno scolare finisce un libro. 10. Trovate uno schioppo. 11. Perde un libro. 12. Rispondono un bambino e una bambina.

III

1. Here is a little girl. 2. Here are a book and a gun. 3. I finish, you (*pl.*) understand; thou repliest; they lose, he speaks; thou speakest, he understands, we are returning, we understand. 4. The mother speaks to a little boy. 5. They are replying "Good evening!" 6. A pupil is returning to school. 7. I lose a gun. 8. A mother and a little boy are speaking. 9. They are speaking to a pupil. 10. We are returning to school. 11. Are you finishing a book? 12. The little girl finds the footstool.

LESSON II

PRESENT OF *AVERE* AND *ESSERE*64. Present Indicative of *avere* 'have' and *essere* 'be.'

I have, etc.		I am, etc.	
họ	abbiamo	sono	siamo
hai	avete	sei	siete
ha	hanno	è	sono

65. Personal Pronouns, Nominative Forms (cf. 63, *a*).

io I	noi we
tu thou	voi you
egli, ei , he	egli no, <i>oftener essi</i> , they (<i>m.</i>)
ella she	ella no, <i>oftener esse</i> , they (<i>f.</i>)
esso, essa , he, she, it	essi, esse , they

a. The third person is the one commonly used in address in Italian, to persons not members of one's family; the singular for one person, the plural for more than one.

Ha finito il libro?	Have you (<i>sg.</i>) finished the book?
Hanno comprato la casa?	Have you (<i>pl.</i>) bought the house?

i.* The pronoun is the feminine **Èlla, or more familiarly **Lèi** (pl. **Loro**; usually written with capitals), even when a man is addressed. It stands for some feminine noun like **Vossignoria** 'Your Lordship,' formerly used in respectful address.

Lèi è ammalato, Signore?	Are you ill, sir?
---------------------------------	-------------------

b. The second singular is used to a member of one's family, to the Deity, to a small child, to a woman house-servant, or to animals. Its plural is **voi**.

**c.* The second plural is used to a manservant, a peasant, a cabman, or a porter; but in the south of Italy it is the form in general use except for especial formality.

***d.** The second person, singular or plural, is used by the author to his reader.

e. In these exercises use the third person in address, unless it is indicated that the person spoken to is a small child or a member of the speaker's family.

Buon giorno, Signore! Come sta? Good morning, sir. How do you do?

Hai il libro, Giovannino? Have you the book, Johnny?

Mamma, vieni qua Mother, come here

Tornano a mezzogiorno, Signori? Do you return at noon, gentlemen?

f. 'It is' with a personal pronoun ('It is I,' 'It is you,' etc.) is rendered by a form agreeing in person with the pronoun.

È Lei? Is it you?

Sèi tu? Is it thou?

Siamo noi It is we

Chi è là? Sono io Who is there? It is I

66. Omission of the Indefinite Article. The indefinite article is omitted in the predicate after *essere* (and *fare*, *diventare*) before an unmodified noun of rank, profession, or nationality, except in answer to 'Who is he?'

Chi è questa signora? Who is this lady?

È una contessa She is a countess

Questa signora è contessa This lady is a countess

Questo signore è un medico inglese This gentleman is an English physician

NOTE. For the syntax of the indefinite article, cf. Lesson XXV.

VOCABULARY

un Americano an American (<i>m.</i>)	italiano Italian
un' Americana an American (<i>f.</i>)	americano American
un cognato a brother-in-law	
una cognata a sister-in-law	di of
una contessa a countess	
un fratello a brother	questo this (<i>before masc. noun</i>)
un Italiano an Italian (<i>m.</i>)	questa this (<i>before fem. noun</i>)
un' Italiana an Italian (<i>f.</i>)	
un professore a professor	no no
una signora a lady, a married woman	non not (<i>precedes the verb</i>)
Signora used in address	sì yes
una signorina a young lady, an unmarried woman	chi? who?
Signorina used in address	o (<i>cf.</i> 39) or
un signore a gentleman	amare love
Signore used in address	avere paura (di) be afraid (of)
una sorella a sister	portare carry
uno zio an uncle	preferire prefer
una zia an aunt	temere fear

EXERCISE

I

1. Chi è questo signore? 2. È un professore. 3. Ha una sorella? 4. No, ha un fratello e una cognata. 5. Finisce il libro, Signora? 6. Il bambino ha il padre, la madre, e uno zio. 7. Il bambino e la bambina sono a scuola. 8. Siamo a scuola? 9. No, non siamo a scuola. 10. Il signore e la signora amano il bambino. 11. Tornano a mezzogiorno, Signore? No, non torniamo. 12. La bambina capisce. 13. È Americana, Signorina? 14. No, non sono Americana, sono Italiana. 15. Ecco uno scolare. 16. Chi è? Sono io. 17. Ecco un signore. È professore? Sì, è un professore americano. 18. Tutti parlano a questa bambina. 19. Preferiamo il libro. 20. Non hanno paura.

II

1. Are you an Italian, Madam? 2. No, I am an American.
 3. This little girl is afraid of a gun. 4. Are they at school? 5. No, they are not at school. 6. Have you (*pl.*) a brother? 7. No, we have a brother-in-law and a sister-in-law. 8. Are you speaking to a professor? 9. Yes, I am speaking to a professor. 10. Who is this lady? She is an Italian. 11. Is she a countess? 12. Yes, she is an Italian countess. 13. Does the professor prefer a gun or a book? 14. The lady has an uncle.

LESSON III

PLURAL OF NOUNS

67. Plural of Nouns. *a.* Nouns ending in **o** or **e** in the singular change **o** or **e** to **i** in the plural.

Un ragazzo, due ragazzi	A boy, two boys
Un inglese, dieci inglesi	An Englishman, ten Englishmen
Una lezione, tre lezioni	One lesson, three lessons

b. Feminine nouns ending in **a** in the singular change **a** to **e** in the plural.

Una finestra, nove finestre	A window, nine windows
-----------------------------	------------------------

1. Masculine nouns in **a** take **i** in the plural.

Un socialista, quattro socialisti	A socialist, four socialists
-----------------------------------	------------------------------

NOTE. For full treatment of plural of nouns, see Lesson XXX.

68. Compound Tenses. *a.* The compound tenses of all transitive and some intransitive verbs are formed by means of **avere** (cf. 120).

b. The past participle of verbs of the first conjugation ends in **-ato**, of the second in **-uto**, and of the third in **-ito**,

these terminations being substituted respectively for the infinitive endings *-are*, *-ere*, and *-ire*.

Ho finito il libro	I have finished the book
Abbiamo visitato la famiglia	We have visited the family
Hanno creduto la storia	They have believed the story
Il padre è tornato	The father has returned

69. Future Indicative of Model Verbs.

troverò	troveremo	perderò	perderemo	capirò	capiremo
troverai	troverete	perderai	perderete	capirai	capirete
troverà	troveranno	perderà	perderanno	capirà	capiranno

VOCABULARY

un bicchiere	a glass	aiutare	help (<i>takes a before infinitive</i>)
un coltello	a knife	apparecchiare	set table
un cucchiaino	(<i>pl.</i> cucchiaini) a spoon	consistere (in)	consist (of)
una forchetta	a fork	distendere	(<i>irr. p. abs. and p. p.</i>) spread
un piatto	a plate, dish	mettere	(<i>irr. p. abs. and p. p.</i>) put, put on
una posata	knife, fork, and spoon, a place at table	prima di	before (<i>time</i>)
una tavola	a table	domani	to-morrow
una tovaglia	a tablecloth	oggi	to-day
un uomo	(<i>pl.</i> uomini) a man	in	in, into
due	two	su	(<i>cf.</i> 39) on
quattro	four		

EXERCISE

I

1. La Flora è una buona (*good*) bambina. 2. Aiuterà la mamma ad apparecchiare. 3. Apparecchia prima di mezzogiorno. 4. Domani torneranno due uomini e un bambino. 5. Distende la tovaglia, mette quattro piatti, quattro bicchieri, e quattro posate. 6. Una posata consiste in un coltello, una forchetta, e un cucchiaino. 7. Un

bambino e una bambina distenderanno la tovaglia. 8. Metterò uno schioppo sur una tavola. 9. Troveremo il libro prima di domani. 10. Bambini, apparecchierete a mezzogiorno.

II

1. One mother, two mothers; a glass, four glasses; a pupil, four pupils. 2. I shall understand, thou wilt put, they will reply, we shall return. 3. They will return to-morrow. 4. We shall set the table before noon. 5. Children, you will lay the cloth. 6. I shall put on four knives, two forks, two glasses, and one spoon. 7. Shall you return before to-morrow, sir? 8. Uncle, shall you bring a gun and a knife? 9. They will return to school and finish the book. 10. Two men are speaking to a pupil. 11. They have set the table, but we have lost two knives. 12. They will help Maria to find the fork.

LESSON IV

DEFINITE ARTICLE

70. The Definite Article. Forms :

MASC. SING.	MASC. PLUR.	FEM. SING.	FEM. PLUR.
il	i	la	le
lo	gli		
l'	{ gli gl'	l'	{ le l'

71. Masculine. *a.* **Il, i,** are used before masculine nouns beginning with any consonant except *s impure*, *z*, or *gn*.

Il letto, **i** letti

The bed, the beds

b. **Lo, gli,** are used before masculine nouns beginning with *s impure*, *z*, or *gn*.

Lo Spagnuolo, **gli** Spagnuoli

The Spaniard, the Spaniards

Lo zio, **gli** zii

The uncle, the uncles

Lo gnocco, **gli** gnocchi

The dumpling, the dumplings

*1. For **gli** is often substituted **li** before words in which the syllable **gli** occurs.

Lo scoglio, li scogli The reef, the reefs

*2. For **i** is substituted **gli** before the plural of **dio**.

Il dio, gli dei (cf. § 179, c) The god, the gods

c. **L', gli**, are used before masculine nouns beginning with a vowel.

L' autore, gli autori The author, the authors

1. **Gli** becomes **gl'** when the vowel is **i**.

L' imperatore, gl' imperatori The emperor, the emperors

d. The form **li** often occurs in dates.

Li 8 dicembre The eighth of December

72. Feminine. a. **La, le**, are used before feminine nouns beginning with a consonant.

La seggiola, le seggiole The chair, the chairs

La stanza, le stanze The room, the rooms

b. **L', le**, are used before feminine nouns beginning with a vowel.

L' ora, le ore The hour, the hours

1. **Le** becomes **l'** when the vowel is **e** unless the plural is identical with the singular.

L' era, l' ere The era, the eras

L' età, le età The age, the ages

73. Uses of the Definite Article. a. The definite article is required, contrary to English usage, before an abstract noun, or a noun taken in a general sense as representative of its class.

La vita è breve Life is short

I cavalli sono intelligenti Horses are intelligent

La pazienza è una virtù Patience is a virtue

La vita dell' ape The life of the bee

b. The definite article is used before the surnames of men ; and familiarly before the given names of women.

L' Ariosto fu un grande scrittore Ariosto was a great author
La Pietrina chiama la mamma Pietrina is calling her mother

NOTE. For the syntax of the definite article, see Lesson XXII.

74. Past Absolute Indicative of Model Verbs.

trovai	trovammo	perdei	perdemmo	capii	capimmo
trovasti	trovaste	perdesti	perdeste	capisti	capiste
trovò	trovârono	perdè	perdêrono	capì	capîrono

VOCABULARY

l' amico (<i>m.</i>) friend	l' occasione opportunity
l' avvocato (<i>m.</i>) lawyer	la pazienza patience
la battaglia battle	la salute health
la bellezza beauty	la scommessa wager
la bussola compass, bearings	il sonno sleep
il cervello brain, mind	lo speculatore speculator
il colmo summit	la sventura misfortune
il coraggio courage	il tempo time
il denaro money	il tiranno tyrant
la forza force	la vita life
il generale general	ieri yesterday
la gioventù youth	finalmente finally
la gloria glory	ma but
l' imprudente (<i>m.</i>) imprudent man	per for; <i>with infinitive</i> in order to
l' ingrato (<i>m.</i>) ingrate	tre three
la lite lawsuit	cinque five
la memoria memory	tutto all, everything
il mondo world	

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

L' uomo perde tutto in questo mondo : perde la bellezza, la gioventù, le forze, gli amici, la pazienza, il tempo, il coraggio, la gloria, l' occasione, la bussola, le scommesse, il cervello, e finalmente, per colmo di sventura, perde la vita. Gl' imprudenti perdono la salute, gli avvocati perdono le liti, i generali perdono le battaglie, i tiranni perdono il sonno, gl' ingrati la memoria e gli speculatori il denaro.

II

1. Lo speculatore perde la scommessa. 2. Il generale, per colmo di sventura, perde l' occasione. 3. Apparecchieranno, tornarono ; consiste, distendesti, finiste, capì ; tememmo, risponderemo ; aiutò, parlano, portai, aiuterò, parlerai, temerono. 4. L' avvocato parlò ad un amico. 5. Gli scolari finirono il libro. 6. I generali perdettero la battaglia.

III

1. Did you understand the lesson yesterday, children? 2. The men lost the gun, and returned. 3. Speculators lose sleep. 4. Did you return yesterday, sir? 5. The lawyers will lose the case. 6. We have the opportunities in this world, but we lose time. 7. The pupil carried the books to school. 8. We laid the cloth and helped our mother [*la mamma*]. 9. The imprudent (men) talked to a speculator. 10. Thou returnest, he spoke, we finished ; I shall put, they carried, he will aid ; thou spokest, you returned, they feared, I found ; we are afraid.

LESSON V

CONTRACTION OF ARTICLE

75. Contraction. The prepositions *a*, *con*, *da*, *di*, *in*, *per*, and *su*, when followed by the definite article, are contracted with it to form one word as follows :

	<i>il</i>	<i>i</i>	<i>lo</i>	<i>gli</i>	<i>la</i>	<i>le</i>	<i>l'</i>
<i>a</i> to, at	<i>al</i>	<i>ai or a'</i>	<i>allo</i>	<i>agli</i>	<i>alla</i>	<i>alle</i>	<i>all'</i>
<i>con</i> with	<i>col</i>	<i>cōi or cō'</i>	<i>collo</i>	<i>cogli</i>	<i>colla</i>	<i>colle</i>	<i>coll'</i>
<i>da</i> by, from	<i>dal</i>	<i>dai or da'</i>	<i>dallo</i>	<i>dagli</i>	<i>dalla</i>	<i>dalle</i>	<i>dall'</i>
<i>di</i> of	<i>del</i>	<i>dēi or dē'</i>	<i>dello</i>	<i>degli</i>	<i>della</i>	<i>delle</i>	<i>dell'</i>
<i>in</i> in, into	<i>nel</i>	<i>nei or nē'</i>	<i>nello</i>	<i>negli</i>	<i>nella</i>	<i>nelle</i>	<i>nell'</i>
<i>per</i> for	<i>pel</i>	<i>pei or pē'</i>	<i>per lo</i>	<i>per gli</i>	<i>per la</i>	<i>per le</i>	<i>per l'</i>
<i>su</i> on	<i>sul</i>	<i>sui or su'</i>	<i>sullo</i>	<i>sugli</i>	<i>sulla</i>	<i>sulle</i>	<i>sull'</i>

76. The preposition must be repeated before each noun.

Parlò allo Spagnuolo e al Francese He spoke to the Spaniard and the Frenchman

77. The Partitive. The partitive idea, of something less than the whole or fewer than all, expressed in English, if at all, by 'some' or 'any,' is expressed in Italian by *di* plus the definite article. It is sometimes omitted, but in good Tuscan usage is oftener expressed. (For 'some,' 'any,' used as pronouns, cf. 94, 124.)

<i>Hò del pane</i>	I have bread, I have some bread
<i>Ci sono dei libri sullo scaffale</i>	There are books on the shelf

a. This sign of the partitive is omitted in the negative, unless the noun is modified by an adjective.

<i>Non ho pane</i>	I have no bread, I haven't any bread
<i>Non ho del pane bianco</i>	I have no white bread

b. And in enumerations.

Garibaldi non offrì ai suoi soldati	Garibaldi offered his soldiers nothing
che fame, sete, marce forzate,	but hunger, thirst, forced
battaglie e morte	marches, battles, and death

78. The Possessive. The possessive in Italian is always expressed by *di* before a noun.

La casa di mio padre	My father's house
L'orologio di Giovanni	John's watch
Ecco un quaderno; è dello scolare?	Here is an exercise book; is it the pupil's?

79. Past Future ('should,' 'would') of Model Verbs.

troverei	troveremmo	perderei	perderemmo
troveresti	trovereste	perderesti	perdereste
troverebbe	troverebbero	perderebbe	perderebbero
	capirei	capiremmo	
	capiresti	capireste	
	capirebbe	capirebbero	

VOCABULARY

l'acqua (<i>f.</i>) water	annaffiare water
il fiore flower	appassire wither
il giardino garden	fiorire bloom
la mattina morning	levare raise
il mugheretto lily-of-the-valley	scendere (<i>p. abs. and p. p. irr.</i>) descend, go down
la pianta plant, tree	alle sei at six o'clock
la rosa rose	ci sono there are
lo scaffale shelf	senza without
la tazza cup	sette seven
bello beautiful	si (<i>third person refl.</i>) himself, herself, itself, themselves
fiorito in bloom	si leva (<i>refl. use of levare</i>) rises
molto much	
ogni every	

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

La Luigina ha un bel giardino tutto fiorito. Nel giardino ci sono rose e mughetti. La Luigina ama molto i fiori. Ogni mattina si leva alle sei, scende nel giardino e annaffia le piante. Le piante appassirebbero senz' acqua.

II

1. Il padre della bambina aiutò la famiglia dello zio. 2. Metterei i coltelli colle forchette sulla tavola. 3. Ci sono dei fiori nel giardino dell' amico? 4. Portano dei libri dalla scuola. 5. Non troveremmo il libro sullo scaffale? 6. I bambini non apparecchierebbero senza la mamma.

III

1. Are there some roses on the table? 2. There are roses and lilies-of-the-valley in the garden. 3. Would the plants bloom without water? No, they would wither. 4. The little boys carried a gun from the table to the shelf. 5. By the men, to the pupils, for the little boys, for the mother, of the books, with the friend, on the footstool, in the cup. 6. Would you speak to the speculator and the lawyer? 7. We should not put the flowers with the books. 8. The uncles would go down into the lawyer's garden. 9. The pupils' mother will lay the cloth. 10. They will put the table in the garden.

LESSON VI

GENDER OF NOUNS

80. Gender of Nouns. *a.* Names of males are masculine ; names of females are feminine.

Il nonno

The grandfather

La donna

The woman

1. EXCEPTIONS: **guida** 'guide,' **guàrdia** 'guard,' 'policeman,' **persōna** 'person,' **recluta** 'recruit,' **sentinella** 'sentinel,' **spia** 'spy,' and **vedetta** 'scout,' which are feminine, although usually referring to men.

b. Names of objects without sex are either masculine or feminine, there being no neuter in Italian.

1. Nouns ending in **a** are feminine.

La lāmpada

The lamp

EXCEPTIONS: **duca** 'duke,' **monarca** 'monarch,' **poeta** 'poet,' and other words listed under Lesson XXXIV ; and words ending in **-ista**, like **artista** 'artist' and **pianista** 'pianist,' when referring to men.

2. Nouns ending in **-giōne**, **-ziōne**, and **-ūdine** are feminine.

la ragiōne reason

la solitūdine solitude

la conversaziōne conversation

3. Nouns ending in **o** are masculine.

il ginōcchio knee

EXCEPTIONS: **l'eco** (of common gender) 'echo,' and **la mano** 'hand.'

4. Nouns ending in **u** are feminine.

la virtù virtue

EXCEPTIONS: a few foreign words, like **il bambù** 'bamboo'; and some other parts of speech used substantively, as **il più** 'the most,' **per lo più** 'for the most part.'

NOTE. For further treatment of the gender of nouns, see Lesson XXXIV.

81. Four Tenses of *ēssere* 'be.'

PRESENT INDICATIVE

sōno I am
sēi thou art
ē he, she, it is
siamo we are
siēte you are
sōno they are

PAST FUTURE

sarēi I should be
sarēsti thou wouldst be
sarēbbe he *etc.* would be
sarēmmo we should be
sarēste you would be
sarēbbero they would be

FUTURE INDICATIVE

sarò I shall be
sarai thou shalt be
sarà he, she, it will be
sarēmo we shall be
sarēte you will be
saranno they will be

PAST ABSOLUTE

fui I was
fōsti thou wast
fu he *etc.* was
fummo we were
fōste you were
fūrono they were

VOCABULARY

la casa house
a casa home, homeward
il duca duke
la festa festival
la fine end
la guida guide
la lezione lesson
la mano hand
il monarca monarch
la persona person
il poēta poet
la porta door

la sentinella sentinel
la settimana week
la vacanza vacation
la vedetta scout
la volontà will, willingness
battere beat, clap
bisognare (*impers.*) be necessary
cominciare begin (*takes a before infn.*)
continuare continue
imparare learn
avrò I shall have

anche also, even
 bene well
 che who, which (*rel.*)
 come how, as
 quanti? } how many?
 quante? }

quel che what, that which
 otto eight
 dieci ten
 starò (*from stare, irr.*) I shall be
 voglio (*from volere, irr.*) I wish,
 I will

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

Il bambino dice :

Lunedì. — Voglio cominciare bene la settimana ; starò attento alle lezioni, e sarò buono.

Martedì. — Bisogna continuare quel che abbiamo ben cominciato. Anche oggi sarò buono.

Mercoledì. — Come sono contento ! Domani è giovedì, e avrò vacanza !

Giovedì. — Abbiamo vacanza ! Battiamo le mani !

Venerdì. — Oggi tornerò a scuola con molta volontà.

Sābato. — È la fine della settimana.

Domēnica. — La domenica è giorno di festa !

II

1. Quanti giorni ci sono nella settimana ? 2. Nella settimana ci sono sette giorni. 3. Domani è lunedì ; bisognerà tornare a scuola. 4. Chi sono arrivati lunedì ? Un poeta e una sentinella. 5. I bambini imparerebbero le lezioni. 6. Saremo, sarebbero, siete, fui, sono, siamo, saranno. 7. Abbiamo vacanza il giovedì. 8. Cominciò a imparare le lezioni.

III

1. To-morrow is Friday, and I shall learn the four lessons. 2. He would be at the door of the school at noon. 3. We shall go to school Monday, but at the end of the week we shall return home. 4. It is necessary to set the table before noon, and the

children will put on the cups with the glasses. 5. How many cups are there on the shelf? 6. Dante was an Italian poet. 7. Who are the men in the garden? They are a guide and a scout; they are speaking to the duke. 8. The children will clap their (the) hands at the end of the week. 9. The lady's flowers are in the glass; I shall put some water in the glass. 10. On Sunday it is not necessary to learn lessons.

LESSON VII

ADJECTIVES AND ADVERBS

82. Most adjectives end in either *o* or *e*.

a. Adjectives in *o* have the forms of the nouns in *o* and *a*: *rosso, rossi, rossa, rosse*, 'red.'

Il libro rosso

The red book

Le rose rosse

The red roses

b. Adjectives in *e* take *i* in the plural, but do not change for gender.

La camera grande, le camere grandi

The large room, the large rooms

Un contadino semplice, dei contadini semplici

A simple peasant, simple peasants

83. Agreement of Adjectives. *a.* An adjective agrees with its noun in gender and number.

Il cappello nero

The black hat

Le piccole mani

The small hands

La rosa e la mammola belle

The beautiful rose and violet

**b.* An adjective modifying two or more nouns of different gender is either masculine plural or in agreement with the noun nearest it.

Prati e selve vastissime

Very vast meadows and woods

1. But when referring to persons it must be in the masculine plural.

I signori e le signore sono partiti	The gentlemen and ladies are gone
-------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

*c. A plural noun may take two or more adjectives in the singular instead of being repeated in the singular before each adjective.

I governi inglese e tedesco	The English and German governments
-----------------------------	------------------------------------

84. Position of Adjectives. a. Most adjectives of size or quantity, numerals and pronominal adjectives, and usually *bello*, *buono*, *solo*, *ultimo*, and *unico*, precede the noun.

Una piccola scatola	A small box
Ho poco denaro	I have little money
Il primo capitolo	The first chapter
Quegli uomini sono francesi	Those men are French

1. Numerals may follow when emphatic.

Lire 20	20 lire
---------	---------

b. Adjectives of shape, color, nationality, and descriptive qualities generally, participles used as adjectives, adjectives longer than their nouns, and adjectives modified by an adverb or a suffix, usually follow.

La stampa inglese	The English press
Il vestito celeste	The blue dress
La cioccolata svizzera	Swiss chocolate
La notte oscura	The dark night
Il risultato voluto	The desired result
Una persona rispettabile	A respectable person
Una bella signora, una signora più bella, una signorina bellina	A beautiful lady, a more beautiful lady, a pretty young lady

1. Adjectives of characteristic may precede, when the characteristic is peculiarly intimate or usual.

La bianca neve

The white snow

***c.** When two or more adjectives modify the same noun, either both follow, or one precedes and the other follows, the less emphatic preceding.

Un palazzo antico e bello }
Un bel palazzo antico } A beautiful ancient palace

***d.** Some adjectives have a different meaning according as they precede or follow their noun. The unusual position often indicates the literal, and the usual position a more metaphorical, meaning.

Un uomo grande

A large man

Un grand' uomo

A great man

Una cara figlia

A dear daughter

Una collana cara

A costly necklace

La chiesa di santo Stéfano

The church of St. Stephen

È un uomo santo

He is a saintly man

***e.** The adjective may also be placed in the unusual position for emphasis.

85. Some Irregular Adjectives. **a.** The adjectives buono 'good,' bello 'beautiful,' santo 'saint,' 'saintly,' and grande 'large,' vary in the masculine on the same principle as do the articles. The forms are —

1. Before any consonant except *s* *impure*, sg. buon, bel, san, gran; pl. buoni, bei, santi, grandi. (Gran may also be used in the feminine singular and the masculine plural.)

Un buon soldato

A good soldier

Un bel cavallo, dei bei cavalli

A handsome horse, handsome horses

San Pàolo

Saint Paul

Una gran sala

A large hall

2. Before a vowel, sg. (m. and f.) **buon, bell', sant', grand'**; pl. (m.) **buoni, begli, santi, grandi**.

Un buon amico	A good friend
Un bell' uomo	A handsome man
Sant' Agostino	Saint Augustine
Begli uccelli	Beautiful birds
La bell' aria	The beautiful aria

3. Before *s impure*, in the predicate, or when placed after their noun, the full forms: sg. **buono, bello, santo, grande**; pl. **buoni, belli, santi, grandi**.

Buon pane	Good bread
Questo pane è buono	This bread is good
Un bello spettacolo	A fine spectacle
Santo Stēfano	Saint Stephen
I buoni stivali	Good boots
Begli uomini	Handsome men
Gli uomini sono belli	The men are handsome

b. The following adjectives are invariable: **fu** 'the late,' 'formerly,' **pari** 'equal,' 'even,' **impari** 'unequal,' 'odd,' **più** 'many,' 'most,' and **ogni** 'every' (with no plural).

La fu Signora Bianchi	The late Mrs. White
Il nūmero pari	The even number
I nūmeri impari	Uneven numbers
Sono andato più volte a Parigi	I have been to Paris several times
Il pane di ogni giorno	Daily bread

86. The Demonstrative Adjective. (Cf. 190.)

a. Questo 'this.'

SINGULAR	PLURAL
questo (<i>m.</i>)	questi (<i>m.</i>)
questa (<i>f.</i>)	queste (<i>f.</i>)

b. Quello 'that.'

SINGULAR	PLURAL
quel, quello, quell' (<i>m.</i>)	quelli, quei, quegli
quella, quell' (<i>f.</i>)	quelle

1. Quello is inflected like bello. (Cf. 85, *a.*)

87. The Interrogative Adjective. (Cf. 191.)

a. Quanto, quanta? 'how much?'

Quanti, quante? 'how many?'

b. Quale, quali? 'which, which one?' 'which ones?'

c. Che? 'what?'

88. Any adjective may be used substantively.

Il pōvero

The poor man

a. Proper adjectives are not capitalized unless used substantively, and not invariably even then.

La lingua francese

The French language

Ecco due Ingleſi (ingleſi)

There are two Englishmen

***b.** The substantive is understood after the adjective in a good many familiar phrases.

Per la più breve (strada)

By the shortest route

Alla dēstra (mano)

To the right

Àverla (ſorte) peggior

To have a worse lot

Nel (territorio) fiorentino

In the Florentine territory

Alla buona (maniēra)

Familiarly, in everyday fashion

Alla (maniēra) francese

In the French mode

89. Adverbs. (See Lesson XXXVI.)

a. Adverbs are most commonly formed by adding **-mente** to the feminine form of the adjective.

Sincero, sinceramente

Sincere, sincerely

Prudente, prudentemente

Prudent, prudently

b. The words **molto** 'much,' **poco** 'little,' **troppo** 'too much,' **tanto** 'so much,' and **quanto** 'as much' or 'how much,' are either adverbs or adjectives. As adjectives they have the forms of adjectives in *o*; as adverbs they are invariable.

Molti uōmini sono **molto** infelici

Lei è **tanto** buono, Signore

Tanti saluti a casa

Ho **pochi** libri; sono **troppo** cari

Ci sono **troppe** persone nella stanza

Many men are very unhappy

You are so kind, sir

Many kind regards to your family

I have few books; they are too dear

There are too many persons in the room

VOCABULARY

l' **āngolo** (*m.*) corner

l' **appartamento** (*m.*) apartment

la **cāmera da letto** (*m.*) bedroom

la **chiesa** church

la **cucina** kitchen, cooking

l' **invēno** (*m.*) winter

il **palazzo** palace

il **panorama** view

il **ponte** bridge

la **riva** bank, wharf

la **sala da pranzo** (*m.*) dining-room

il **salōne** parlor

la **stanza** room

la **terrazza** balcony

la **tōrre** tower

la **via** street

Firenze Florence

Le Cascine 'the Dairies,' public gardens of Florence

lo **Schiavōne** Slav

bello fine, beautiful

buono good

famōso famous

grande large

largo (*pl. larghi, larghe*) wide

lungo (*pl. lunghi, lunghe*) long

santo saint, saintly

vecchio (*pl. vecchi*) old

abitare dwell, live

guardare look at

passare pass, spend

sedere (*irr.*) sit

accanto next, next door

dinanzi a in front of

dōve where

fa makes, does (*from fare, irr.*)

fa āngolo cōn is at the corner of

perchè because, why

sempre always

vediamo we see

vicino a near

EXERCISE

I

1. Passiamo quest' inverno a Firenze. 2. Abbiamo un bell' appartamento vicino alle Cascine. 3. Il signore che abita nella casa accanto è un buon medico inglese. 4. Nell' appartamento ci sono sette stanze: un salone, una sala da pranzo, la cucina, e quattro camere da letto. 5. Le camere sono grandi, e il salone è bello, con una terrazza molto larga. 6. Dopo il pranzo sediamo ogni sera sulla terrazza, e guardiamo il bel panorama. 7. Vediamo la torre della chiesa di Santo Spirito, e il Ponte Vecchio famoso, ma non vediamo il Palazzo Vecchio. 8. Il palazzo dove abitiamo fa angolo colla Via Curtatone. 9. Il Palazzo Pitti è vicino al Ponte Vecchio.

II

1. We live in a large apartment in Florence. 2. We have six rooms, with a large parlor, but a very small kitchen. 3. That man is the lawyer who lives near the Old Palace. 4. The gentleman who lives in the house next door is a lawyer. 5. There is a fine square in front of the Pitti Palace. 6. Near the church of Saint Mark in Venice is the Church of St. Stephen. 7. The Duke's palace is near the Wharf of the Slavs. 8. Handsome men are not always good; good men are not always handsome. 9. Those men live in a large palace; the rooms are large, they are long and wide. 10. Why are those ladies looking at the Old Bridge? Because it is beautiful and famous. 11. Those gentlemen are looking at the Palace of the Uffizi (*pl.*).

LESSON VIII

THE REGULAR VERBS

90. *a.* There are three regular conjugations, the first ending in *-are* in the infinitive, the second in *-ere* or *'-ere*, and the third in *-ire*.

b. Table of Regular Verbs.

INFINITIVE

trov-are 'find'	crēd-ere 'believe, think'	cap-ire 'understand'
-----------------	---------------------------	----------------------

PRESENT PARTICIPLE

trov-ando	cred-endo	cap-endo
-----------	-----------	----------

PAST PARTICIPLE

trov-ato, -a, -i, -e	cred-uto, -a, -i, -e	cap-ito, -a, -i, -e
----------------------	----------------------	---------------------

INDICATIVE

PRESENT

I find, I am finding, *etc.*

trov-o	trov-iamo	crēd-o	cred-iamo	cap-isco	cap-iamo
trov-i	trov-ate	crēd-i	cred-ete	cap-isci	cap-ite
trov-a	trov-ano	crēd-e	cred-onο	cap-isce	cap-iscono

PAST DESCRIPTIVE

I found, was finding, used to find, *etc.*

trov-avo, -ava	trov-avamo	cred-evo, -eva, -ea	cred-evamo
trov-avi	trov-avate	cred-evi	cred-evate
trov-ava	trov-avano	cred-eva, -ea	cred-evano, -evano
	cap-ivo, -iva, -ia	cap-ivamo	
	cap-ivi	cap-ivate	
	cap-iva, -ia	cap-ivano	

PAST ABSOLUTE

I found, *etc.*

trov-ai	trov-ammo	cred-ēi, -etti	cred-emma
trov-asti	trov-aste	cred-esti	cred-este
trov-ò	trov-arono	cred-ē, -ette	cred-ērono, -ettero
	cap-ii	cap-immo	
	cap-isti	cap-iste	
	cap-ì	cap-irono	

FUTURE

I shall find, *etc.*

trov-er-ò	trov-er-emo	perd-er-ò	perd-er-emo
trov-er-ai	trov-er-ete	perd-er-ai	perd-er-ete
trov-er-à	trov-er-anno	perd-er-à	perd-er-anno
	cap-ir-ò	cap-ir-emo	
	cap-ir-ai	cap-ir-ete	
	cap-ir-à	cap-ir-anno	

PAST FUTURE

I should find, *etc.*

trover-ēi	trover-emma	perder-ēi	perder-emma
trover-esti	trover-este	perder-esti	perder-este
trover-ēbbe	trover-ēbbero	perder-ēbbe	perder-ēbbero
	capir-ēi	capir-emma	
	capir-esti	capir-este	
	capir-ēbbe	capir-ēbbero	

IMPERATIVE

Find, let him find, *etc.*

	trov-iamo		perd-iamo		cap-iamo
trov-a	trov-ate	perd-i	perd-ete	cap-i	cap-ite
trov-i	trov-ino	perd-a	perd-ano	cap-isca	cap-iscano

SUBJUNCTIVE

(Variously rendered, according to sense)

PRESENT

trɔv-i	trov-iamo	pɛrd-a	perd-iamo	cap-isca	cap-iamo
trɔv-i	trov-iate	pɛrd-a	perd-iate	cap-isca	cap-iate
trɔv-i	trɔv-ino	pɛrd-a	pɛrd-ano	cap-isca	cap-iscano

PAST

trov-assi	trov-issimo	perd-essi	perd-issimo	cap-issi	cap-issimo
trov-assi	trov-aste	perd-essi	perd-este	cap-issi	cap-iste
trov-asse	trov-essero	perd-esse	perd-essero	cap-isse	cap-issero

91. Formation of Regular Verbs. Italian regular verbs have three principal parts: the infinitive, and the present and past participles. These all have the same stem.

a. All simple tenses except future and past future are formed by dropping **-are**, **-ire**, or **-ere** from the infinitive, and adding the personal endings. For compound tenses, cf. **96, 120**.

b. The future and past future are formed by dropping merely the final **e** of the infinitive, and adding the terminations; verbs of the first conjugation first change the **a** of **-are** to **e**.

c. Verbs of the third conjugation may be said to have a second stem in their inchoative form in **-isco**, from which are formed the singular and third person plural of the present indicative and subjunctive, and the singular imperative.

92. Imperative. **a.** The third persons of the imperative, it will be seen, are filled in from the subjunctive.

Finisca il lavoro	Let him finish the work
Tornino a mezzogiorno	Let them return at noon
Creda quello che dico, Signore	Believe what I say, sir

b. The negative of the second person singular of the imperative is formed with the infinitive.

Non aver paura, Chiarina	Do not be afraid, little Clara
Non apparecchiare ancora, Peppina	Do not set the table yet, Josephine

93. Past Subjunctive. a. The past subjunctive is used in a condition of which the conclusion is in the past future.

Se mi mandasse il danaro, com- prerei questa casa	If he should send (sent) me the money, I should buy this house
---	--

VOCABULARY

l' anno (<i>m.</i>) year	azzurro blue
l' autunno (<i>m.</i>) autumn	caldo hot
il calore heat	corto short
il colore color	freddo cold
l' estate (<i>f.</i>) summer	primo first
il garofano carnation	ultimo last
la giornata day, period of one day	verde green
il lavoro work, task	nove nine
il mese month	due-dici twelve
il Natale Christmas	quale, -i which? which one?
la neve snow	cantare sing
il nido nest	diminuire lessen
la primavera spring	fa caldo it is hot (weather)
la stagione season	fa freddo it is cold (weather)
la terra earth	si chiudono <i>refl. use of</i> chiudere (<i>irr.</i>) close
la tristezza sadness	si riaprono <i>refl. use of</i> riaprire (<i>irr.</i>) reopen
l' uccello (<i>m.</i>) bird	si tinge <i>refl. use of</i> tingere (<i>irr.</i>) color
la vendemmia vintage	
più more, most	
se if	

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

I MESI DELL' ANNO

Gennaio. — È il primo mese. Neve, freddo, e giornate corte.

Febbraio. — È il mese più corto dell' anno.

Marzo. — Comincia la primavera. L' uccello torna al vecchio nido.

Aprile. — La terra si tinge di verde, il cielo d' azzurro.

Maggio. — È il mese delle rose e dei garofani. Che festa di colori!

Giugno. — Finisce l' anno scolastico.

Luglio. — È estate. Si chiudono le scuole.

Agosto. — Fa molto caldo.

Settembre. — Il calore dell' estate diminuisce. Comincia la vendemmia e l' autunno.

Ottobre. — La sera e la mattina fa fresco. Si riaprono le scuole.

Novembre. — Questo è il mese della tristezza.

Dicembre. — È l' ultimo mese dell' anno, e siamo all' inverno. Ecco il freddo, ma anche la più bella delle feste: il Natale!

II

1. Quanti mesi ci sono nell' anno? 2. Fa freddo di gennaio, ma il freddo diminuisce di marzo. 3. È primavera; gli uccelli cominciano a cantare nel giardino. 4. Le nevi d' inverno sono molto fredde. 5. Qual è la stagione calda? Fa sempre caldo l' estate. 6. Nella primavera cantano gli uccelli. 7. Cantino, Signorine, questa sera. 8. Se gli uccelli non temessero il freddo, tornerebbero più presto al nido. 9. Tornate a mezzogiorno, bambini. 10. Se il freddo diminuisse, la primavera tornerebbe. 11. Luisina, porta i piatti sulla tavola. 12. Se finissimo il lavoro prima di mezzogiorno, torneremmo a casa. 13. Se farà troppo caldo non torneremo.

III

1. There are twelve months in the year. 2. December, January, and February are the months of winter. What are the months of summer? 3. Which is the cold season? It is always cold in winter. 4. If the men should speak, should we reply? 5. Let us return home. 6. If the birds returned to the old nest, they would sing. 7. It is always very hot in August, but the heat grows less in September. 8. Do not fear the heat of summer. 9. Speak to that sentinel, sir. 10. If the cold should diminish, we should return in March. 11. If we spoke to the Italians, they would reply in Italian. 12. Little girl, do not be afraid of that gun. 13. Look, madam. 14. Go down into the garden, miss. 15. How many seasons are there in the year? 16. Reply in Italian, young ladies. 17. It is November; the days begin to be short.

LESSON IX

CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS

94. *a.* Accusative, Direct Object.

<i>mi</i> me	<i>ci</i> us
<i>ti</i> thee	<i>vi</i> you
<i>lò</i> him	<i>li</i> them (<i>m.</i>)
<i>la</i> her	<i>le</i> them (<i>f.</i>)
<i>ne</i> some, any, of it, of them (<i>cf.</i> 124)	

*1. Instead of *ci* is often found, especially in poetry and older writings, the form *ne*; and sometimes *il* for *lò*.

b. Dative, Indirect Object.

<i>mi</i> to me, for me	<i>ci</i> to us, for us
<i>ti</i> to thee, for thee	<i>vi</i> to you, for you
<i>gli</i> to him, for him	
<i>le</i> to her, for her	<i>loro</i> to them, for them (<i>m. or f.</i>)

c. Reflexive Object, Direct or Indirect.

mi myself, to <i>or</i> for myself	ci ourselves, <i>etc.</i>
ti thyself, to <i>or</i> for thyself	vi yourselves, <i>etc.</i>
si himself, herself, <i>etc.</i>	si themselves, <i>etc.</i> (<i>m. or f.</i>)

95. Rules of Syntax. *a.* These pronouns are called conjunctive, because conjoined to the verb in the relation of object. The object pronoun, whether direct, indirect, or reflexive, immediately precedes the governing finite verb (except **loro**, which always follows). If the verb is compound, the conjunctive (except **loro**) precedes the auxiliary; **loro** follows the participle.

Lø fa	He does it
Nø parla	He speaks of it
Ci alziamo	We get up
Mi ha detto la verità	He has told me the truth
Lø danno un mazzolino di fiori	They give her a bunch of flowers
Parliamo loro	We speak to them, let us speak to them
Abbiamo dato loro un quadro	We have given them a picture

***1.** In literary usage **loro** will sometimes be found preceding the verb.

b. But if the governing verb be an infinitive, a positive imperative of the first or second person, a present participle, or a past participle used without auxiliary, then the conjunctive pronoun (except **loro**) becomes enclitic, being appended to the verb-form so as to make one word with it. **Loro** is never appended. The enclitic makes no change in the accent of the verb-form.

Viene a vederlo	He comes to see him
Abbiamo fatto il possibile di trovarli	We have tried our best to find them

Vuol dir loro che sono arrivate delle lettere	He wishes to tell them that some letters have come
Avendolo	Having it
Avendolo detto	Having said it
Dettogli questo	This being said to him
Il dispaccio comunicatoci dal cōn- sole afferma che la guerra è stata dichiarata	The telegram communicated to us by the consul states that war has been declared
Lo punirono per averne parlato	They punished him for having spoken of it

1. *With the imperative :*

	troviāmolo		non lo perdiamo
trōvalo	trovātelo	non lo pērdere	non lo perdetē
lo trōvi	lo trōvino	non lo pērda	non lo pērdano

2. The **e** is dropped from the infinitive before an enclitic pronoun (cf. 31, a).

Andiamo a vederla	Let us go and see her
-------------------	-----------------------

VOCABULARY

bagnato wet	comprare buy
il burro butter	desiderare wish, desire
la campagna the country	favorire favor with, kindly give
la lettera letter	piacere (<i>irr.</i>) please, be pleasing
l' ombrello <i>m.</i> umbrella	to; mi piace I like
l' orologio <i>m.</i> watch	per piacere please
il pane bread	riavere get back, recover
il postino postman	dica 3 <i>sg. pres. subj. and imper.</i>
la strada street	of dire (<i>irr.</i>) say, tell (<i>takes di</i>
grāzie (<i>f. pl.</i>) thanks	before <i>inf.</i>)
qua here	vuole 3 <i>sg. pres. ind. of volere</i>
fatto done, made; <i>p. part. of fare</i>	(<i>irr.</i>) will, wish
(<i>irr.</i>)	dia 3 <i>sg. pres. subj. and imper.</i>
aver fretta be in a hurry	of dare (<i>irr.</i>) give

EXERCISE

I

1. Le piace la campagna, Signorina? Mi piace tanto. 2. Hai perduto l'orologio? Sì, l'ho perduto. 3. Dov'è il denaro? L'abbiamo perduto; abbiamo fatto di tutto per riaverlo. 4. Le lettere portatemi dal postino erano della famiglia. 5. Parlandole per la strada, capimmo che aveva fretta. 6. Guarda, Beppino, l'ombrello è bagnato; non portarlo qua. 7. Mi favorisca il pane, Signora. Grazie. 8. Ecco un bell'orologio; bisogna comprarlo per Giuseppe. 9. Lo dia a Giovanni, e gli dica di portarlo a Giuseppe. 10. Vediamo degl'Italiani. 11. Le dice che abbiamo perduto il denaro, ma non lo creda. 12. Ne abbiamo dato a Gigi.

II

1. Is this John's book? 2. Carry it to John, Chiarina; don't put it on the shelf. 3. Have you lost the money? Yes, I have lost it. 4. Do you wish to find it? I will help you. 5. Yes, help me to find it, please. 6. I spoke to him. She spoke to us. We spoke to them. 7. Please pass me the butter. Thank you. 8. Tell them to return before noon. 9. Put the chairs near the table; do not put them in front of the door. 10. Give us the flowers, please; do not give them to Maria. 11. Has he the money? No, carrying it home he lost it. 12. It is very hot to-day; I do not like the heat. 13. Buy some at once. 14. Don't speak of it, child.

LESSON X

THE VERB ESSERE

96. The Verb *Essere*, 'be.'

INFINITIVE	PRESENT PARTICIPLE	PAST PARTICIPLE
ēssere	essendo	stato
ēssere stato		essendo stato

INDICATIVE

PRESENT		PAST DESCRIPTIVE	PAST ABSOLUTE		FUTURE	
sono	siamo	ero, -a	eravamo	fui	fummo	sarò saremo
sei	siete	eri	eravate	foști	foște	sarai sarete
è	sono	era	erano	fu	fūrono	sarà saranno

PRESENT PERFECT	PAST PERFECT	SECOND PAST PERFECT	FUTURE PERFECT
sono stato, -a, <i>etc.</i>	ero stato, <i>etc.</i>	fui stato, <i>etc.</i>	sarò stato, <i>etc.</i>

PAST FUTURE

sarei	saremmo
saresti	sareste
sarebbe	sarebbero

PAST FUTURE PERFECT

sarei stato, *etc.*

IMPERATIVE

siamo
sii siete
sia siano

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

sia	siamo
sia	siate
sia	siano

PAST

fossi	fōssimo
fossi	foște
fosse	fōssero

PRESENT PERFECT

sia stato, *etc.*

PAST PERFECT

fossi stato, *etc.*

97. The Passive Voice. *a.* The passive voice is constructed by means of the auxiliary *essere* and the past participle of the verb conjugated. It is used chiefly when the agent is expressed; otherwise the reflexive best translates the English passive. (See Lesson XII.)

L' Amērica è **stata scoperta** da America was discovered by Christopher Columbus
Cristōforo Colombo

*I. The passive may be constructed with the verbs *andare* 'go,' *venire* 'come,' *rimanere* 'remain,' but with reference rather to the state resultant from the action than to the action itself (cf. 129, 138, 149).

Va fatto così	It should be done this way
Prima chē la frugale colazione venisse imbandita, il lavoro fu terminato	Before the frugal luncheon was served, the work was done
Ne rimase stupefatto	He was amazed at it

b. Model Passive Verb.

PRESENT		INFINITIVE		PERFECT	
ēssere lodato, to be praised		ēssere stato lodato, to have been praised			
		PARTICIPLE			
essendo lodato, being praised		essendo stato lodato, having been praised			
		INDICATIVE		PAST DESCRIPTIVE	
sono lodato, I am praised, etc.		ero lodato, I was being praised, etc.			
		FUTURE		PAST ABSOLUTE	
sarò lodato, I shall be praised, etc.		fui lodato, I was praised, etc.			
		PRESENT PERFECT		FUTURE PERFECT	
sono stato lodato, etc.		sarò stato lodato, etc.			

PAST PERFECT

ero stato lodato, *etc.*

PAST FUTURE

sarei lodato, *etc.*

SECOND PAST PERFECT

fui stato lodato, *etc.*

PAST FUTURE PERFECT

sarei stato lodato, *etc.*

IMPERATIVE

sii lodato, *etc.*

SUBJUNCTIVE

PRESENT

sia lodato, *etc.*

PRESENT PERFECT

sia stato lodato, *etc.*

PAST

fossi lodato, *etc.*

PAST PERFECT

fossi stato lodato, *etc.*

98. All passive, reflexive, and impersonal verbs (except *fare* used impersonally) are conjugated with *essere*.

I Cristiani primitivi furono perseguitati dai Romani
S'è levato alle sette
È piovuto

The early Christians were persecuted by the Romans
He rose at seven
It has rained

99. After the auxiliary *essere*, the past participle agrees with the subject, except with reflexives (cf. **104, c, 1**; **194, b**).

Molte battaglie furono vinte dai Tedeschi
Sono venuti quei signori?

Many battles were won by the Germans
Have those gentlemen come?

VOCABULARY

la bandiera flag
la guerra war
il popolo people
il sangue blood
il soldato soldier
lo stato state
la volta time, a time

arrivare arrive
combattere fight
difendere (*irr.*) defend
dividere (*irr.*) divide
innalzare raise
insegnare teach (*insegno*)
morire (*irr.*) die

mostrare	show	circa	about
spārgere (<i>irr.</i>)	scatter	disse 3 <i>sg. p. abs. of dire</i> (<i>irr.</i>)	say
venire (<i>irr., p. p. venuto</i>)	come	dobbiamo 1 <i>pl. pres. ind. of</i>	
bianco (<i>pl. bianchi, bianche</i>)	white	dovere (<i>irr.</i>)	must
caro	dear	la nostra	our
felice	happy	or sono	ago
il prōprio	own, one's own	quando	when
rosso	red	stesso	itself <i>etc. (not refl.)</i> , same
tutto	all	sūbito	immediately
ancora	yet, still	vogliamo 1 <i>pl. pres. ind. of volere</i>	
cento	hundred, a hundred	(<i>irr.</i>)	wish, will
chi ?	who ?		

EXERCISE

I

LA BANDIERA NAZIONALE

La nostra bandiera nazionale è di tre colori : bianco, rosso, verde.

Essa è il simbolo della patria, e noi dobbiamo amarla come la patria stessa. Il soldato per essa combatte, ed è felice di spargere il proprio sangue e di morire per difenderla.

La nostra bella bandiera tricolore fu innalzata la prima volta dai soldati piemontesi, circa cento anni or sono, quando l' Italia, la nostra cara patria, non era ancora tutta unita e libera.

E il popolo subito l' amò, e disse che era la più bella di tutte ; e la cantò così :

La bandiera a tre colori
sempre è stata la più bella ;
noi vogliamo sempre quella,
noi vogliam la libertà !

II

1. The national flag of the United States is of three colors : red, white, and blue. 2. The soldiers have come, carrying the flag of the state. 3. Carrying it always, they will have returned to the

war. 4. The tricolored flag was carried by the Italians in the war for [of] Independence. 5. Soldiers love their own country; they are glad to die to defend it. 6. The soldier has found the gun, but he has not yet returned. 7. Do you like the tricolored American flag? Yes, I like it.

LESSON XI

CONJUNCTIVES (CONTINUED)

100. a. Ecco takes the pronouns appended in the same manner as certain parts of the verb (cf. 95, b).

Dov'è la mia borsa? <i>Èccola</i>	Where is my bag? Here it is
<i>Èccone</i>	Here is some, here are some
<i>Èccoci</i>	Here we are

b. All conjunctive pronouns except *gli* and *gliè* double their initial consonant when appended to a verb-form which ends in an accented vowel (cf. 5, b, 2).

<i>Dammi</i> del latte	Give me some milk
<i>Fallo</i> subito	Do it at once
<i>Stacci</i> attento	Pay attention to it

*1. The following types are confined to poetic or literary use:

<i>Parlòmmi, for</i> Mi parlò	He spoke to me
<i>Porterallo, for</i> Lo porterà	He will bring it to us
<i>Guardòcci, for</i> Ci guardò	He looked at us

c. *La* and *Lè* are the accusative and dative cases, respectively, of *Lèi* in direct address (cf. 65, a), and are used to persons of either sex (but *Li*, *Le*, accusative plural, according to sex).

<i>A rivederla, Signore</i>	Good-by, sir
<i>Come Lè piace questo dolce, Signore?</i>	How do you like this dessert, sir?
<i>A rivederli, Signori</i>	Good-by, gentlemen

d. When a noun object, or an object clause, precedes the verb, it must be repeated in pronoun form, as a conjunctive object.

La carne non **l'** ho comprata The meat I haven't bought

***1.** Sometimes in conversation, for vivacity or emphasis, the order is reversed, a conjunctive pronoun preceding the verb redundantly.

L' ha visto il Duomo? Have you seen the Cathedral?

***2.** The dative is often used as the so-called dative of reference or concern.

M' era morta di poco la mamma My mother had died a short time
before

***e.** In the predicate after 'to be,' 'so' is expressed by **lo**, used even where it would be redundant in English.

Così impervî allo spîrito moderno As impervious to the modern spirit
come **lo** sono quei rozzi contadini as are those rough peasants

1. **Lo** translates 'so' also in such phrases as the following :

Lò credo I think so
Speriāmolo Let us hope so

***f.** The reflexive pronoun may be appended, but only in the third person, to the forms of the indicative in addition to those forms listed under **95, b.**

Dicesi It is said

***g.** A conjunctive form is sometimes used as subject of the third person. It is unstressed, and usually redundant. The forms are these :

$\text{gli, e'} = \begin{cases} \text{egli} & \text{la} = \text{ella} \\ \text{ēglino} & \text{lē} = \text{ēlleno} \end{cases}$

La non lò creda Do not (you) believe it
Lē son molto eleganti They (*f.*) are very elegant

Gli is used before a word beginning with a vowel or **h**; **e'**, elsewhere.

CONJUNCTIVES AND AUXILIARIES §§ 100-101

1. The similar use of **lo** and **li** as the redundant object of reflexive verbs is provincial and incorrect.

Tu sei ammalato, **lo** si vede You are ill, one sees it

2. The word 'it' in such phrases as 'it is because' etc. is translated, if at all, by **gli** or **egli**.

Gli è perchè le leggi sono troppo It is because the laws are too
rigorose rigorous

101. Some intransitive verbs are conjugated with **essere** and some with **avere**:

a. The following always with **essere**:

andare go	morire die	scēndere descend
arrivare arrive	nāscere be born	sōrgere arise
cadere fall	partire depart	tornare return
comparire appear	parvenire arrive	uscire go out
cōrrere run	piacere please	venire come
entrare enter	rimanere remain	
ēssere be	riuscire succeed	

***b.** The following (for reference only) always with **avere**:

camminare walk	nitrire neigh	rīdere laugh
deşinare dine	parlare speak	şbadigliare yawn
dormire sleep	passaggiare take a walk	sognare dream
giocare play	piāngere weep	sonnecchiare nap
muggire low	pranzare dine	starnutire sneeze

***c.** The following is a partial list of verbs which take **avere** when the *action* is thought of, and **essere** when the *state resultant* from the action is more considered.

appartenere belong	dimorare dwell	partire divide
bastare suffice	durare last	ritornare return
cessare cease	giūngere arrive	salire go up
consistere consist	invecchiare grow old	succēdere happen
degenerare degenerate	montare mount	vivere live

102. The verb 'to be' combined with the participle in '-ing,' in such English phrases as 'to be singing,' 'they are writing,' etc., is rendered in Italian by the verbs **stare** and **andare**. With **andare** the idea conveyed is more *active*, with **stare** more *static*.

Stanno cantando	They are singing
Sto leggendo	I am reading
Il ragazzo va crescendo giorno a giorno	The boy is growing day by day
L' albero va perdendo le foglie	The tree is losing its leaves

103. Some Uses of *da*. The preposition **da** has many idiomatic uses :

a. To mean 'at the house of,' 'at,' 'to,' with a word referring to a person.

Andiamo dalla sorella mia	Let us go to my sister's
Sono andati dal guantaio	They have gone to the glover's (the glove-store)
Vuole andare da Chiara?	Do you wish to go to Clara's?
Abita da sua cognata	She lives at her sister-in-law's

b. With **essere**, to mean 'it is to be' with the sense of obligation or propriety. The infinitive then has often passive force.

È da sperarsi che quest' affare non andrà a finire male	It is to be hoped that this affair will not terminate badly
Era da ridere	It was an occasion for laughter

VOCABULARY

la cioccolata	chocolate	la sēggiola	chair
Giuseppe	Joseph	la stazione	railway station
il nonno	grandfather		
la pasta	small cake	aspettare	wait, wait for
il patriota	patriot	invitare	invite
il ritratto	portrait	sperare	hope (spero)

due volte twice	andato <i>p.p. of andare</i> go
a piedi on foot	morto <i>p.p. of morire</i> die
fiorentino Florentine	partito <i>p.p. of partire</i> go away
contro against	piaciuto <i>p.p. of piacere</i> please
per tempo early	rimasto <i>p.p. of rimanere</i> remain
da, date, 2 <i>sg. and pl. imper. of</i>	sceso <i>p.p. of scendere</i> go down
dare	uscito <i>p.p. of uscire</i> go out
di' 2 <i>sg. imper. of dire</i>	venuto <i>p.p. of venire</i> come

EXERCISE

I

1. Siamo invitati a pranzo da due amici. 2. Eccoci arrivati dagli amici, che abitano vicino alla chiesa; siamo venuti a piedi. 3. Dov'è la tazza? Eccola sullo scaffale. 4. La metta sulla tavola. Non la porti in cucina. 5. L'orologio non lo trovo. 6. Ha i libri italiani che desidero? Eccoli, Signore; vuol comprarli? 7. Molti soldati sono morti nella guerra contro i Turchi. 8. Chi Le ha insegnato la lingua italiana? La lingua italiana m'è stata insegnata da un vecchio patriota italiano. 9. Erano arrivati prima di mezzogiorno i ragazzi? 10. Ecco la Luisina; dalle dei fiori. 11. È venuta una signora; bambine, portatele delle paste. 12. Dimmi, Peppina, sei stata a scuola oggi? 13. Parlandomi della famiglia, mi mostrò un ritratto della madre. 14. Ecco il nonno; bambini, dategli una seggiola. 15. Luigi è andato da Chiara, per mostrarle l'orologio che ha comprato.

II

1. I have lost John's watch, but I hope to [di] find it. 2. Our flag was made by the pupils of the old Florentine school. 3. Here is the bread, but the butter I have not bought. 4. Where is Louis's gun? There it is on the shelf. 5. Having carried it to Louis, return here at once. 6. Let us return to Joseph's; he will show us the Italian national flag which he carried in the war. 7. The soldier has found the guns, but has not yet returned. 8. The mother and aunt of the pupil have died. 9. The little girl went down into the

garden at six this morning. 10. Had John's sisters gone to the station when Mary arrived? 11. Give me some bread, little Clara; do not carry it into the kitchen. 12.* The American ladies are not here; they left to-day. 13. Where is Mrs. Rossi? There she is, arrived at the station. 14. Chiarina, tell her to wait for us. 15. We should have spoken to them if they had remained. 16. Have you been in America? We have been in America twice; we liked it very much. 17. The ladies had gone out early this morning; they bought some chocolate, and have now returned to Mary's.

LESSON XII

REFLEXIVE VERBS

104. Reflexive Verbs: *a.* Reflexive verbs are those whose object is the same person as their subject.

Si alza	He rises (<i>lit.</i> raises himself)
M' assuefò ad alzar mi alle sèi	I accustom myself to rise at six

1. 'Self' reflexive (which is always the object) must not be confused with 'myself,' etc., intensive, which may be the subject and is expressed by **stesso** or **medesimo** accompanying the pronoun.

L' hq fatto io stesso	I did it myself
L' ha dètto lui medesimo	He said it himself

b. In the plural, reflexives may have reciprocal force; if this is not clear from the context, **l'un l'altro** 'one another' may be added to emphasize reciprocal meaning.

Si āmano	They love themselves, they love each other
Si āmano l'un l'altro	They love each other

c. Reflexives are conjugated in the compound tenses with **essere** (cf. 98).

Mi sòno pentito	I have repented
Se si fòssero amati	If they had loved each other

1. The participle agrees with the *direct* object (cf. 194, b, 3), which may or may not be the reflexive, personal object.

La signora s'era alzata presto
Mi sono comprati dei guanti

The lady had risen early.
I have bought myself some gloves

*2. But the strict observance of this rule offends the Tuscan ear. Tuscans make the participle agree with the personal object.

Mi sono comprato (or comprata) dei guanti

d. Model Reflexive Verb: synopsis of *fermarsi* 'stop.'

PRESENT		INFINITIVE	PERFECT
fermarsi			ēssersi fermato
		PARTICIPLE	
fermāndosi			essēndosi fermato
PRESENT		INDICATIVE	PAST DESCRIPTIVE
mi fermo	ci fermiamo		mi fermavo, etc.
ti fermi	vi fermate		
si ferma	si fērmanno		
FUTURE			PAST ABSOLUTE
mi fermerò, etc.			mi fermai, etc.
PRESENT PERFECT			PAST PERFECT
mi sono fermato, -a	ci siamo fermati, -e		mi ero fermato, etc.
ti sei fermato, -a	vi siete fermati, -e		
s'è fermato, -a	si sono fermati, -e		
FUTURE PERFECT			SECOND PAST PERFECT
mi sarò fermato, etc.			mi fui fermato, etc.
PAST FUTURE			PAST FUTURE PERFECT
mi fermerèi, etc.			mi sarei fermato, etc.

	fermiāmoci	IMPERATIVE	non ci fermiamo
fērmati	fermātevi	non ti fermare	non vi fermate
si fermi	si fērmino	non si fermi	non si fērmino

	SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT		PAST
mi fermi, <i>etc.</i>		mi fermassi, <i>etc.</i>
PRESENT PERFECT		PAST PERFECT
mi sia fermato, <i>etc.</i>		mi fossi fermato, <i>etc.</i>

105. The Reflexive is Used—

a. In expressions essentially reflexive in character.

Si veste He dresses himself

b. In many verbs not essentially reflexive in character in English, but invariably so in Italian.

Lagnarsi to complain **vergognarsi** to feel ashamed

1. When the English equivalent of such verbs is transitive, the Italian reflexive often governs an object by means of a preposition.

Si accorge di uno strēpito	He perceives a noise
Avviciniāmocī a quella casa	Let us approach that house

*2. The reflexive pronoun is omitted from the infinitive of these verbs when dependent upon **fare, lasciare, sentire, udire, vedere**.

Lo faremo pentire (*refl.* **pentirsi**) We shall make him repent

*3. The pronoun may be the "dative of reference or concern," merely to add vivacity or intensity; auxiliary sometimes, rarely, **avere**.

Io **mi** viveva di mia sorte contenta I lived content with my lot

c. In the dative, to avoid the use of the possessive with clothing or parts of the body (cf. 109).

S' è bruciato il dito	She has burned her finger
Mi metto il cappello	I put on my hat

106. Special Uses. *a.* In the third persons singular and plural, and in the infinitive and participles, the reflexive translates the English passive.

Molti libri inglesi si vëndono in Italia	Many English books are sold in Italy
Qui si parla francese	French spoken here

**i.* The agent may even be expressed, and still the reflexive construction will be retained.

Sę ne discuteva molto dal pōpolo	There was much discussion of it by the people
---	---

b. The English impersonal 'one,' 'we,' 'they,' etc., and the impersonal passive, are translated by the reflexive.

Si dice	They say, it is said
Si va spesso al teatro	People often go to the theater, we often go to the theater
Si puō entrare?	May one enter?

i.* **Ēssersi, impersonal, takes a plural subject (cf. 194, *b*, 3, *a*):

Si è lięti il giorno di Natale	People are happy on Christmas Day
---------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

**c.* Italian being a much more impersonal language than English, the reflexive often best translates also the English personal construction.

Sę non Lę piācciono quęsti guanti, si barāttano	If you do not like these gloves, you may exchange them
Dove si cōmprano i biglietti?	Where do I buy my tickets?

**d.* In the third person singular the reflexive is peculiarly used in Tuscan familiar speech, along with the pronoun of the first person plural, with which in compound tenses the past participle agrees. 'We' in this case is not general or impersonal, necessarily.

Noi si va sempre in chiesa la domenica	We (i.e. our family, our household) always go to church on Sunday
Ci si accorse del suo arrivo	We noticed his arrival
Noi si era allegri ieri	We were joyful yesterday

VOCABULARY

l' amica (<i>pl. amiche</i>) friend (<i>f.</i>)	accomodarsi make oneself com- fortable, sit down (<i>m' accōmodo</i>)
la giornata day, period of one day	alzarsi rise
l' inchiostro <i>m.</i> ink	chiamare call
il libraio bookseller	chiamarsi be named
la macchia spot	far colazione lunch
il vestito dress	fa passare shows in (makes to enter)
alle nove at nine o'clock	fermarsi stop
meno male luckily	insudiciare soil
grosso big	lavarsi wash (oneself)
scuro dark	mēttersi put on (clothes)
	mēttersi a sedere sit down
	ricordarsi (<i>di</i>) remember (<i>ricordo</i>)
	seguire follow

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

LA GIORNATA DELLA NERINA

1. Ecco una cara bambina! 2. Come si chiama? Si chiama Nerina. 3. Nerina passa una giornata felice. 4. Si alza alle sei e aiuta la mamma a preparare il caffè. 5. Si mette un vestito scuro per non insudiciarlo. 6. Non si mette il vestito bianco delle feste. 7. È arrivata a scuola alle nove. 8. A scuola s'è fatte delle grosse macchie d' inchiostro sul vestitino. 9. Meno male che non era il bianco. 10. A mezzogiorno è tornata a far colazione, senza fermarsi per la strada. 11. Prima di far colazione si lava le mani. 12. I bambini non si ricordano sempre di lavarsi le mani. 13. La

sera qualcuno è arrivato. Era un' amica della mamma. 14. Nerina la fa passare, e le dice, " Buona sera, Signora. S' accomodi. Ecco una seggiola."

II

(Use present perfect for past tenses.)

1. At what hour did you get up, ladies? 2. We got up at six; after [the] coffee we visited St. Stephen's church. 3. A little girl followed us. 4. What is your name, little girl? My name is Nerina. 5. We stopped at the bookseller's, to buy some books. 6. The bookseller spoke to us in Italian; we spoke to him in English. 7. Italian is not spoken much in the United States. 8. If Nerina did not remember her lessons, she would feel ashamed. 9. It is said that soldiers are glad to die for their country. 10. Nerina washes her hands and puts on a white dress before taking lunch. 11. She has two white dresses; she does not like (to) soil them. 12. Nerina is happy; two women friends of her [the] mother have arrived. 13. She shows them in, and says, " Good afternoon, ladies! Be seated! "

LESSON XIII

POSSESSIVES

107. Possessives. *a.* The forms of the possessive adjective are as follows:

SINGULAR

il mio
la mia
il tuo
la tua
il suo
la sua

PLURAL

i miei }
le mie } my, mine
i tuoi }
le tue } thy, thine
i suoi }
le sue } { his,
 } { her, hers

SINGULAR	PLURAL
il nōstro	i nōstri
la nōstra	le nōstre
il vōstro	i vōstri
la vōstra	le vōstre
il loro	i loro
la loro	le loro

1. Both words may precede the noun; or the article may precede and the possessive follow, suggesting intimacy in possession.

I miei libri; i libri miei

My books; my very own books

b. The possessives (except **loro**, invariable) agree in number and gender with the noun they modify; that is, with the object possessed, not with the possessor. The context usually prevents ambiguity.

Hanno venduto **la loro** casa

They have sold **their** house

Maria legge **il suo** libro

Mary is reading **her** book

Giovanni ha perduto **la sua** grammatica

John has lost **his** grammar

*1. When there might be ambiguity, as when the possessor is not the subject of the sentence, **di lui**, **di lei**, **di loro**, with the article, may be substituted for the possessive of the third person.

Mise **il suo** anello nel dito **di lei**

He put **his** ring on **her** finger

Mi disse che **il suo** figliuolo aveva perduto **il di lui** orologio

He told me that **his** little boy had lost **his** (i.e., the boy's) watch

c. The possessive 'its,' when modifying a noun in the accusative case, is translated by **ne** and the definite article.

There is the city! I see **its** towers Ecco la città! **Ne** vedo **le** torri

108. The definite article is omitted from the possessive,

a. When it modifies a noun of human relationship, otherwise unmodified and in the singular. (Augmentatives and diminutives count as modifiers, cf. 228.)

Suo padre morì combattendo per la pàtria	His father died fighting for his country
I miei figliuoli sono tutti maschiètti	My children are all boys
La mia sorella maggiore ābita a Parigi	My eldest sister lives in Paris
Il tuo fratellino sta piangendo	Your little brother is crying

b. When it stands alone in the predicate, with the force of an adjective ; unless it distinguishes the possession of one person from that of another.

Quella casa è sua	That house is his (or hers)
But	
Questo libro è il mio ; quell' altro è il vostro	This book is mine ; that other one is yours

c. When preceded by a demonstrative or interrogative adjective, a numeral, or an adjective of quantity.

Questa sua casa	This house of his
Qual suo libro ?	Which book of his ?
Tre sorelle sue (<i>or</i> , <i>Tre delle sue</i> sorelle)	Three sisters of his, three of his sisters
Molti libri suoi	Many of her books

***d.** When it is part of a title.

Sua Maestà, Loro Altezze	His Majesty, Their Highnesses
--------------------------	-------------------------------

***e.** Usually in the vocative, the possessive more often following the noun.

Quello che vi dico, amico mio , è vero	What I am telling you, my friend, is true
--	--

***f.** In certain set phrases.

Per fortuna loro	By their good luck
In casa nostra	In our house
In cāmera mia	In my room
A loro volta	In their turn
Con mia gran sorpresa	To my great surprise

g. 'A friend of mine' and similar expressions are rendered **un amico mio, un mio amico**, etc.

Tre libri suoi	Three books of his
Una proprietà mia	An estate I own
Lo vede da un suo speciale punto di vista	He sees it from a special point of view of his own

109. In accordance with the greater impersonality of the Italian language (cf. **106, c**), the definite article is substituted for the possessive with nouns describing parts of the body or clothing, and often with nouns of human relationship, especially **babbo** and **mamma**. If ownership is indicated, it is by means of the dative conjunctive pronoun (cf. **105, c**). With certain words, as **tasca** 'pocket,' even the article is omitted.

Mette il denaro in tasca	He puts the money in his pocket
Mi sono levato il cappello	I have taken off my hat
Mi duole la testa	My head aches
Hanno sparato e gli hanno strappato un braccio	They shot, and shot away one of his arms
Mi racconta d'aver perduto la madre	He tells me of having lost his mother
Mettiti i guanti	Put on your gloves
Si leva il soprabito	He takes off his overcoat

***a.** **Prōprio** 'own' may intensify the possessive, or be used instead of it.

Ognuno ama la prōpria patria	Every one loves his own country
-------------------------------------	--

***b.** **Altrui**, which always follows the noun in prose, is an indefinite possessive, meaning 'of others.'

Agisce sempre per il bene altrui	He acts always for the good of others
Lo scendere e il salir per l' altrui scale	Going up and down the stairs of others

***c.** The possessives are used alone, with the noun understood, in a great variety of familiar phrases. Here are a few examples:

Saluta i tuoi da parte dei miei	Greet your family on behalf of mine
Ha molte persone dalla sua	He has many persons on his side
Spendo il mio in viaggiare	I spend my money in travel
Ne fa troppe delle sue	He does too many of his characteristic ill turns
Ho avuto le mie; avrai le tue	I have had my troubles; you will have yours
Lavoro sul mio	I labor on my own land

VOCABULARY

il babbo	papa	levarsi	take off (clothing)
il bosco	wood	raccomandare	urge, recommend; <i>takes a before a word meaning a person, di before a verb</i>
il cappello	hat	sgridare	scold
la cosa	thing	smarrirsi	lose one's way
il guanto	glove	far tardi	be late
il paese	village, country, nation	invece	on the contrary, instead
il paniere	basket	potrebbero	(3 pl. past fut. of potere, irr.) might
il passo	step	tiene	(3 sg. pres. indic. of tenere, irr.) holds
la sorellina	little sister (<i>dimin.</i>)	vanno	(3 pl. pres. indic. of andare, irr.) go
destra	right		
maggiore	elder		
sinistro	left		
svogliato	listless, unwilling		

EXERCISE

I

1. Giannetta e Marcellina vanno alla scuola del paese. 2. Non si mettono i guanti. 3. Giannetta porta i loro libri, e Marcellina tiene il paniere con la mano sinistra. 4. La mamma e il babbo raccomandano alle due bambine di non fermarsi nel bosco. 5. Potrebbero smarrirsi e far tardi a scuola. 6. Giannetta, la maggiore, è una bambina giudiziosa; Marcellina, invece, è una piccola svogliata. 7. Ha sempre tante cose da vedere, che si ferma ogni cinque

passi. 8. Non bisogna far tardi! — dice Giannetta — Il babbo e la mamma ci sgrideranno. 9. Si levi il cappello, Signorina. Non si metta i guanti. 10. Abbiamo i nostri libri, e il loro paniere, e molte cose loro. 11. Mia madre è dalla mia sorella maggiore. 12. Dov' è il suo paniere? È sulla mia tavola.

II

1. Marcellina is holding my basket in her right hand. 2. Do not be late to school, Marcellina; your father and mother will scold you. 3. My sisters live in Florence, but they are now at Clara's. 4. Marcellina will stop every three steps, but her elder sister would not stop. 5. The little girls would lose their way if they should stop in the wood. 6. Marcellina says to her sister, "We have not lost our way." 7. Does he like his school? 8. Is this your house? Yes, it is ours. 9. My mother is talking with my elder brother. 10. I take off my gloves. I have lost my hat. 11. My brothers are going to school. 12. There is their house. 13. Have they bought yours? 14. My brothers say the pupil has a book of mine.

LESSON XIV

CHANGES OF LETTERS. RELATIVE PRONOUNS

110. Changes of Letters in Regular Verbs.

a. Verbs of the first conjugation ending in *-care* and *-gare*, *-ciare* and *-giare*, retain throughout the conjugation that sound of *c* or *g* which is heard in the infinitive.

1. Verbs in *-care* and *-gare* insert *h* after *c* or *g* before *e* or *i*: *paghi*, *cercherò*.

2. Verbs in *-ciare* and *-giare* omit *i* before *e* or *i*: *lascere~~m~~o*, *mangi*, *cominciamo*.

b. Other verbs in *-iare* drop the *i*, if unaccented, before another *i*.

Stúdio, studi, stūdino; but **spìo, spìi, spīino**

c. Verbs of the third conjugation in *-cere* and *-gere* do not retain this sound of *c* and *g* except where it would occur naturally.

Vincere gives **vinco, vincono, vince, vinciamo**, etc.

d. Some verbs, as **giocare,otare,sonare**, usually change *o* of the stem to *uo* wherever it takes the accent.

Suono, sonerò; giuoca, giochiamo

1. Conversely, some verbs like **cuocere, muovere**, drop the *u* of the infinitive stem wherever the syllable containing it does not take the accent.

Cuoco, cocèsti; muove, movendo

111. a. A number of second-conjugation verbs do not have, in the present indicative, present subjunctive, and imperative, the inchoative forms in *-isco* etc. Such a verb is the model, **sentire**, given below.

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERATIVE	
sento	sentiamo	senta	sentiamo		sentiamo
senti	sentite	senta	sentiate	senti	sentite
sente	sèntono	senta	sèntano	senta	sèntano

b. The following are conjugated like **sentire**:

aprire (<i>irr.</i>) open	fuggire flee	soffrire suffer
bollire boil	offrire (<i>irr.</i>) offer	tossire cough
coprire (<i>irr.</i>) cover	pentirsi repent	vestire dress
cucire (<i>irr.</i>) sew	seguire follow	divertire amuse
dormire sleep	servire serve	

***c.** The following (and others) are conjugated both ways :

applaudire applaud	mentire lie	sortire go out
assorbire absorb	nutrire nourish	
comparire appear	partire depart	

1. **Partire** and **sortire** use the inchoative form (in **-isco** etc.) only when transitive.

112. Uses of *da*. The preposition **da** is used before nouns referring to persons, without article, to mean 'like,' 'in the character of,' 'characteristic of,' 'as.' (Cf. 162, c.)

Ha agito da uomo	He has acted like a man
S'è travestito da monaco	He has disguised himself as a monk

113. The subjunctive is used in dependent clauses after verbs of *wishing* and *willing*, when the subject is not the same as that of the independent clause. (With the same subject, the infinitive is used.)

Desidero che Lei legga questo libro	I wish you to read this book
Vogliamo che lo faccia	We wish him to do it

114. The Relative Pronoun (cf. 189). These forms are used of either persons or things :

a. Che 'who,' 'whom,' 'which,' 'that'; invariable, used as the subject or object of a verb. It cannot be omitted.

L' uomo ch' io ho veduto	The man whom I saw
L' uomo che m' ha veduto	The man who saw me
I fiori che compro	The flowers I am buying

b. Cui 'of which,' 'for,' 'by,' 'with' (etc.) 'whom' or 'which'; invariable, used after prepositions. 'Whose' is **il cui**.

Il signore a cui ho venduto la casa	The gentleman to whom I sold the house
Lo sciopero di cui tutti parlano in questo momento	The strike of which everybody is talking at this moment

c. Il quale (la quale, i quali, le quali), inflected, used in all cases, and frequently instead of *cui* after prepositions, especially for clearness. Its article is contracted with the prepositions (cf. 75).

La signora alla quale ha dato il libro	The lady to whom you have given the book
La figlia dell' avvocato, la quale abita a Firenze	The lawyer's daughter, who lives at Florence. (La quale , being feminine, indicates the daughter, not the father.)

VOCABULARY

la lingua language	abituarsi a accustom oneself to
la lira lira (twenty cents)	cercare look for; <i>w. di</i> try to (<i>w. inf.</i>)
il maestro teacher	divertirsi amuse oneself
la penna a serbatòio fountain pen	dormire sleep
lo stùdio study	lasciare leave, let
la tasca (<i>pl. tasche</i>) pocket	mancare (<i>w. dat.</i>) be lacking
il viso face	pagare pay, pay for
difficile difficult	sentire hear, feel
fàcile easy	servirsi di make use of
scorso last, past	studiare study
	vendere sell
a poco a poco little by little	vestirsi dress oneself

EXERCISE

I

1. Comprammo quella casa la settimana scorsa; paghiamola presto. 2. Cominceremo a studiare alle otto; lasceremo i nostri libri sullo scaffale. 3. Metta il pane nel paniere; non lo lasci sul piatto. 4. Lo studio d' una lingua è difficile; bisogna abituarsi a poco a poco a parlarla. 5. Giannetta si lavò il viso quando tornò da scuola. 6. Suo padre gli dà tre lire. Si mette il denaro in tasca. 7. Luigi ha perduto i guanti; cerchiamoli. 8. M' ha parlato da

padre. 9. Ho perduto la mia penna a serbatoio. Si serva della mia. 10. Se gli vendo l' orologio, lo pagherà domani? No, perchè gli manca il denaro. 11. Il maestro non desidera che gli scolari lascino lo studio per divertirsi. 12. Se si divertissero troppo, mancherebbe loro il tempo per studiare.

II

1. He sold me his house last week; when shall I pay for it? 2. I am finishing my work, but my sister sleeps. 3. If he were a soldier, he would dress like a soldier. 4. We should leave Italy if we did not lack money. 5. Let us try to amuse ourselves. 6. They wish their mother to sleep. 7. He put in his pocket the four lire with which he will pay for his book. 8. The pupils are studying the Italian language, and are accustoming themselves little by little to speak it. 9. Our teacher has lost his fountain pen; let us look for it. 10. Giannetta will wash her face and hands before taking lunch. 11. I am trying to accustom myself to make use of my fountain pen. 12. Joseph would make use of his if he studied. 13. He does not like study, but he wishes his brother to study.

LESSON XV

COMPARISON

115. Comparatives. *a.* The comparative is formed by placing **più** 'more,' or **meno** 'less,' before an adjective or adverb.

b. 'Than' is **di** before nouns, pronouns, or numerals,

Il padre è più alto del figlio	The father is taller than the son
I nostri vicini sono più ricchi di noi	Our neighbors are richer than we
Ho più di tre palle	I have more than three balls

But changes to **che** —

1. After **piuttosto**, **prima**, meaning 'rather,' 'sooner.'

Prenderò quella casa piuttosto che questa	I should take that house sooner than this
--	---

2. When the comparison is between two nouns.

Mi piace più la campagna che la città	I like the country better than the city
Non più bevve del fiume acqua che sangue	He drank from the river not more water than blood

c. 'Than' is **che** before adjectives, adverbs, prepositional phrases, infinitives, and participles.

L' avaro è più ricco che sàvio	The miser is more rich than wise
Meglio tardi che mai	Better late than never
I giōvani si preōccupano più delle eleganze della vita che dello stūdio	Young people think more of what is fashionable than of their studies

d. 'Than' is **che non** or **di quel che** before inflected verbs.

Lo spensierato parla più che non (<i>or di quel che</i>) pensa	The thoughtless man talks more than he thinks
---	---

116. The Superlative. a. The superlative is formed by prefixing the definite article to the comparative, from which it may be distinguished sometimes only by the context.

La sua stanza è la più grande	Her room is the largest (<i>or the larger, if only two are in question</i>)
-------------------------------	---

b. When the superlative follows the noun, as it may, the article of the superlative is omitted.

Agosto è il mese più caldo dell' anno	August is the hottest month of the year
---------------------------------------	---

c. The preposition used with the superlative is **fra**, sometimes **di**.

Ognuno crede che la sua patria sia la più bella fra (<i>or di</i>) tutte	Every one thinks his own country the most beautiful of all
---	--

d. An absolute superlative is formed by adding the suffix *-issimo* to the stem of the adjective; *-mente* may be added to the feminine of this, to make an absolute superlative for the adverb. These are in constant use in conversation.

La villa del suo amico è bella? Your friend's villa is beautiful?
È bellissima Very beautiful indeed

1. The adjectives *acre*, *cēlebre*, *integre*, *salubre* (and in poetry, *mīsero*) have an absolute superlative in *-ērrimo*: *celebērrimo*.

117. Irregular Comparisons. *a.* The following words are compared irregularly:

buono 'good'	migliore	il migliore l' ottimo
bene 'well'	meglio	il meglio benissimo ottimamente
cattivo 'bad'	peggiore	il peggiore il pēssimo
male 'badly'	peggio	il peggio pessimamente
alto 'high'	superiore	il superiore il sommo
basso 'low'	inferiore	l' inferiore l' infimo
grande 'large'	maggiore	il maggiore il māsximo
piccolo 'small'	minore	il minore il mīnimo
molto 'much'	più	il più moltissimo
poco 'little'	meno	il meno pochissimo

b. All these may be compared also regularly, but sometimes with different meanings.

1. The irregular forms of **buono**, **cattivo**, **bene**, and **male** are the more usual. But **ottimo**, **pessimo**, etc., are absolute rather than comparative.

2. **Maggiore** and **minore** usually mean 'older' and 'younger.' The regular forms refer to size.

*3. **Superiore** and **inferiore** are oftener figurative, the regular forms literal.

*4. **Meglio** is used as an adjective in the predicate after **essere**, and still more widely in familiar speech; similarly **peggio**, but more familiarly.

Scelgo questo; è il meglio	I choose this; it is the best
Fra i tiranni dell' Italia moderna,	Among the tyrants of modern Italy
i Borboni erano i peggio	the Bourbons were the worst

118. Subjunctive after Superlative. The subjunctive is required after the superlative and 'only.'

Venezia è la più bella città ch' io	Venice is the most beautiful city I
abbia mai vista	have ever seen
Il quarto reggimento è il solo che	The fourth regiment is the only
sia partito	one that has left

119. Comparison of Equality. This is expressed by **tanto** . . . **quanto**, **così** . . . **come**, 'as . . . as,' 'so . . . so.'

Il mio amico è tanto alto quanto	My friend is as tall as my brother
mio fratello	
Non è così bella come sua sorella	She is not so beautiful as her sister

a. Tanto and **così** are more often omitted.

L'argento non è caro quanto l'oro	Silver is not so precious as gold
-----------------------------------	-----------------------------------

VOCABULARY

l' **Amērica** (f.) America

l' **Āustria** (f.) Austria

il **conquistatore** conqueror

l' **eredità** (f.) heritage

l' **Inghilterra** (f.) England

il **pensiero** thought

la **pratica** practice

il **pregio** value

lo scrittore	writer	tedesco	German
la Spagna	Spain	vinto	conquered (<i>from vincere,</i> <i>irr.</i>)
la storia	history	così	thus, so, as
lo strumento	instrument	deve	3 <i>sg. pres. indic. of dovere</i> <i>(irr.)</i> must
imporre (<i>irr.</i>)	impose; imponeva,	leggendo	<i>pres. part. of leggere</i> <i>(irr.)</i> read
3 <i>sg. past descr. indic.</i>		esprime	3 <i>sg. pres. indic. of</i> <i>esprimere (irr.)</i> express
ricevere	receive	vede	3 <i>sg. pres. indic. of vedere</i> <i>(irr.)</i> see
tenere (<i>irr.</i>)	hold	e via dicendo	and so on, et cetera
solo	only		
spagnuolo	Spanish, Spaniard		
tanto	so, so much, (<i>pl.</i>) so many		

EXERCISE

I

1. La lingua è lo strumento col quale l'uomo esprime i suoi pensieri. 2. Perchè ogni nazione deve tenere in gran pregio la propria lingua? 3. Perchè l'ha ricevuta come sacra eredità dai padri, ed è il più nobile patrimonio di un popolo. 4. Leggendo la storia, si vede come i conquistatori cercarono di imporre ai popoli vinti la propria lingua. 5. Così perderebbero il carattere della nazionalità. 6. Così Roma imponeva la lingua latina, la Spagna la lingua spagnuola, l'Inghilterra la lingua inglese, l'Austria la lingua tedesca, e via dicendo. 7. La lingua spagnuola non è difficile quanto l'inglese; l'inglese è più facile della tedesca. 8. Qual è la più grande fra tutte le nazioni? 9. Gli scrittori pensano più che non parlano. 10. Questo è il solo libro tedesco che si trovi sullo scaffale. 11. Desideriamo che nostra sorella parli inglese, ma le manca la pratica.

II

1. Language is the instrument of the writer. 2. The English language is spoken in the United States. 3. The history of Spain is longer than that of America. 4. Reading it, one sees why

conquerors try to impose their own language on conquered peoples. 5. Are soldiers greater than writers? 6. The German language is the most difficult of all. 7. The Spaniard would have been a better soldier if he had been better paid. 8. Winter is colder than autumn. 9. My little sister sings more than she talks. 10. My brother and my sisters have returned from Rome, and have brought me many Italian books. 11. This is the greatest war that has ever (*mai*) been. 12. They will leave their books on the shelf; let us look for them. 13. We like our own house; it is larger than yours; it is rather large than beautiful.

LESSON XVI

THE VERB *AVERE*120. The Verb *avere* 'have.'

PRESENT		INFINITIVE	PERFECT	
avere			avere avuto	
		PARTICIPLE		
avendo			avendo avuto	
PRESENT		INDICATIVE	PAST DESCRIPTIVE	
hò	abbiamo		avevo	avevamo
hai	avete		avevi	avevate
ha	hanno		aveva	avevano
FUTURE			PAST ABSOLUTE	
avrò	avremo		ebbi	avemmo
avrai	avrete		avesti	aveste
avrà	avranno		ebbe	ebbero
PRESENT PERFECT			SECOND PAST PERFECT	
hò avuto, <i>etc.</i>			ebbi avuto, <i>etc.</i>	
PAST PERFECT			FUTURE PERFECT	
avevo avuto, <i>etc.</i>			avrò avuto, <i>etc.</i>	

PAST FUTURE		PAST FUTURE PERFECT	
avrei	avremmo	avrei avuto, <i>etc.</i>	
avresti	avreste		
avrebbe	avrebbero		
		IMPERATIVE	
		abbiamo	
		abbi	abbiate
		abbia	abbiano
		SUBJUNCTIVE	
PRESENT		PRESENT PERFECT	
abbia	abbiamo	abbia avuto, <i>etc.</i>	
abbia	abbiate		
abbia	abbiano		
		PAST PERFECT	
PAST			
avessi	avessimo	avessi avuto, <i>etc.</i>	
avessi	aveste		
avesse	avessero		

a. The irregular past absolute of **avere** may be taken as the model of all irregular past absolutes. It will be noticed that three forms are regular : the second person singular and the first and second plural. For example **leggere** 'read':

lessi	leggemmo
leggesti	leggeste
lesse	lessero

b. Of very many verbs the past participle also is irregular, and their principal parts are the infinitive, the first person singular of the past absolute, and the past participle, as **leggere**, **lessi**, **letto**.

121. The compound tenses of all transitive and some intransitive verbs are conjugated with **avere**.

a. The most important intransitives conjugated with **avere** are —

bollire boil	passeggiare take a walk	tremare tremble
dimorare dwell	sbadigliare yawn	viaggiare travel
dormire sleep	starnutire sneeze	

**b.* Certain other verbs, such as *tacere* 'be silent' and *vivere* 'live,' may be conjugated with either: with *avere* when the idea of action predominates, with *essere* when the idea of condition is more important.

122. The past participle with *avere* usually agrees with a preceding direct object. Agreement is *required* when the object is a conjunctive pronoun or a relative.

Ho scritto (or scritte) due lettere	I have written two letters
Ne ho scritte due	I have written two of them
Veda questi cavalli. Li abbiamo comprati oggi	See these horses. We have bought them to-day
La catena che mi ha prestata	The chain you lent me

123. Special Uses of *avere*. *a.* *Avere da* with the infinitive means 'have to.'

Họ da scrivere tre lèttère	} I have to write three letters
Họ tre lèttère da scrivere	

***b.* Idioms with *avere*:**

Aver caldo	To be too warm
Aver freddo	To be too cold
Aver fame	To be hungry
Aver sete	To be thirsty
Aver sonno	To be sleepy
Aver paura (di)	To be afraid (of)
Aver soggezione	To be nervous, embarrassed
Aver ragione	To be right
Aver torto	To be wrong, be in the wrong
Aver fùria, aver fretta	To be in a hurry
Ha fame?	Are you hungry?
Avēvano sonno?	Were they sleepy?
Non họ freddo	I am not cold
Ha ragione	You are right
Abbiamo paura	We are afraid
Họ fùria	I am in a hurry

124. The Conjunctive *ne*. *a.* 'Some' or 'any,' when pronouns (cf. 77), are translated by *ne*. It means also 'of it,' 'of them,' and is equivalent to *di* plus a conjunctive.

Avete delle mele? No, non *ne* ho Have you any apples? No, I have not any

b. *Ne* must be used in Italian when its equivalent would not be required in English; and it is sometimes logically pleonastic in Italian, though rhetorically emphatic. Cf. 100, *d.*

Ha dei libri tedeschi?	Have you any German books?
Sì, <i>ne</i> ho. <i>Ne</i> ho molti	Yes, I have. I have a great many
Di quest' affare <i>ne</i> sai nulla?	Do you know anything about this matter?

c. The past participle agrees with *ne* (cf. 122).

VOCABULARY

il biglietto	ticket	dimenticare (di)	forget (to)
la classe	class	leggere, lessi, letto	read
la guardia	guard, conductor	mettere, misi, messo	put
il minuto	minute	permettere (di), permisi, permesso	permit
il posto	place, room	prendere, presi, preso	take
lo scompartimento	compartment	scrivere, scrissi, scritto	write
il treno	train	detto <i>p.p.</i> of dire (<i>irr.</i>)	say
fra	between, among; (<i>with a measure of time</i>) in, within	prego, niente, you're welcome,	
pronto	ready; all aboard	don't mention it	

EXERCISE

I

1. Quando si parte per Roma? Alle nove. 2. Mi compri un libro, perchè desidero di leggere in treno. 3. Quando parte il primo treno per Firenze? Fra dieci minuti. 4. Non dimentichi di scrivere. 5. Ha i biglietti, Giovanni? Ne ho due; mi manca un biglietto. 6. Quando una persona dice — Grazie — si risponde

sempre — Prego! — o — Niente! 7. Desidera ch' io prenda i biglietti? Li metterò in tasca. 8. Ha trovato i biglietti che aveva perduti? 9. Li ho trovati in tasca. Eccoli. 10. È questo uno scompartimento di prima classe? 11. Sì, ma non c'è più posto, Signora. Mi permetta di offrirle il mio. 12. S'accomodi, Signora.— Grazie tante! — Prego! 13. Quando si entra in uno scompartimento dove ci sono delle persone, si dice — Permesso — o — Con permesso. 14. Si ha da prendere i biglietti prima di partire. 15. Si dice — Due biglietti di prima classe. 16. La guardia dice — Pronti! — e il treno parte.

II

(Translate the present perfect by the present perfect, the simple past by the past absolute.)

1. Please give me three first-class tickets to [for] Rome. 2. If I had put my tickets in my pocket, I should not have lost them. 3. My train will arrive in five minutes. 4. I read your letter; we did not read our books in the train. 5. If I had my letters, I should not forget to read them. 6. He took their tickets and put them in his pocket; he did not permit me to take them. 7. Have you written the letters? I have written two of them. 8. We had our books in the compartment, but we forgot to read them. 9. Have you any roses? Yes, I have. I have bought six to-day. 10. The English writer who lives in Florence wrote these books. Have you read them? 11. May I enter? Is there room in the compartment? 12. The conductor would have said "All aboard!" in two minutes, and we had not yet found a place. 13. They had to buy some German books at the bookseller's, but he did not have any. 14. Did we put? I permitted. You did not read. They wrote. Did he read? Thou tookest. They took. 15. Are you not too hot? He is in the wrong. We were sleepy. I am in a hurry.

LESSON XVII

TWO CONJUNCTIVE OBJECTS

125. Two Conjunctive Objects. *a.* When two conjunctive objects, direct and indirect, are governed by the same verb, the indirect (except *loro*) precedes the direct. Both precede the verb (cf. 95, *a*), or are appended to it (cf. 95, *b*).

Cẹ nẹ da	He gives us some
Vẹ lọ mostra	He shows it to you
Făccelo vedere	Show it to us
Lẹ si avvicinò	He approached her

1. *Loro*, as always, follows the verb.

Còmpra un cane, ẹ lọ da loro	He buys a dog, and gives it to them
------------------------------	-------------------------------------

b. When immediately followed by *lo, li, la, le, or ne*,

1. *Mi, ti, ci, vi, and si* change *i* to *e*, and become respectively *mẹ, tẹ, cẹ, vẹ, and sẹ*.

Tẹ li pọrta	He carries them to you
Mi mostra una rọsa e mẹ la dà	He shows me a rose and gives it to me
Prẹnde il cappello e sẹ lọ mette	He takes his hat and puts it on

2. *Gli* and *le* alike become *gliẹ*, and are joined with the following conjunctive to make one word.

Finii la lẹttera e gliẹla spedii	I finished the letter and sent it to her, or to him
----------------------------------	---

126. Conjunctive Adverbs. *a.* *Ci, vi, and ne* are adverbs as well as pronouns, *ci* and *vi* meaning 'here,' 'there' (of some place already referred to), and *ne* meaning 'thence.' They are conjunctive in character, as they precede the verb (or are appended as enclitics), and are unemphatic.

È stato da suo cugino?	Have you been at your cousin's?
Sì, ne vengo ora	Yes, I am coming from there
Pensava di andarvi io	I was thinking of going there myself
Andiāmoci domani	Let us go there to-morrow

1. **Ci** and **vi** are sometimes equivalent to 'at it,' 'to it,' taking the place of **a** plus a conjunctive pronoun of the third person, but seldom used of persons. This use is frequent with verbs which take **a** before their object (cf. 224, *a*).

Pensa al suo paese?	Are you thinking of your country?
Ci penso sempre	I am always thinking of it

2. **Ci** means a place nearer the speaker, but is tending to supersede **vi** in vivid speech.

b. **Ci** and **vi** undergo the same changes as adverbs that they do as pronouns (cf. 125, *b*).

Non ce n'è	There isn't any
Ve ne trovo pochi	I find few of them there

**c.* Rules for position of these adverbs are intricate:

1. **Ci** follows **mi**, **ti**, **vi**, and precedes **si** and those forms which begin with **l**.

Mi ci abituo	I am accustoming myself to it
Ci si abitua	He is accustoming himself to it
Ce lo trovò	He found it there

2. **Vi** follows **mi**, and precedes other forms.

Mi vi recherò subito	I shall take my way thither at once
Ve lo misero	They put it there

3. **Ne** follows either **ci** or **vi**, and precedes the forms beginning with **l**.

Ce ne andiamo	We are going away
Ne lo tolse	He took it away from there, from him, etc.

127. Certain reflexive verbs take a second conjunctive in certain meanings, as **andārsene** 'go away,' **prēndersela** 'take it ill,' and **avērsela a male** 'be offended.'

Andiāmocene	Let us go away
Andātosene , non tornò più	Having gone, he did not return again
Essēndosela prēsa	Having taken it ill
Non se l'abbia a male	Do not be offended

VOCABULARY

l'avviso (<i>m.</i>) sign, notice	accompagnare accompany
il giornale newspaper	aspettare wait, wait for
Lōndra London	avē notizie di receive news from
le notizie news	avērsela a male be offended
Parigi Paris	dare il buon viaggio a wish a
lo sportello ticket window	pleasant journey to
la stazione railway station	partire leave (<i>intr.</i>)
il viaggiatore passenger, traveler	prēndersela take it ill
per favore please	spōrgersi, spōrsi, spōrto lean out
pericoloso dangerous	danno 3 <i>pl. pres. ind. of dare (irr.)</i>
secondo second	give
a tempo in time	
terzo third	

EXERCISE

I

1. Si monta in treno. 2. Tutti si danno il buon viaggio. 3. Il treno parte fra poco: tornerò subito alla stazione. 4. Non bisogna far tardi, se vogliamo arrivarvi a tempo. 5. Non se la prenda. 6. Voglio accompagnarcela. 7. Dove si comprano i biglietti? Allo sportello. 8. Mi dia due biglietti di seconda classe per Parigi. 9. Me li dia subito, per favore. 10. Nei treni italiani c'è sempre un avviso, che dice: *È pericoloso sporgersi.* 11. Ho avuto notizie di un mio amico. 12. La lettera che m'ha scritta è più interessante che lunga. 13. Desidera ch'io gliela legga? 14. Il suo viaggio è

stato pericoloso. 15. Non se l' ha a male ; non me ne ha parlato.
 16. Ha comprato una bellissima villa, e desidera di mostrarmela.
 17. Fermiamoci alla prima stazione per visitarla.

II

1. Let John accompany them to the station. 2. Will he buy the tickets? Yes, he will buy them, and [will] bring them to us. 3. One buys one's tickets at the ticket-window. 4. Let us return there at once. 5. Our brother will not look for us there, but he will wait for us near the door. 6. Wait a minute. Here are the newspapers I have bought. 7. I will read them to you, if you wish me to read them to you. 8. Don't lean out, Marcellina. 9. Two travelers in the compartment are talking of Paris: they say that it is more beautiful than London. 10. Do not lean out, madam. It is dangerous. 11. He buys a gun and gives it to them. 12. They will show it to her. 13. Having felt offended, he does not wish me to speak to him about it.

LESSON XVIII

IRREGULAR VERBS

128. Irregular Verb: Regular Forms. *a.* Certain parts of all irregular verbs except *essere* are always regular: the past descriptive indicative, past subjunctive, and present participle, the second person plural of the present indicative, and the second person singular and first and second persons plural of the past absolute.

1. In addition, the second and third persons singular and first plural of the present indicative, and the first and second plural of the present subjunctive, are regular in many irregular verbs, as *rimanere*.

129. The Verb *rimanere* 'remain.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *rimanere*, *rimanendo*, *rimango*, *rimarrò*, *rimasi*,
rimasto (*or rimaso*)

INDICATIVE			
	PRESENT	PAST DESCRIPTIVE	
<i>rimango</i>	<i>rimaniamo</i> , <i>rimanghiamo</i>	<i>rimanèvo</i> , <i>etc.</i>	
<i>rimani</i>	<i>rimanete</i>		
<i>rimane</i>	<i>rimāngono</i>		
	FUTURE	PAST ABSOLUTE	
<i>rimarrò</i>	<i>rimarremo</i>	<i>rimasi</i>	<i>rimanemmo</i>
<i>rimarrai</i>	<i>rimarrete</i>	<i>rimanēsti</i>	<i>rimanēste</i>
<i>rimarrà</i>	<i>rimarranno</i>	<i>rimase</i>	<i>rimāsero</i>
PAST FUTURE			
<i>rimarrei</i> , <i>etc.</i>			
IMPERATIVE			
		<i>rimaniamo</i>	
	<i>rimani</i>	<i>rimanete</i>	
	<i>rimanga</i>	<i>rimāngano</i>	
SUBJUNCTIVE			
	PRESENT	PAST	
<i>rimanga</i>	<i>rimaniamo</i>	<i>rimanēssi</i> , <i>etc.</i>	
<i>rimanga</i>	<i>rimaniate</i>		
<i>rimanga</i>	<i>rimāngano</i>		

130. Principal Parts. To the three principal parts of regular verbs (cf. 91) must be added, for wholly irregular verbs, the first person singular of the present indicative, of the past absolute, and of the future. But of very many (cf. 120, *b*) the infinitive, past absolute, and past participle are enough, and the present participle is required only of a few, like *porre*, *ponendo*, or *dire*, *dicendo*, where its stem differs from that of the infinitive. The system of formation is as follows:

a. From the present participle :

1. The past descriptive.
2. The second person plural of the present indicative. EXCEPTIONS : **dire** and **fare**, which have **dite** and **fate**.
3. The second person singular, and first and second plural, of the past absolute. EXCEPTIONS : **dare** and **stare**, which change **a** in the stem to **e** (**dèsti**, **stèmmo**, etc.).
4. The past subjunctive. EXCEPTIONS : **dare** and **stare**, as above.
5. Often, as in **rimanere**, the second and third persons singular and first plural of the present indicative, and the first and second plural of the present subjunctive.

b. From the first person singular of the present indicative :

1. The third person plural of that tense. EXCEPTIONS : **andare**, **avere**, **dare**, **fare**, **sapere**, **stare**, which have **vanno**, **hanno**, **danno**, **fanno**, **sanno**, **stanno**.
2. The entire singular and the third person plural of the present subjunctive. EXCEPTIONS : **avere**, **dare**, **sapere**, **stare**, which have **abbia**, **dia**, **sāppia**, **stia**, and **abbiano**, **diano**, **sāppiano**, **stiano**.

NOTE. The other persons of the present indicative and subjunctive may be regular, as in **rimanere**, or not ; in any case the first and second plural of the subjunctive follow the first plural of the indicative.

c. From the future, whether regular or irregular, is formed the past future.

d. From the first person singular of the past absolute are formed the third singular and plural of that tense (cf. 120, *a*).

e. The imperative of irregular verbs is identical with the corresponding persons of the present indicative and subjunctive. EXCEPTIONS : **avere**, **sapere**, **valere**, in which it follows wholly the subjunctive ; and **andare**, **dare**, **dire**, **fare**, **stare**, which have in the second singular the shortened forms **va'**, **da'**, **di'**, **fa'**, **sta'** (cf. 100, *b*).

NOTE. Only as many parts of a verb will be found in the special vocabularies as are necessary to its conjugation on the principles just explained. If the present and future are omitted, they are regular. If the first person only of the present is given (unless marked *irr.*), then the present indicative and subjunctive are to be conjugated like **rimanere**. Unusual or alternative forms are to be found in the alphabetical list of irregular verbs.

VOCABULARY

il bacio (<i>pl.</i> baci) kiss	inviare send
compagno, -a companion	mandare send, order
il dolce sweetmeat, dessert	parere, paio, parrò, parvi, parso
la licenza leave; in licenza on leave	seem, appear
Pasqua (<i>f.</i>) Easter	promettere, promisi, promesso
	promise
devi (<i>2 sg. pres. ind. of dovere, irr.</i>) must	riabbracciare embrace again
fa' (<i>2 sg. imper. of fare, irr.</i>) make, have	vedere, vedrò, vidi, visto see
mai ever	
sta' (<i>2 sg. imper. of stare, irr.</i>) be	allegro joyful, happy
vièni (<i>2 sg. imper. of venire</i>)	disperato heartbroken
	dispiacente sorry
	francese French
	mille a thousand
	sicuro sure, safe

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

PASQUA

il 12 aprile, 1914

Caro Lucio

La mamma è disperata. Come ci avevi promesso, ti s'aspettava tutti per Pasqua; si era sicuri che ti avrebbero mandato in licenza, ed io volevo vederti vestito da soldato. O come mai non ti hanno più mandato? Povero Lucio, anche tu devi essere molto dispiacente!

Il babbo e la mamma ti hanno inviato dei dolci; il giorno di Pasqua sta' allegro coi tuoi compagni, e ricordati di noi.

Fa' buona Pasqua, e vieni presto presto; ci par mille anni a tutti di riabbracciarti.

Tanti baci del tuo

piccolo fratello

Mino.

II

1. The teacher showed me the letter which the pupil had written.
2. What is the name of the little boy who wrote the letter? His name is Mino.
3. Have you any sweetmeats, Mino? No, but my brother has promised to buy me some.
4. These are the most beautiful roses I have ever seen.
5. They saw Lucio (on) Easter Day; he had returned on leave to his brother's.
6. Do you wish some water? Yes, bring me a glass (of it).
7. Here is my fountain pen; make use of it, pray [pure].
8. If I had made use of it, I should have feared to [di] lose it.
9. Return home, my brother; it seems to me a thousand years till I see you again [rivedere].
10. If they returned to London, they would remain there six weeks.
11. My sisters wish me to remain in Florence, because they will soon return thither.
12. If we should see some French books at the bookseller's we should not forget to send you some.

LESSON XIX

THE VERBS DARE, SAPERE, VOLERE

131. The Verb *dare* (cf. 130, e) 'give.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *dare, dando, dō, darò, dētti or diēdi, dato*

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PAST ABSOLUTE		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
dō	diamo	dētti, diēdi	dēmmo	dia	diamo
dai	date	dēsti	dēste	dia	diate
dà	danno	dētte, diēde	dēttero, diēdero	dia	diano

*a. Idioms with **dare** (for reference):

- dare addosso a** to hold to blame
dare a fare a to give trouble, make work or bother for
dare ad intendere a to make (one) believe
darci dentro to guess right
darsi d'attorno to look about, try every means
dar del tu, del Lei, etc., to use **tu**, or **Lei**
dar fuoco a to set on fire
dare in una risata, in singulti to burst into laughter, into sobbing
dar la buona notte, il buon giorno to say good night, good day
dar la mano a to shake hands with
dar luogo a to give rise to
dar nel secentismo to fall into seventeenth-century affectations
dar noia a to disturb, annoy
dar nell'occhio to be conspicuous
dar pensiero a to cause worry to
darsi pensiero to worry, feel worried
dar retta a to heed
dar sull'Arno to face on the Arno

132. The Verb **sapere** 'know.'PRINCIPAL PARTS: **sapere, sapendo, sò, saprò, seppi, saputo**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

sò	sappiamo
sai	sapete
sa	sanno

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

sappia	sappiamo
sappia	sappiate
sappia	sappiano

a. Special meanings of **sapere**:

1. When followed directly by the infinitive, it means 'be able,' in the sense of to know how, to have learned how.

Non sa leggere nè scrivere He cannot read or write

2. It may mean 'learn of.'

Ho saputo la cosa stamane I learned of the matter this morning

3. Followed by **di**, it means 'smack of' or 'know about.'

Calamecca, nome che sa di saracino	Calamecca, a name which smacks of the Saracen
Di storia patria ne sai nulla?	Do you know anything about the history of your country?

4. **Saperne di** means 'have to do with,' 'hear of,' 'put up with.'

La Francia non volle mai saperne di una tassa di questo genere	France would never hear of a tax of this kind
---	--

133. The Verb *volere* 'will,' 'wish,' 'intend.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **volere, volendo, voglio, vorrò, vòlli, voluto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

voglio	vogliamo
vuoi	voLETE
vuole	vogliono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

voglia	vogliamo
voglia	vogliate
voglia	vogliano

a. Special meanings of *volere*:

1. With **ci**, in the third person, it means 'be necessary.'

Quanto denaro ci vuole ?	How much money is needed ?
Ci vorranno almeno quindici anni	It will take at least fifteen years

2. **Volere bene a** means 'love.'

I bambini vogliono bene ai genitori	Children love their parents
--	------------------------------------

134. Uses of *da*. *Da* with a measure of time means 'for.'

The present tense is used in this construction to translate the English present perfect (cf. 139, a).

Da quando abita a Livorno?	How long have you been living in Leghorn?
Da undici anni	For eleven years

VOCABULARY

l'ingegno (*m.*) talent, brains

la lotta struggle

la minaccia threat

la miniera mine

l'opera (*f.*) work

la parte share, part, side

la pietra stone

giovane young

inesauribile inexhaustible

nuovo new

prezioso precious

vivo alive

qualora whenever (*w. subj.*)

seicento six hundred

in età di at the age of

andò (3 *sg. p. abs. of andare, irr.*) go

ardere, arsi, arso burn

attrarre, attraendo, attraggo (*irr.*),

attrarrò, attrassi, attratto draw,

attract

dotare endow

esiliare exile

morire, muoio (*irr.*), morirò, morii,

morrò die

nascere, nacqui, nato be born

peregrinare wander, go on pil-

grimage

prevalere, prevalgo (*irr.*), prevarrò,

prevalsi, prevaluto prevail

riparare take refuge

scoprire, scopersi, scoperto dis-

cover; take off one's hat

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

DANTE ALIGHIERI

Dante Alighieri, il più grande dei poeti italiani, nacque in Firenze da nobile famiglia nell'anno 1265. Dotato di straordinario ingegno, si diede con ardore agli studi e, giovane ancora, incominciò a poetare. L'amor di patria lo attrasse nelle lotte, che fervevano allora in Firenze tra i Bianchi ed i Neri, e prese parte ad alcune battaglie.

Ma, prevalendo i Neri, il sommo poeta fu esiliato dalla patria con minaccia di essere arso vivo, qualora fosse tornato, e andò peregrinando per l'Italia. Finalmente riparò a Ravenna, dove morì il giorno 14 settembre dell'anno 1321 in età di 56 anni.

Scrisse molte opere; ma il suo lavoro più rinomato è il poema chiamato Divina Commedia, che, da seicento anni circa, gl'Italiani

e gli studiosi di tutto il mondo leggono e ammirano, scoprendovi ogni giorno nuove e sublimi bellezze, come in una miniera inesauribile di pietre preziose. Gl' Italiani dicono che Dante è l' uomo più straordinario che Dio abbia mandato sulla Terra.

II

1. We learned the news yesterday. 2. They learned it this morning. 3. How much time will it take? 4. It will take two months. 5. The Italian authors were born in Florence. 6. The Whites drew Dante into the struggle. 7. I found your newspaper, and gave it to them. 8. We did not take part in the battle. 9. We burned his books. 10. He will wander many years, and will die in Ravenna. 11. The two Americans died in Paris. 12. Who discovered America? 13. The young Italian will show you a precious stone. 14. We gave it to him. 15. John will give it to his sister. 16. The Spaniard burned their house.

LESSON XX

THE DISJUNCTIVE PRONOUN. THE VERB *VENIRE*

135. The Disjunctive Pronoun. The disjunctive pronoun differs from the conjunctive in that it is not, like the latter, inseparable from the verb. It has two cases :

a. The *nominative* (cf. 65), which is used as the subject of the verb, when expressed (cf. 63, *a*).

b. The *objective*, which has various uses. Its forms are as follows :

mē me	nōi us
tē thee	vōi you
lui him	loro them (<i>m. and f.</i>)
lei her	
sè (<i>refl.</i>) himself, herself, themselves (<i>m. and f.</i>)	

136. The Objective Case of the disjunctive pronoun is used—

a. After prepositions (cf. 222, *a*).

Vanno al muŕseo. Andiamo con	They are going to the museum.
loro	Let us go with them
Venga a prēndere il tè da me alle	Come and have tea with me at
cinque	five
La bambina scrisse la lēttēra da sē	The little girl wrote the letter all
	herself

1. Instead of **con me**, **con te**, and **con se**, may be used the forms **meco**, **teco**, and **seco**. **Seco** is sometimes equivalent, where there is no ambiguity, to **con lui** or **con lei**.

Vq a casa. Viēn meco	I am going home, come with me
-----------------------------	-------------------------------

b. Hence, after comparatives.

Il suo fratello minore è più alto	His younger brother is taller than
di lui	he

c. As a substitute for the conjunctive,

1. Where there are two objects in the same construction.

I nōstri genitōri amano tē e mē	Our parents love you and me
Parla a lui ed a nōi	He speaks to him and to us

2. For clearness, emphasis, or contrast.

L' hanno dato prōprio a mē	They have given it to me myself, to me in person. (The unem- phatic form would be Me [<i>for</i> Mi] lo hanno dato)
Lqdo tē , Giannētta, e biasmo lui .	I praise you, Giannetta, and re- prove him

(*a*) Sometimes the conjunctive form is retained redundantly:

A me non mi piace l' arte modērna	I do not care for modern art
---	------------------------------

d. In the third person, where the other persons would take the nominative case,

1. When the subject follows the verb, in a declarative sentence.

L' ha fatto **lui**, *or lui stesso* He has done it **himself**

But

L' ho fatto **io stesso**

2. When the verb is understood.

Lui pittore, **lui** poeta, **lui** musicista, He a painter, a poet, a musician,
lui ingegnere, **lui** architetto! an engineer, an architect!

3. Before **Signori**, or a cardinal number.

Che desiderano **lor(o)** Signori? What do **you** gentlemen wish?
Loro tre **They** three

4. After **anche**, **neanche**, **nemmeno**.

Anche loro sono dalla mia They also are on my side
Nemmeno lui è venuto Not even he came

But

Io vorrei viaggiare. Anch' io I should like to travel. So should I

- ***e**. In exclamations.

Felice **lui**! Pōvera **te**! Happy he! Poor you!

- ***f**. After **come**, **dove**, **quanto**, **salvochè**, **siccome**.

Lēi potrà riuscirvi **come me** You can succeed in it as well as I
Io non sono dōtto **quanto lui** I am not so learned as he

- ***g**. As a predicate after **essere** (in Tuscan usage often preceded by **in**).

S' io fossi **te** (in te), non lo farei If I were **you**, I would not do it
Non avrēbbe voluto esser **me** (in If he had known everything, he
me), se avesse saputo tutto would not have wished to be **I**
EXCEPTION: Non sono più io I am no more myself, I don't
know myself

- ***h**. In absolute construction, as the subject of the past participle and of the present participle in **-ante**, **-ente**. With the form in **-ando**, **-endo**, the nominative is preferred. (Cf. 193.)

Venuti loro, cominciammo a parlare di politica

When they had come, we began to talk of politics

Vivente me, non lo farai

You shall not do it while I live

But

Essendoci io, non vōllero parlarne

I being there, they refused to speak of it

**i*. The disjunctive reflexive, *sè*, can of course be used only when it represents the same person as the subject.

Va da *sè*

It goes without saying (of itself)

But (since 'Rembrandt' is not the subject)

Un ritratto di Rembrandt, fatto da lui medesimo

A portrait of Rembrandt painted by himself

1. When reciprocal, *sè* is replaced by *loro*.

Non s'accōrdano fra loro

They do not agree among themselves

2. *Sè* loses its accent before *stesso*.

Non vōlle mai parlare di *sè stesso*

He would never talk of himself

137. The subjunctive is used after *crēdere* meaning 'think' or 'believe.'

Crēdo che *piōva*

I think it is raining

Non *crēde* che ci sia io

He does not believe I am here

138. The Verb *venire* 'come.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *venire*, *venendo*, *vengo*, *verrò*, *venni*, *venuto*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

<i>vengo</i>	<i>veniamo</i>
<i>viēni</i>	<i>venite</i>
<i>viēne</i>	<i>vengono</i>

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>venga</i>	<i>veniamo</i>
<i>venga</i>	<i>veniate</i>
<i>venga</i>	<i>vengano</i>

a. Special uses of venire :

1. **Venire** is often used instead of **essere** to construct the passive (cf. 97, a, 1).

Questi desiderî non vĕnnero compiuti These desires were not fulfilled

2. **Venire** takes **a** before an infinitive.

Venga a vedermi alle quattro Come and see me at four

3. **Venire** is used for **andare**, when motion is with or towards the second person.

Verrò, verranno, da Lei domani I shall come, they will come, to
your house to-morrow

VOCABULARY

il calzino	sock	augurare	wish, wish well
il caporale	corporal	crĕdere	think, believe, have an opinion
il cartellino	sheet, label	impostare	post, mail (impòsto)
il fazzoletto	handkerchief	lodare	praise (lòdo)
la fotografia	photograph	passare	pass, pass as
il francobollo	postage stamp	pensare	think, reflect; pensare a think of, have in mind
la lana	wool	risparmiare	save
il nome	name (given)	tenere, tĕngo	(irr. like venire), terrò, tĕnni, tenuto hold
il pacco	(pl. pacchi) package		
il principio	beginning		
appena	hardly	affettuoso	affectionate
costaggiù	down there near you	lontano	distant
dunque	then, well	postale	postal
insieme	together		

EXERCISE

I. READING LESSON

NATALE

il 22 dicembre

Caro fratello,

il babbo e la mamma mi hanno detto: scrivi tu a Lucio. Ma come fare che appena so tenere la penna in mano? Ho pregato la signora maestra di aiutarmi, e fra lei e me si è messa insieme questa letterina.

Dunque: a nome di tutti di famiglia ti auguro buon Natale e buon anno.

Riceverai un pacco postale: il babbo ci ha messo i dolci, la mamma i fazzoletti, la Gigina i calzini di lana che ti ha fatti da sè, ed io un bel libro, che ti ho comprato con i denari che risparmio alla scuola coi cartellini dei francobolli.

Sta' allegro il giorno di Natale: noi penseremo a te che sei costaggiù a Trīpoli, tanto lontano da noi; ma anche tu pensa a noi, che ti vogliamo bene.

È vero che sei passato caporale? allora fatti la fotografia, e mandacela.

Tanti baci da tutti, un abbraccio dal tuo

aff.^{mo} fratello

Mino

II

1. We shall think about our family on Christmas Day. 2. Shall you think about yours? I am always thinking of it. 3. Buy ten postage-stamps for me, and mail these letters for him. 4. I have mailed them. Many thanks. Don't mention it. 5. What was there in the postal package that Mino's brother received? 6. Mino's brother found in it six handkerchiefs and some woolen socks. 7. Mino says his little sister has made the socks all by herself. 8. Is his sister younger than I? 9. The teacher would not praise

the letters which the pupils had written. 10. Mino hardly knew how to hold the pen in his hand, and asked the teacher to help him. 11. Between him and me a letter has been put together. 12. My friend will come with us, but his brothers have returned with them. 13. We shall wish them Merry Christmas and Happy New Year. 14. Does the teacher praise you or him, Giannino? 15. Give me the gun, please. No, I will not give it to you, but to him. 16. We think our brother and his friend will come on Easter Day.

LESSON XXI

SPECIAL USES OF TENSES. SEQUENCE OF TENSES. AGREEMENT OF VERB AND SUBJECT. INVERSION

139. Present Indicative. *a.* With a measure of time after *da*, and sometimes in temporal clauses with *dacchè*, the present indicative is used to translate the English present perfect expressing an action begun in the past but continuing into the present (cf. 134).

Siamo in Italia da sei mesi

We **have been** (and still are) in Italy for six months

Dacchè sono qui

Since I **have been** here

1. If the action, begun in the past, was continuing at a later date in the past, the English past perfect is to be translated by the past descriptive.

Era ammalato da una settimana

He **had been** ill a week (and still was so at the time of which I speak)

Combattavamo da più di sei ore

We **had been fighting** for more than six hours

b. It is used, as in English, of the immediate future.

Parto domani

I **leave** to-morrow

***c.** For vividness of narration it is used, as in Latin and some other languages, for the past; this is known as the *historical present*.

Trovandomi vicino a una stazione, **v**olli fare una corsa per la strada sotterranea. **S**cendo due o tre scale, e mi **t**rovo tutt' a un tratto sbalzato dal giorno alla notte

Happening near a station, I **d**ecided to take a ride on the underground railway. I **d**escend two or three steps, and **f**ind myself suddenly transported out of day into night

140. Past Tenses of the Indicative. **a.** These are not susceptible of really logical analysis. The **past absolute** describes a past action, and translates the English simple past.

Ricevei una lettera ieri

I **r**eceived a letter yesterday

Morì a Parigi nel 1860

He **d**ied in Paris in 1860

b. The **present perfect** may be used —

1. Generally speaking, to translate the corresponding English tense, expressing an action completed within a period that has not yet expired.

Abbiamo **s**peso tanto denaro

We **h**ave **s**pent much money

Molti soldati **s**ono **a**rrivati questa settimana

Many soldiers **h**ave **a**rrived this week

2. For an action completed since midnight.

Stamane **h**o **s**critte tre lettere

This morning I **w**rote three letters

3. To describe an action which happened at an unstated time in the past, whose consequences extend into the present.

Ho **p**erduto il mio orologio

I **h**ave **l**ost my watch

L' Ariosto **h**a **s**critto l' *Orlando Furioso*

Ariosto **w**rote the *Orlando Furioso*

Colombo **h**a **s**coperto l' America

Columbus **d**iscovered America

NOTE. Outside of Tuscany the distinction between past absolute and present perfect is not carefully enough observed, and foreigners who have studied French are in danger of using the present perfect too much. Still, usage varies with mental attitude, vivid interest, etc.

c. The **past descriptive** is used to express incomplete or habitual action; to describe an action that was taking place when something else occurred; and in description.

Chiacchieravano

They were chatting

Noi si **andava** spesso al teatro l'inverno

We **used to go** often to the theater in winter

Scriveva quando **entrai**

He **was writing** when I **entered**

Un velo nero **cadeva** dalle due parti

A black veil **descended** on both sides

Il tempo **era** cattivo

The weather **was** bad

Il castello **era** a cavaliere di una valle angusta e **serviva** di confine ai due stati

The castle **bestrode** a narrow valley, and **acted** as boundary to the two states

1. Cf. 139, a, 1.

*2. It is often found substituted for the past future perfect (especially in **bisognare**, **convenire**, **dovere**, **potere**) and sometimes for the past subjunctive.

Sarei andato se potevo
Andavo se avessi potuto
Andavo se potevo

are all
equivalent to

Sarei andato se avessi potuto
I should have gone if I had been able

d. The **past perfect** translates the English past perfect except where the second past perfect is required (cf. **e**).

Mentre il frate **stava** così meditando, Renzo **era comparso** sull'uscio; ma visto il padre soprappensiero e le donne **che facevan** cenno di non disturbarlo, si **fermò** sulla soglia

While the friar **stood** thus in meditation, Renzo **had appeared** at the door; but seeing the holy father in thought, and the women **making** signs not to disturb him, he **stopped** on the threshold

1. Past tenses of **nāscere**. 'Was born' is variously translated: **è nato**, of a person still living; **era nato**, of one recently dead; **nacque**, of one long dead.

e. The **second past perfect** translates the past perfect —

1. In temporal clauses beginning with **appena, quando, tosto**chè, etc., immediately followed by a principal clause whose verb is in the past absolute.

Quando ebbe serrato l'uscio dietro a sè, vide un uomo ritirarsi pian piano, strisciando il muro	When he had locked the door behind him, he saw a man withdrawing very softly, skirting the wall
---	---

2. In such phrases as this :

Fra cinque minuti li ebbe finiti	He had them finished in five minutes
---	--------------------------------------

NOTE. To temporal clauses with either the past perfect or second past perfect, is very often preferred in actual usage the absolute construction with the participle (cf. 195).

141. The Future Tense. The future tense is used —

a. Contrary to English usage,

1. To indicate possibility or probability ; when the action referred to is past, the future becomes future perfect.

L' avrò perduto	I must have lost it
Saranno le otto	It must, or may, be eight o'clock
Sarà un'illusione, sarà vero	It may be true, it may be an illusion

2. To indicate actual future time after **quando, se,** etc.

Quando la vedrò , glielo dirò	When I see her, I shall tell her so
--------------------------------------	--

*3. As an alternative to the present subjunctive,

a. To indicate possibility.

Bada, che ti brucerai	Take care, you may burn yourself
------------------------------	---

b. When the dependent clause refers to future time (169, i. N. 1).

Credo che verranno	I think they will come
---------------------------	------------------------

b. As in English,

*1. Instead of the imperative, in a general precept or when the action is not to be performed immediately.

Amerai il prossimo tuo come te stesso	Thou shalt love thy neighbor as thyself
---	--

142. The Past Future. *a.* The past future is used like the English forms with *should, would, might*, to express what is uncertain or indefinite in the principal clause.

Potrēbbero smarrirsi	They might lose their way
Nōn mi farebbe spēcie	It would not surprise me
Si direbbe che fosse pazzo	One would say he was mad

b. To express future time in relation to the past tense of a verb of saying, thinking, etc.

Dice che farà, diceva che farebbe, il giro del mondo	He says he will , he said he would , make the tour of the world
---	--

i. When the statement made has failed to come true, the past future perfect is required.

Dissero che sarebbero venuti	They said they would come (but they did not)
------------------------------	--

c. In deferential or polite requests.

Vorrei vedere i suoi quadri	I should like to see his pictures
-----------------------------	--

d. In a statement reported by hearsay, on the authority of another.

Secondo i nostri dispacci, la Germania avrebbe dichiarato la guerra alla Francia	According to our telegrams, Ger- many has declared war upon France
---	---

e. In the conclusion of conditional sentences (cf. 93).

NOTE. In general, the past future perfect is often used in Italian where English would employ the simple past future.

Ciascuno studiava il luogo dove avrebbe dovuto cacciare la baio- netta	Each one considered the point where he should have to drive his bayonet
--	--

***143. Sequence of Tenses.** If the present or future of the independent clause be changed to a past tense, the present

of the dependent clause is changed to the past descriptive, the present perfect to the past perfect.

Lo lodo perchè fa, ha } fatto, bene	<i>becomes</i>	{ Lo lodavo (<i>or</i> lodai) perchè faceva, aveva fatto, bene
--	----------------	--

a. If the dependent clause states a general truth, the present tense may stand.

Galileo diceva che il mondo si muove	Galileo said that the world moves
--------------------------------------	-----------------------------------

***144. Agreement of Verb with Subject.** *a.* If there is more than one subject, the verb is plural.

Il monarca e il repubblicano non sono d'accordo	The monarchist and the republican do not agree
--	---

1. But if there is close alliance between them, a singular verb may be admitted.

Grande è la fierezza e la voracità della talpe	The temerity and voracity of the mole are considerable
---	---

2. Two or more singular subjects of the third person connected by *o* take a singular verb.

L'uno o l'altro verrà senza fallo	One or other of them will come without fail
-----------------------------------	--

3. Singular subjects connected by *con* or *nè* may take the verb in the singular or plural.

Non verrà, verranno, nè l'uno nè l'altro	Neither the one nor the other will come
---	--

La zia colla nipote partì, partirono, sul far del giorno	The aunt with the niece departed at daybreak
---	---

b. If the subjects are of different persons, the verb agrees with the first person in preference to the second, with the second in preference to the third.

Lo duca ed io per quel cammino ascoso Entrammo	The leader and I entered upon that secret way
---	--

Tu e lui siete dalla mia	You and he are on my side
--------------------------	---------------------------

c. The verb of a relative clause agrees in person and number with the antecedent.

Voi, che intendendo il terzo ciel	You who by understanding move
movete	the third heaven

d. Collective nouns take a plural verb usually, if followed by a plural noun in a phrase with **di**.

La maggior parte degli Italiani	The majority of the Italians wished
desideravano la libertà	for liberty

***145. Inversion of Verb and Subject.** The subject frequently follows the verb in Italian, there being no hard and fast rule about it. Such inversion may occur —

a. In interrogative sentences (cf. 62, *b*), unless beginning with an interrogative pronoun.

b. With impersonal verbs, especially with the partitive.

Ci māncano dieci minuti alle otto	It lacks ten minutes to eight
Ve ne ha tanti	There are so many of them

c. For emphasis or contrast.

L'ha detto anche lei	<i>She</i> said so too
S'egli mi parlava una lingua che io non capivo, io potevo bene parlargli una lingua che non capisse lui	If he spoke to me in a language I did not understand, I might well speak to him in a language <i>he</i> would not understand

d. With participles in the absolute construction (cf. 136, *h*).

Parlando tu , tutti stanno attenti	When you talk, every one gives heed
---	-------------------------------------

e. In exhortations, wishes, or imprecations.

Ci fossi tu!	If you were only here!
Lo ricompensi Iddio!	May God reward him!

f. In relative clauses and indirect questions.

Le mostrerò il gioiello che m' ha dato lo zio	I'll show you the jewel my uncle gave me
Domando dove sono le seconde classi	I ask where the second-class places are

g. In adverbial clauses of time or place.

Dal fondo della escavazione cen- trale si partono le gallerie secondarie	From the end of the central excavation start the secondary galleries
Nel 1817 capitò a Venezia un viaggiatore inglese	In 1817 there happened to come to Venice an English traveler

h. With verbs which take the dative of the person.

Le dispiace la notizia	The news causes her pain
Gli tremavano le labbra	His lips trembled

i. When the subject or predicate has long modifying clauses, which should logically be placed near it.

Quale uomo fosse il Thouar, quanto l'Italia gli debba, come in lui s'accoppiasse alla lucidità della mente la bontà del cuore, dice in questo volume il biografo con autorità che non è dato ad alcuno di pareggiare	What kind of man Thouar was, how much Italy owes him, how in him goodness of heart was united to clearness of mind, the biographer tells in this volume with an authority which it is given to no one else to equal
--	---

j. In general, in narrative style, and in conversation, to avoid pedantry.

Venne subito la disfatta di Novara	The defeat of Novara came soon after
È morto il papa	The pope is dead

k. The subject may follow both verb and predicate nominative.

Era presidente del Consiglio Mās- simo d'Azeglio	Massimo d'Azeglio was President of the Council
---	---

VOCABULARY

l' allōdola (<i>f.</i>) lark	agguantare possess oneself of
il brano scrap, fragment; fare a brani tear to pieces	appollaiarsi roost, lodge
la civiltà civilization	avventarsi (<i>a</i>) fall (upon)
il falco (<i>pl. -chi</i>) hawk, falcon	cacciare hunt, drive out
la fatica (<i>pl. -che</i>) fatigue	succhiare suck
il nonno grandfather	dopochè (<i>conj.</i>) after
il pezzo piece	dovesse 3 <i>sg. p. subj. of dovere</i>
il resto remainder, rest	fēcero 3 <i>pl. p. abs. of fare</i>
il risorgimento resurrection	già already
il sēcolo century	nonostante che (<i>with subj.</i>) not- withstanding that
lo straniero stranger, alien	per uno apiece
il suolo soil	qualche some (<i>indef. adj. w. sg. n.</i>)
altro other	sotto under
	via (<i>adv.</i>) away

EXERCISE

I

UN PO' DI STORIA DEL RISORGIMENTO ITALIANO

Nonostante che la nostra Italia dovesse essere sacra per gli uomini di tutto il mondo dopochè da essa avevano imparato le arti, le scienze, le industrie e la civiltà sotto tutte le forme, gli stranieri, in altri tempi, l'hanno sempre guardata come i falchi guardano le allodole: per avventarcisi, per farla a brani e per agguantarsene un pezzo per uno.

E disgraziatamente per noi, non si contentarono di guardarla, ma fecero anche il resto.

Voi, ragazzi italiani, avrete già qualche idea di quello che i vostri nonni e i vostri babbi hanno fatto per cacciar via dal nostro suolo i vampiri che da secoli vi s'erano appollaiati per succhiargli il sangue.

Ora i vampiri se ne sono andati. Ma quante fatiche, quanti pericoli e quanti morti!

II

(Involves 139, 140, 141, 142)

1. The duke possessed himself of the state. 2. If many Italians had not fought for their country, they would not have driven out the alien from their soil. 3. He read my letter after I had written it for the second time. 4. Your grandfathers drove out the strangers from Italy, because they had sucked her blood for centuries. 5. According to the letter I received this morning, my mother has returned to Paris. 6. This is the shortest letter I have ever received from her. 7. The palace of the stranger was larger than the house which was near it. 8. Hawks fall upon the other birds. 9. The Spaniard said he would come before noon, but he has not yet arrived. 10. Where is my umbrella? I must have left it in that compartment. 11. We were talking of John's pupil when he entered. 12. We used to see her every week last winter, but we have not seen her this year. 13. When he had bought the tickets, he put them in his pocket. 14. When I arrive at my grandfather's I shall find the others there.

LESSON XXII

THE DEFINITE ARTICLE. THE VERB *ANDARE*

146. The Definite Article. The definite article is used far more in Italian than in English. It is used where it would not be in English —

a. Before the possessive adjective (cf. 107, 108).

b. Before abstract nouns and nouns denoting a whole class (cf. 73, *a*).

c. Before family names of men; often, especially to imply familiarity or affection, before given names of women; rarely before given names of men, when referring to a character

or to the man's works; sometimes before the surnames of women, to indicate fame or familiarity.

Il Tasso passò sette anni in prigione a Ferrara	Tasso spent seven years in prison at Ferrara
La Lauretta è una brava bambina	Laura is a capable little girl
L' Amleto del Shakespeare	Shakespeare's Hamlet
Ha molto studiato il Dante	He has studied Dante (the works of Dante) a great deal
La piccola Bugiani	The little Bugiani girl
La Duse	Duse, the great actress

1. When men's surnames, as Garibaldi's, are in very familiar and affectionate use, the article would be an affectation.

d. Before names of continents, countries, and provinces; and names of lakes, islands, mountains, and rivers (except Arno).

L' Australia è molto lontana dall' Europa	Australia is very far from Europe
Viva l' Italia!	Long live Italy!

1. After **in** meaning 'in' or 'to' a country it is omitted with names ending in **a** (unless modified).

Resteremo tutta l' estate in Italia	We shall remain all summer in Italy
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------

But

Stetti due mesi nel Belgio	I stayed two months in Belgium
È mai stato nel Giappone?	Have you ever been in Japan?
Avēvano passato l' inverno nella Francia meridionale	They had spent the winter in southern France

2. It is omitted likewise after **di**, when preposition and noun are equivalent to an adjective of nationality.

Il re d' Inghilterra	The king of England, the English king
Vini di Francia	French wines

3. A few names of cities require the article, such as **l' Aia** 'the Hague,' **il Cairo** 'Cairo,' **la Spezia** 'Spezia,' etc.

4. Among names of islands which do not take the article are **Crēta** 'Crete,' **Cipro** 'Cyprus,' **Rōdi** 'Rhodes.'

e. Instead of the possessive: with parts of the body or clothing, or some names of relatives; in general, where the idea of possession is intimate and there cannot be ambiguity (cf. 109); sometimes with **ne** to translate 'its' (cf. 107, *c*).

Si levò l'impermeabile	He took off his raincoat
I capelli gli scendevano fin sulle spalle	His hair fell down to his shoulders

Come sta la mamma?	How is your mother?
---------------------------	----------------------------

1. Likewise after **avere**, of personal characteristics.

Egli ha gli occhi azzurri	He has blue eyes
Ella ha le mani piccole	She has small hands

*2. In poetic usage this may be in an adverbial accusative construction.

Poggiati il ginocchio allo scudo	Leaning their knees against their shields
---	---

f. Before the number of the year or the hour, or the name of a particular month.

Il Petrarca nacque nel 1304	Petrarch was born in 1304
Verrò da Lei alle cinque	I shall come to your house at five
Nell' ottobre dell'anno scorso	In October of last year

g. Distributively,

1. In expressing measure.

Hò pagato questa seta cinque lire il metro	I paid five francs a meter for this silk
---	--

2. With days of the week, to mean 'every.'

La mia maestra d'italiano viene da me il mercoledì	My Italian teacher comes to me on Wednesdays, or every Wednesday
---	---

a. Without article, the name of a day of the week may be understood to refer to the last or the next one.

Lo vidi lunedì

I saw him on **Monday**, last **Monday**

h. Before a title followed by a proper name.

È arrivata la regina Elena nel suo yacht Queen Helen arrived in her yacht
yacht

È in casa la Signora Casagrande? Is Mrs. Casagrande at home?

i. Before any other part of speech used as a noun.

Mi duole il dirlo It pains me to say it
Rifiutò di dirmi il perchè He refused to tell me the reason
Pensava con grande sgomento al I thought with great anxiety of
come avrei fatto a pagare how I should manage to pay

j. In constructing the superlative degree (cf. 116).

**k.* In a number of idiomatic phrases :

Dare il buon giorno	To say good morning
Dire le bugie	To tell lies
Fare il Natale	To keep Christmas
Fare le scuse	To make excuses

1. Many such phrases take the feminine article alone, with a noun, presumably *cosa*, understood. (Or this may be considered the feminine conjunctive pronoun, replacing *la cosa*.)

Averla con	To have a grudge against
Darla vinta a	To surrender
Darsiela con	To be congenial to
Dirla schietta	To speak frankly
Farla da padrone	To act arrogantly, play the master
Farla finita	To make an end of it
Io la veggio brutta	It looks bad to me
Legarsiela al dito	To hold a grudge
Saperla lunga	To know all about it

147. The Definite Article is Omitted —

a. In the vocative, and after a pronominal adjective or a numeral.

S' accōmodi, Signore. Il signore	Sit down, sir. The gentleman sits
s' accōmoda	down
Questa lume	This lamp
Due scodelle	Two soup-plates

b. In proverbs.

Cosa fatta capo ha	A thing done has an end
--------------------	-------------------------

c. In enumerations.

Nobili, popolani, contadini, uomini,	Nobles, populace, peasants, men,
donne, tutti s' affollavano allo	women, everybody was throng-
scalo	ing down to the landing-place

d. With **di**, to indicate material, contents, intimate characteristics, or nationality.

Il vestito di seta	The silk dress
Il bicchier d' acqua	The glass of water
Il maestro d' italiano	The Italian teacher
La cioccolata di Svizzera	Swiss chocolate
Una moltitudine di pellegrini	A multitude of pilgrims

***e.** In many set phrases, such as

A letto	In bed
A scuola	At school
Barca a remi	Rowboat
Da mane a sera	From morning till night
Di giorno, di notte	By day, by night
Di settembre	In September
In casa	At home
In città	In town
In piedi	On one's feet
Uomo di giudizio	Man of judgment, good behavior

***148. Agreement of Definite Article with Two or more Nouns.**

a. In a series of substantives of the same number and gender, the article may be used with one alone.

Le montagne, valli e piagge della Riviera italiana sono bellissime	The mountains, valleys, and coasts of the Italian Riviera are most beautiful
---	--

But

Le montagne ed i ghiacci della Svizzera	The mountains and glaciers of Switzerland
--	--

149. The Verb *andare* 'go.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **andare, andando, vado, anderò or andrò, andai, andato**

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE	
vado, <i>or</i> vò	andiamo	vada	andiamo
vai	andate	vada	andiate
va	vanno	vada	vādano

For the imperative, cf. 130, *e*.

a. Special uses of *andare*.

1. **Andare** takes **a** before the infinitive. To 'go and' is translated **andare a**.

Andrò a comprare della carta da scrivere	I shall go and buy some writing- paper
---	---

2. **Andare** with the present participle translates the verb 'be,' with an additional idea of continuation (cf. 102).

Va crescendo a poco a poco	It is growing little by little
----------------------------	--------------------------------

3. With the past participle, it makes a passive carrying the additional idea of obligation or propriety (cf. 97, *a*, 1).

I ragazzi italiani non vanno man- dati soli a scuola	Italian boys are never sent to school unaccompanied
Questo non va messo qui	This isn't to be put here

***b. Idioms with andare.**

Andare a cavallo	To go on horseback
Andare in collera	To become angry
Andare dietro a	To be inferior to; to follow
Andare in êstasi	To go into ecstasies
Andare fuori	To go out
Andare a pièdi	To go on foot
Andar superbo	To be proud
A lungo andare	In the long run

VOCABULARY

il caffè coffee	andare a cavallo ride horseback
la conoscenza acquaintance	andare a pièdi go on foot
il figlio son	aprire, apersi, aperto open
la figlia daughter	aver piacere di be pleased to
il latte milk	conoscere, conobbi, conosciuto be
Milano Milan	acquainted with, meet, become
Nāpoli Naples	acquainted with
il principe prince	dar fuoco a set fire to
la principessa princess	dar la buona notte etc. say good
la regina queen	night etc.
il romanzo novel	dar noia a annoy
la seta silk	dar pensiero a worry (<i>tr.</i>)
come al solito as usual	incontrare meet, run across
per il solito usually	presentare introduce
in casa at home	restare stay, remain
fueri out	sperare hope
or ora just now	
quest'altro next, coming	

EXERCISE**I**

1. È in casa la Signorina Conti? No, Signora, è andata fuori.
2. Buon giorno, Signora. Mi permetta di presentarle il Signor Orselli.
3. Ho piacere di far la Sua conoscenza.
4. Dove sono le Sue figlie? Perchè non sono venute con Lei?
5. Sono andate in

Francia. Ci resteranno due mesi, e passeranno l'estate in Inghilterra. 6. Dove ha conosciuto il Signor Pisani? A Napoli. Conosco lui e sua sorella. 7. Conosce il nuovo romanzo del Fogazzaro? Desidero di comprarlo. 8. Dove va, Signorina? Vado da mia zia. Spero che sarà in casa. 9. Non ci sarà. L'ho vista or ora in Via Cavour. 10. Andiamo a trovarla. L'incontreremo per la strada. 11. Ha sentito che il Bianchi è andato in Inghilterra? 12. Sono andata questa mattina dalla mia maestra d'inglese. 13. Ci vo il martedì e il venerdì, e pago tre lire la lezione. 14. Come si chiama la regina d'Italia? Si chiama la regina Elena. 15. Ha visto la principessa Vittoria? Ha gli occhi neri, e le mani molto piccole. 16. Andai la settimana scorsa a fare il Natale da mio cognato. 17. L'Italia è la nostra patria. 18. Di giugno si va per il solito in campagna, e si torna di settembre in città. 19. Non si dia pensiero. 20. Leggevo il famoso romanzo del Manzoni quando venne la mia amica a trovarmi. 21. Le do noia se apro la finestra? L'aveva chiusa or ora. 22. Desidera una tazza di caffè e latte?

II

1. We usually came into town in October. 2. America is larger than Europe. 3. Manzoni was a writer of Italy. He was born in Milan. 4. We opened the door, as usual, but they closed it. 5. Orselli has gone to France. He will stay three weeks with Count Costa. 6. Let me introduce you to Princess Porciani. 7. Have the soldiers set fire to our house? 8. I should have opened the window of the compartment, but it would have annoyed one of the passengers. 9. Is Mrs. B. at home? No, miss, she has gone out. 10. Did she go on foot? No, she went on horseback. 11. This news worries us. 12. The children came and said good-morning to their teacher. 13. I wish to read Fogazzaro's best novel. 14. Having read it, I shall talk of it to my friends. 15. Where did you meet Miss C.? I am not acquainted with her. 16. Permit me to introduce to you Mr. B. 17. I am happy to make your acquaintance.

18. We were reading, when they came and said good morning to us. 19. Bring me a glass of milk. 20. Here is my cousin's silk dress. 21. When I go to her house I shall carry it to her. 22. Where are your books, Lauretta? Go and find them.

III

L'ARRIVO IN UNA STAZIONE FERROVIARIA ITALIANA

Si arriva a Firenze. Un lungo fischio, il treno rallenta, poi si ferma alla stazione. State pensando commosso a tutto quello che avete a vedere in questa bellissima città; ma queste emozioni sono interrotte bruscamente dagli altri viaggiatori che cominciano a buttar giù i loro bagagli dalla rete, con gran pericolo di farvi male. Quelli che li hanno già in mano si sporgono allo sportello, chiamando: — Facchino! — Se hanno la fortuna di trovarne uno pronto, lo caricano di tanti sacchi, tante valigie, tante borse, da farlo parere più ciuco che uomo. Vi mena all'uscita dove dovete dare il vostro biglietto all'impiegato, poichè in Italia si deve renderlo non solo all'entrata in treno ma anche all'uscire dalla stazione. È il facchino che vi trova una carrozza, o un legno, come si chiama a Firenze. Ci mette tutta la vostra roba e vi salite anche voi. Poi gli dite di andare nel bagagliaio per ritirarne il vostro baule, dandogli la bolletta. Mentre che lo aspettate, vedete uscire dalla stazione tanta gente frettolosa, affollata, occupata a chiamarsi, a urtarsi, a stringersi la mano, baciandosi sulle gote anche gli uomini, che è un piacere a vederli. Ecco il vostro facchino col baule su un carretto. In un attimo il baule è sulla vettura, e al facchino che sta in aspettativa davanti a voi, si dà una mancia che non basta mai. Per quanto generosa sia, egli vi guarderà con una espressione commovente, e vi dirà: — Ma . . . è poco! — Bisogna fare l'orecchio da mercante e tirar via per le strade rumorose, fino al Lungarno dove sta il vostro albergo.

LESSON XXIII

CARDINAL NUMERALS. DATES, TIME, AGE. MONEY.
MEASUREMENT. THE VERB *MORIRE*

150. The Cardinal Numerals are —

1 uno	21 ventuno	100 cento
2 due	22 ventidue	101 centuno
3 tre	23 ventitrè	102 centodue
4 quattro	24 ventiquattro	160 centosessanta
5 cinque	25 venticinque	180 centottanta
6 sei	26 ventisei	200 dugento
7 sette	27 ventisette	600 seicento
8 otto	28 ventotto	800 ottocento
9 nove	29 ventinove	1000 mille
10 dieci	30 trenta	1001 mille uno
11 undici	31 trentuno	2000 duemila
12 dodici	32 trentadue	20,000 ventimila
13 tredici	38 trentotto	
14 quattordici	39 trentanove	
15 quindici	40 quaranta	
16 sedici	50 cinquanta	
17 diciassette	60 sessanta	
18 diciotto	70 settanta	
19 diciannove	80 ottanta	
20 venti	90 novanta	

a. Uno has a feminine **una**, and when used adjectively has the forms of the indefinite article (cf. 59, 60).

Uno scopo, una patria, un dio One purpose, one fatherland, one God

1. With **ventuno**, **trentuno**, etc., used adjectively, the noun should be in the singular when it follows the numeral, in the plural when it precedes, the numeral agreeing in gender only.

Trentun soldato, soldati trentuno Thirty-one soldiers

Centuna lira, lire centuna One hundred and one lire

b. With **cento** and **mille** the indefinite article is not used. The plural of **mille** is **mila**.

Cento uōmini e **mille** cavalli

A hundred men and **a** thousand horses

c. 'Eleven hundred,' 'twelve hundred,' etc., must be translated 'one thousand one hundred' etc.

La prima crociata ebbe luogo circa
il **millecento**

The First Crusade took place about
1100

La guērra civile americana in-
cominciò nel **milleottocento**
sessantuno

The American Civil War began
in 1861

d. 'Both' = **tutti e due**, **tutt' e due**; 'all three' = **tutti e tre**; etc. If a noun follows, it takes the article.

Tutt' e due gli amici

Both (the) friends

e. The numerals above twenty may be written as one word or as two except when the digit is one or eight, when they must be written as one.

Ventidue, venti due; quarantuno; sessantotto; trenta sei, trentasei

***f.** **Cento** may be written **cen** when followed by a numeral not accented upon the first syllable.

Cendiciassette, cēnquaranta; *but* centosēi, centoventi, centosēdici

151. Dates. **a.** For the days of the month, except the first (which takes the ordinal, **primo**), the cardinals are used, preceded by the definite article. Both article and numeral precede the name of the month.

Il **quattro** gennaio, il **25** giugno
Il **primo** agosto

January fourth, the 25th of June
The first of August

i. A more stately form inserts the word **dì** 'day.' (And for the occasional use of the form **li** in dates, cf. **71, d.**)

Il **dì** (*or* **addì**) sei di marzo

The sixth of March

b. The definite article precedes the number of the year (cf. 146, *f*).

Lo Shakespeare morì nel 1616

Shakespeare died in 1616

c. The number of a century expressed in cardinals serves to indicate the century following (cf. 157, *c*). **Mille** is often dropped.

Il trecento, il milletrecento

The fourteenth century — *lit.* the 'three hundreds,' the 'thirteen hundreds'

Il dugento, l'ottocento

The thirteenth century, the nineteenth century

d. 'Ago' is expressed by **fa**, **sono**, or **or sono**, following a measure of time.

Due mesi fa

Two months ago

Anni sono

Years ago

Cento anni or sono

A hundred years ago

***e.** Idiomatic phrases :

Otto giorni

A week

Quindici giorni

A fortnight

Oggi a otto

A week from to-day

Doman l'altro

The day after to-morrow

Ier l'altro, l'altro ieri

The day before yesterday

Ogni tre giorni

Every three days

Un giorno sì, un giorno no

Every other day

Quanti ne abbiamo del mese? }

Quanti ne abbiamo? }

A' quanti siamo del mese? }

What day of the month is it?

Ne abbiamo tre }

È il tre }

Siamo ai tre }

It is the third

Ai tanti del mese

On such a day of the month

A' quanti del mese parte?

On what day of the month does he leave?

Nella prima metà di maggio

In the first half of May

Ai primi di ottobre	In the first days of October
L' anno scorso di luglio	In July of last year
Fra due mesi	Within two months, two months from now
L' ebbe finito in due mesi	He had it finished within two months
Da due anni	For two years past
Anno	Last year, a year ago
L' altr' anno }	
Oggi è l' anno	A year ago to-day
Anno di là	Year before last
Da qui allora	From now until then

152. Time of Day. a. With numerals indicating the time of day, the definite article precedes, and both article and verb agree with *ora*, *ore*, understood.

Sono le tre	It is three o'clock
Erano le undici e mezzo	It was half-past eleven
Vada alle cinque	Go at five

b. In time-tables, and increasingly in general usage, the hours after noon are counted from midnight.

Il treno parte alle diciassette e arriva alle ventidue	The train leaves at 5 P.M. and arrives at 10 P.M.
---	--

1. A.M. and P.M. may be expressed by the adjectives **ante-meridiano** and **pomeridiano**, modifying *ore* understood.

Va dalla maestra alle dieci ante- meridiane	She goes to her teacher at ten in the morning
--	--

c. 'One o'clock' is *il tocco* in good Tuscan usage, though *l' una* is used elsewhere.

Il tocco di notte	One o'clock at night
La colazione si serve al tocco	Luncheon is served at one

d. 'Noon' is *mezzogiorno*, and means twelve o'clock precisely; *mezzanotte* is 'midnight.'

***e. Idiomatic phrases :**

Che ore sono?	What time is it?
Sono le cinque passate	It is after five
È la mezza	It is half-past
Suonano le due	It is striking two
Quanto c'è alle nove?	How near is it to nine?
Ci mancano dieci minuti alle nove	It lacks ten minutes to nine
Sono le dodici e mezzo	It is half-past twelve
Di quanto sono passate le dieci?	How long after ten is it?
Le dieci sono passate da tanto	It is some time after ten
A che ora devo venire?	At what time shall I come?
Verso le sette	About seven
Sono le due meno un quarto	It is a quarter before two
Sono le otto e dieci	It is ten minutes past eight
Stamane, stasera	This morning, this evening
Stanotte	Last night (until noon; after noon it means 'to-night')

153. Age. Age is expressed by means of the verb **avere** with **anni**.

Quanti anni hai?	How old are you?
Ho sette anni	I am seven years old

a. In speaking of an infant or an animal, **tempo** replaces **anni**.
 Quanto tempo ha questo bimbo? How old is this baby?

154. Money. The Italian system is decimal, based upon the **lira**, which, like the French franc, is equivalent to nearly 20 cents.

$$5 \text{ centesimi} = 1 \text{ soldo} = \text{about } 1 \text{ cent}$$

$$100 \text{ centesimi} = 20 \text{ soldi} = 1 \text{ lira}$$

***155. Measurement.** Italians use the metric system. The **metro** equals nearly forty inches, and the **centimetro** is the 100th part of a **metro**. An inch equals about $2\frac{1}{2}$ **centimetri**. The **chilometro** is a long half-mile; the **chilogramma** (masculine) a generous two pounds; the **litro** about a quart.

Ho pagato questo nastro una lira il metro	I paid twenty cents a yard for this ribbon
Queste buste sono lunghe quindici centimetri	These envelopes are six inches long
Una stanza della lunghezza di sei metri e della larghezza di quattro metri	A room six meters long by four meters wide

156. The Verb *morire* 'die.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *morire*, *morendo*, *muoio*, *morrò*, *morii*, *morto*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

<i>muoio</i>	<i>moriamo</i>
<i>muori</i>	<i>morite</i>
<i>muore</i>	<i>muoiono</i>

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>muoia</i>	<i>moriamo</i>
<i>muoia</i>	<i>moriate</i>
<i>muoia</i>	<i>muoiano</i>

VOCABULARY

<i>le armi</i> arms (weapons)	<i>il segreto</i> secret
<i>il bimbo</i> baby	<i>le truppe</i> troops
<i>il carbonaro</i> charcoal-burner	<i>Vittorio Emanuele</i> Victor Em- manuel
<i>il consigliere</i> adviser	<i>accordarsi</i> agree (<i>accordo</i>)
<i>Cristoforo Colombo</i> Christopher Columbus	<i>cacciare</i> chase, drive out
<i>il fulmine</i> thunderbolt	<i>dirigere, diretti, diretto</i> direct
<i>il galantuomo</i> honest man	<i>fallire</i> fail
<i>l'indipendenza</i> <i>f.</i> independence	<i>istituire</i> found, establish
<i>il moto</i> movement	<i>coprire, copersi, coperto</i> cover
<i>l'opera</i> <i>f.</i> task, achievement	<i>ardito</i> bold
<i>Petrarca</i> Petrarch	<i>dolorosamente</i> sorrowfully
<i>il politico</i> statesman	<i>faticoso</i> laborious
<i>il re</i> king	

EXERCISE

1. Quegl' Italiani che per i primi si diedero alla faticosa opera di cacciare lo straniero erano i più intelligenti, i più buoni e i più arditi d' Italia. 2. Ma erano pochi e senza armi. 3. Bisognava accordarsi in segreto. 4. Istituirono nel 1820 la società segreta,

così detta, dei Carbonari. 5. I primi moti rivoluzionari preparati da questa società cominciarono a Napoli. 6. Ma dolorosamente fallirono! 7. La liberazione d'Italia fu l'opera di moltissimi eroi. 8. Li diressero quattro grandi uomini: uno scrittore, un re, un soldato, e un uomo politico. 9. Il Mazzini, il grande agitatore, nacque nel 1805 e morì nel 1872; aveva 67 anni. 10. Vittorio Emanuele II, il re galantuomo, nacque il 14 marzo, 1820, e morì il 9 gennaio, 1878. 11. Garibaldi, quel fulmine di guerra, nacque nel 1807 e morì nel 1882. 12. Il conte Cavour, il consigliere del re, nacque nel 1810 e morì nel 1861. 13. Vittorio Emanuele, re di Piemonte, fu dichiarato re d'Italia il 18 febbraio, 1861. 14. Le truppe italiane entrarono vittoriosi in Roma il 20 settembre, 1870. 15. In che giorno nacque Dante Alighieri?

II

1. In what year was Petrarch born? In 1304. 2. In what year did he die? In 1374. 3. There is a poor man. If I had forty-one lire, I would give them to him. 4. What day of the month is it today? It is the 17th. 5. Christopher Columbus discovered America in 1492. 6. They wish me to leave at 7.30 P.M. 7. How old is your father? He is fifty; he was born fifty years ago. 8. How many books have you? I have more than a thousand. 9. At what time to-morrow shall I return to your house? At a quarter past eight in the evening. 10. The Spaniard died last month in Paris. He was born in 1872, and was forty-three years old. 11. Shakespeare was born in 1564 and died in 1616. 12. How old was he when he died? He was fifty-two. 13. What time is it? It is twenty minutes past ten. It lacks ten minutes to eleven. 14. How old is this baby? He is three months old; he was born on the twenty-eighth of March. 15. The author died on the twenty-third of January, 1913, at two o'clock in the morning. 16. On what day did King Victor Emmanuel die?

LESSON XXIV

ORDINALS. COLLECTIVES. MULTIPLICATIVES.
INDETERMINATES. THE VERB *PARERE*

157. **Ordinals.** The ordinal numerals are —

1st	primo	20th	{ ventēſimo
2d	ſecondo		{ vigēſimo
3d	terzo	21st	{ ventunēſimo
4th	quarto		{ ventēſimo primo
5th	quinto	22d	{ ventiduēſimo
6th	ſeſto		{ ventēſimo ſecondo
7th	ſettimo		<i>etc.</i>
8th	ottavo	30th	trentēſimo
9th	nono	40th	quarantēſimo
10th	dēcimo	50th	cinquantēſimo
	{ undēcimo	60th	ſessantēſimo
11th	{ undicēſimo	70th	ſettantēſimo
	{ dēcimo primo	80th	ottantēſimo
	{ duodēcimo	90th	novantēſimo
12th	{ dodicēſimo	100th	centēſimo
	{ dēcimo ſecondo	101st	centēſimo primo
	{ tredicēſimo	102d	centēſimo ſecondo
13th	{ dēcimo terzo		<i>etc.</i>
	{ quattordicēſimo	130th	centotrentēſimo
14th	{ dēcimo quarto	170th	centoſettantēſimo
	{ quindicēſimo	200th	dugentēſimo
15th	{ dēcimo quinto	500th	cinquecentēſimo
	{ ſedicēſimo	600th	ſecentēſimo
16th	{ dēcimo ſeſto	1000th	millēſimo
	{ diciſettēſimo	1001st	millēſimo primo
17th	{ dēcimo ſettimo		<i>etc.</i>
	{ diciottēſimo	2000th	duemillēſimo
18th	{ dēcimo ottavo	30,000th	trentamillēſimo
	{ diciannovēſimo	100,000th	centomillēſimo
19th	{ dēcimo nono		

a. The ordinals are adjectives, and agree as such.

La quarantēšima pāgina

The fortieth page

b. Fractions above one half are expressed by ordinals.

Cinque miglia e tre quarti

Five and three-quarters miles

i. 'Half' is translated as an adjective by **mēzzo**, as a noun by **la metà**. **Mezzo** agrees when it precedes.

Mangiò **mēzza** la pera

He ate half the pear

Una **mēzz'** ora

A half hour

Sono le tre e **mēzzo**

It is half-past three

Ne prese **la metà**

He took half of it

c. The number of the century may be expressed by ordinals (cf. 151, c).

Il sēcolo dēcimo quarto

The fourteenth century

d. Numerical titles of rulers, and of volumes, chapters, etc., are indicated by the ordinals following, without article.

Carlo quinto

Charles the Fifth

Luigi dēcimosēsto

Louis XVI

Capitolo tēzo

Chapter three

e. Ordinals precede cardinals in such phrases as

I primi sei canti

The first six cantos

***158. Collectives. a.** The commonest are —

una cōppia a couple

un milione a million

un paio a pair

un miliardo a billion (U.S.), thousand millions (Eng.)

una decina half a score

una dozzina a dozen

un bilione a trillion (U.S.), billion (Eng.)

una ventina a score

un centinaio about a hundred

ambedue, entrambi both

un migliaio about a thousand

i. 'About' so many may be indicated by **da** or **un** before a cardinal.

Da seicēto

About six hundred

Un settanta

About seventy

b. Collectives with special meanings :

1. *Games* : **ambo**, **terno**, **quaterno**, **cinquina**, 'a two,' 'a three,' etc., in the lottery, or certain games of cards.

2. *Paper* : **un quaterno**, **un quaterno**, a packet of four, of five sheets.

3. *Time* : **centenario** 'centenary'; **triduo**, **novena**, **quarantena**, periods of three, nine, forty days; **bimestre**, **trimestre**, **quadrimestre**, **semestre**, periods of two, three, four, six months; **biennio**, **triennio**, **quinquennio**, **sessennio**, **decennio**, **centennio**, **millennio**, periods of two, three, etc. years.

4. *Versification* : **La terzina** or **il terzetto**, **la quartina**, **la sestina**, **l'ottava**, etc., three-, four-, six-, or eight-versed stanzas; **quaternario**, **quinario**, **senario**, **ottonario**, etc., four-, five-, six-, or eight-syllabled verses.

5. **Binario** is used of the two rails of a railway-track.

*159. **Multiplicatives.** *a.* Multiplicatives are the adjectives (also used substantively) **doppio** 'double,' **triplo** 'triple,' **quadruplo** 'quadruple,' **quintuplo** 'fivefold,' **sestuplo** 'sixfold,' **centuplo** 'one hundredfold,' etc. Similar forms may be constructed with **volte** 'times.'

Una scatola a **doppio** fondo

A double-bottomed box

Dodici è il **triplo** di quattro

Twelve is three times four

La mia parte era **dieci volte** più grande della sua

My share was ten times as great as his

Due alla **volta**

Two at a time

1. The similar forms **duplici**, **triplice**, etc. are used only as adjectives, and only of abstract things.

La **Triplice** Alleanza

The Triple Alliance

b. Arithmetical processes :

Cinque via cinque, venticinque	Five times five are twenty-five
Due e due fanno quattro	Two and two make four
Dieci meno cinque, cinque	Ten minus five leaves five

160. Indeterminate Numerals. These are **molto**, **poco**, **troppo**, **tutto**, **tanto**, **quanto**, and **parecchi** (f. **parecchie**) 'several.' When used as adjectives, they agree, and dispense with the article (except **tutto**, cf. *c*). When used substantively, the masculine singular is abstract and neuter in meaning, while the masculine plural refers to persons. For their use as adverbs, cf. **89, b**.

Ho troppe cose da fare	I have too many things to do
Spēde poco	He spends little
Parecchie donne avēvano paura	Several women were afraid
Molti hanno abbandonato la città	Many have abandoned the city

***a. Molto.** Tuscan usage sanctions **di** before **molto**.

Ha perduto il denaro, e ne aveva di molto	He has lost his money, and he had a great deal
--	--

b. Poco. Preceded by **un** it means 'a little,' and is often shortened to **po'**; it is used adverbially in this form to mean 'just.' In the plural it means 'few,' 'a few.'

Mi dia un po' di pane	Give me a little bread
Pochi la pēnsano come me	Few are of my opinion
Dimmi un po'	Just tell me

c. Tutto used adjectively precedes the article and the noun, unless it follows both. The article is required.

Tutti gli uōmini	All men, all the men
Gli uccelli tutti	All birds, all the birds

1. In the singular it may mean 'whole.'

Tutto il giorno	All day, the whole day
Tutto un giorno	All one day, a whole day

2. Reinforced by **quanto** it means 'all possible,' 'all there were,' 'all of them,' 'every one of them.'

Tutti quanti fuggirono **Every one of them** fled

3. Before a relative, **tutto** takes **quello** or **ciò**.

Tutto quello che disse fu vero **All that** he said was true

d. Poco, molto, troppo, tanto, and **quanto** are often used as referring to time.

Stette molto a tornare	He was a long time getting back
Ci vorrà troppo	It will take too long
Quanto ci sarà da aspettare?	How long will there be to wait?
Dopo non molto	After a short time
Ogni quanto c'è il tram?	How often does the tram run?
Ogni tanto	Every so often, every little while
Poco fa	A little while ago
Fra poco	In a little while

161. The Verb *parere* 'seem.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **parere, parendo, paio, parrò, parvi or parsi, parso or paruto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

paio	paiamo
pari	parete
pare	pàiono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

paia	paiamo
paia	paiate
paia	pàiano

VOCABULARY

Borbone <i>m.</i> Bourbon	il Lombardo-Veneto Lombardy and Venetia
il ducato duchy	il mestiere trade
le Due Sicilie the Two Sicilies,	la paglia straw
Naples and Sicily	la pera pear
Enrico Henry	il Piemonte Piedmont
Filippo Philip	il regnante ruler
Giorgio George	il regno kingdom
il granducato grand duchy	la Savoia Savoy
l'impero <i>m.</i> empire	

il tornaconto advantage
la Toscana Tuscany

dividere, divisi, diviso divide
eligere, elèssi, eletto elect
intendere, intesi, inteso understand
muovere, mossi, mosso move
reggere, rèssi, retto rule

davvero truly, indeed
dietro behind
faccio *1 sg. pres. ind. of fare (irr.)*
do, make
faceva *3 sg. past descr. ind. of fare*
nulla anything; *with non*, nothing
o well, now
sotto under
veramente really

EXERCISE

I

PIPPO DICE LA STORIA

Un signore che visita la scuola domanda a un contadinello :

— Come ti chiami ?

— Pippo del Falorni, ai suoi comandi.

— E tuo padre come si chiama ?

— Gasparo del Falorni, ai suoi comandi.

— Che mestiere fa ?

— Il contadino.

— Ti piace il mestiere del contadino ?

— Sissignore.

— Perchè ?

— Perchè si sta sempre all' aria aperta, si lavora di molto e siamo pieni di salute.

— Bravo Pippo ! . . . E . . . dimmi un po' : di storia patria ne sai nulla ?

— Sissignore. La so tutta veramente bene.

— O sentiamo. In quale anno incominciarono le guerre per l' indipendenza d' Italia ?

— Nel 1848.

— Va bene ! O dimmi un po', Pippo, in quanti stati si divideva a quel tempo l' Italia ?

— L' Italia era divisa, a quel tempo, in sette stati: il Piemonte sotto la dinastia di Savoia; il Lombardo-Veneto soggetto all' impero d' Austria; il ducato di Parma, quello di Mōdena e il granducato di Toscana, governati da principi i quali non movevano paglia senza il permesso dell' Austria; il Regno delle due Sicilie retto dai Borboni, che erano i peggio di tutto; e lo stato Pontificio.

— Bravo bambino! E . . . dimmi un po'; nel governo di questi piccoli stati era rappresentato il popolo?

— Non capisco.

— C' erano le Camere dei deputati eletti dal popolo, i senatori, i ministri?

— Nossignore. Ogni regnante faceva tutto da sè. Ben inteso che dietro c' era sempre l' Austria che ordinava, proibiva o approvava, secondo il suo tornaconto.

— Avevi ragione. Bravo Pippo! La sai veramente bene davvero, e ne faccio i miei sinceri elogi a te e al tuo maestro.

II

1. Just tell me, Pippo, how many wars were fought for Italian independence? Three, sir. 2. When began the first? About seventy years ago. 3. And the second? In 1859. 4. And the third? In 1866. 5. Few states of Italy were well governed before the War of Independence. 6. Foreign rulers divided Italy among themselves. 7. Dante was born in the thirteenth century and died in the fourteenth. 8. Louis XIV, Charles IX, Philip II, Henry VIII, and George III were all of them famous rulers. 9. How often does the train for Florence run? 10. It is half past three; it will arrive in a little while. 11. These pears seem good; I will give you half of mine. 12. $24 - 8 = 16$. $27 \times 14 = 378$. $117 + 54 = 171$. 13. I shall not accompany them to the train. It would take too long.

LESSON XXV

THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE. THE VERB *FARE*

162. The Indefinite Article. The indefinite article is omitted in Italian —

a. Before a predicate noun, unmodified, expressing nationality, or condition in life.

Morì mārtire	He died a martyr
È Italiano	He is an Italian
È professore?	Is he a professor?
Napoleone s'è fatto imperatore	Napoleon became (<i>or</i> made himself) emperor
Quella signora è contessa	That lady is a countess
Vittorio Emanuele II fu un re valeroso	Victor Emanuel II was a valorous king

1. In answer to the question 'Who is he?' as distinguished from 'What is he?' the indefinite article is retained.

Who is he? He is a lawyer	È un avvocato
What is he? (What is his occupation?) He is a lawyer	È avvocato

*2. If the predicate noun is used metaphorically, the indefinite article is retained.

È un āngelo	He is an angel
But, speaking literally,	
Non erano passati otto giorni e il bambino era āngelo	In less than a week the child was an angel (i.e. dead)

b. Before a noun in apposition, when explanatory and not alluding to a familiar fact. (The appositive often precedes.)

Il Gabelli, uomo di pensiero e di studi	Gabelli, a man of thought and studious habits
---	--

Gēnero di Alessandro Manzoni, amico del d' Azeglio, il Giorgini fu uno degli ũltimi testimoni di quel periodo della letteratura italiana	Son-in-law of Alessandro Manzoni, friend of d' Azeglio, Giorgini was one of the last witnesses of that period of Italian literature
--	--

The definite article is used in familiar allusion.

Giuseppe Mazzini, il grande agita- tore	Mazzini the great agitator
--	----------------------------

c. After **da** in the sense of 'like,' 'in the character of,' or when indicating origin.

Morì da soldato	He died like a soldier
Nacque da padre veneziano e da madre greca	He was born of a Venetian father and a Greek mother

d. Before **cento** and **mille** (cf. 150, *b*).

e. In such phrases as 'that wretch of a,' etc.

Quel monello di Gigi	That rascal of a Gigi
Quella civetta di Mirandolina	That coquette of a Mirandolina

f. After **che**, in exclamations.

Che bambina carina, che carina bambina !	What a pretty child !
---	-----------------------

g. In fractions, before the name of the thing measured.

Un terzo di miglio	A third of a mile
Mi dia mezzo chilo	Give me half a kilo

163. The Verb *fare* 'make,' 'do.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **fare, facendo, faccio, farò, feci, fatto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

faccio, fò'	facciamo
fai	fate
fa	fanno

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

faccia	facciamo
faccia	facciate
faccia	facciano

For the imperative, see 130, *e*.

a. *Fare* governs the infinitive directly. In this construction the *active present infinitive* renders the *passive past participle* in such phrases as 'to have a thing done.'

Lo *fècero punire*

They **had** him **punished** (*lit.* they caused to punish him)

Fèce preparare una cāmera

He **had** a room **made ready**

***b.** Idioms with *fare*.

Fare il bagno

To take a bath

Fare i bauli

To pack one's trunks

Fare caldo, frèddo, etc.

To be hot weather, cold weather, etc.

Far capolino

To peep out

Fare di cappello

To take off one's hat

Far caşo di

To make account of

Far cōmodo

To come handy

Far complimenti

To stand on ceremony

Far frōnte a

To face, oppose

Far fumo

To smoke (of a stove)

Far furōre

To make a hit

Fare le fusa

To purr

Far male a

To hurt

Far meglio a

To find it better to

Fare del suo meglio

To do one's best

Fare a meno di

To do without

Fare un mestiere

To ply a trade

Fare a metà

To go halves

Fare una passeggiata

To take a walk

Far piacere a

To do a kindness, give pleasure, to

Far preſto

To be quick

Farsi il ritratto

To have one's picture taken

Far sangue

To bleed

Far sciōpero

To strike; take a holiday

Far sì che

To bring it about; to manage so that

Fare un sonnellino

To take a nap

Far spēcie a

To surprise

Far strada	To be on the way, progress
Far di suo	To do of one's own accord
Far tardi	To be late
Fare a tempo	To be on time
Far di tutto	To try one's hardest
Fare le veci di	To take the place of
Far vedere	To show
Fare una visita a	To call on
Far vista di	To make pretense of
Sul far del giorno, della notte	At dawn, at dusk
Due giorni fa	Two days ago
Che tempo fa?	What kind of weather is it?
Fa bel tempo	It is fine weather

VOCABULARY

il bagaglio	baggage, luggage	far complimenti	stand on ceremony
il baule	trunk	fare a meno di	do without
il biglietto d' andata e ritorno	round-trip ticket	fare una passeggiata	take a walk
la carrozza	carriage	far piacere a	do a pleasure to
il compleanno	birthday	far strada	be on the way
la donna	woman, woman servant	fare una visita a	call upon
l'onomastico <i>m.</i>	saint's day	mutar di pensiero	change one's mind
la roba (<i>collective</i>)	things	non veder l'ora di	long to, be hardly able to wait to
il ventaglio	fan	pigliare	take
cōmodo	convenient, comfortable	sentire la mancanza di	miss (a person)
carino	} pretty	di giorno	by day
grazioso		di notte	by night
cortese	} kind	pòi	then
gentile		a portata di mano	within reach of one's hand
educato	polite	posso <i>1 sg. pres. ind. of potere (irr.)</i>	be able
pesante	heavy		
fare i bauli	pack one's trunks		
far cōmodo	come handy		

EXERCISES

I

1. Abbiamo voluto fare una visita alla Signora C. 2. La donna ci ha fatto passare, ma poi ci ha detto che non era in casa la signora. 3. L'abbiamo incontrata più tardi da nostra zia. 4. È vero che va a Vallombrosa, Signorina? 5. Sì, Signora. Non vedo l'ora di partire. 6. Mi piace tanto il viaggiare. 7. Ma pigli un biglietto d'andata e ritorno, per esser sicura di tornar qui. 8. Sentiremo molto la mancanza di Lei. 9. Ha da fare i bauli? 10. Sì, non posso fare a meno di tre bauli per la mia roba. 11. E poi ci sono i bagagli, i quali sono molto pesanti. 12. Mi permetta di darle questo ventaglio, perchè farà comodo se viaggia di giorno. 13. Grazie tante. Che grazioso ventaglio! Ci vuole molta roba per il viaggio, perchè fa caldo prima, e poi fa freddo. 14. A che ora partirà stasera? Ha ordinato la carrozza? 15. Non bisogna ordinarla oggi. Ho mutato di pensiero. Non parto prima di mercoledì. 16. Chi è il forestiere che ha invitato a pranzo? 17. È un professore. È Francese? No, è Americano. 18. È un uomo molto educato. Viene a farmi una visita sempre pel mio compleanno. 19. Quando è il Suo onomastico? Il ventitre giugno.

II

1. What day is your birthday? The 28th of January. And your saint's day? The 18th of July. 2. Will you take a walk with me, to [per] do me a pleasure? 3. Please buy me a round-trip ticket to Florence. 4. When you have bought it, bring it to us. 5. The servant will pack the trunks for them. 6. Let us call upon our friend Mrs. D., and on our way we will buy some things for our mother. 7. They always travel by night, because it is less hot. 8. What a pretty fan! It is prettier than mine. 9. I have put your books on the shelf, within reach of your hand. 10. They will miss us and I shall miss them. 11. I cannot do without my friends.

12. Here is Mrs. C. Sit down, Mrs. C. Do not stand on ceremony. 13. They wish me to pack the trunks, and there are more than four of them. 14. Come at half-past four. Do not change your mind.

DIALOGO

IN UN ALBERGO

Vengono tre signore e una bambina, che domandano del padrone. Lui viene e dice loro :

— Buon giorno, Signore. Che desiderano ?

— Desideriamo delle camere. Ne vogliamo due a un letto, comunicanti, e una a due letti perchè la bambina stia colla mamma.

— Benissimo, Signore. Farò Loro vedere quali camere sono libere. Eccone due a un letto, comunicanti, con terrazza. Sono esposte al sole. Ci si sta bene d' inverno. Ecco quest' altra che dà sul giardino ; è grande, con due letti, e se non è a mezzogiorno non c' è male perchè c' è il termosifone.

— Vabbene. Queste camere ci piacciono. Quanto sarebbe la pensione ?

— Se Loro restano almeno tre giorni, sarà di otto lire il giorno.

— Vabbene. Faremo venire i bauli stasera, e verremo prima del pranzo.

LESSON XXVI

IMPERSONAL VERBS. THE VERB *STARE*

164. Impersonal Verbs. *a.* Impersonal verbs have no real subject, and are conjugated only in the third person. What would be the subject in English is often expressed by the dative. They are used to express necessity, convenience, or accident; weather; appearance; satisfaction, dissatisfaction; etc.

Non merita il conto	It is not worth while
Non importa	It does not matter
Non conviene	It is not proper, not suitable
Me ne rincresco	I am sorry about it
Piùve a rovescio	It is raining in torrents
Come le pare?	How does it seem to you? What do you think?

1.* Occasionally **egli (**gli**) or **e'** is used redundantly as subject of an impersonal verb (cf. 100, *g*, 2).

Gli è che siamo in alto mare	The truth is we are in deep water
------------------------------	-----------------------------------

b. Impersonal verbs require the subjunctive if the subject of the dependent clause is not of the same person as the dative pronoun; otherwise they may take the infinitive (cf. 174, *c*).

Bisogna che tutti lavorino	All must work
Bisogna lavorare	It is necessary to work
Mi dispiace che Lei debba partire	I am sorry you must go
Mi dispiace di partire	I am sorry to go

1. These verbs take **di** before a noun object.

Mi dispiace della sua malattia	I regret his illness
--------------------------------	----------------------

c. Many verbs not essentially impersonal may be used impersonally.

Sta a lui di farlo	It lies with him to do it
È (di) mestieri }	It is necessary
Fa d' uopo }	
Tocca a me	It is my turn
Pare che abbia molto denaro	He seems to have much money
Va bene	It goes well; very well
Basta	That's enough
Minaccia di nevicare	It threatens to snow
È cessato di piovere	It has stopped raining

d. Many verbs are used only, or mostly, in the third person, but as they have a subject they are not impersonal.

Mi duole la testa	My head aches
Mi dolgono i denti	My teeth ache
Mi piace quel quadro	I like that picture
Mi piacciono le camere	I like the rooms
Mi sembrano ariose	They seem airy
Mi occorre un lapis	I need a pencil
Mi bastano questi	These are enough for me

1. These verbs when followed by a clause are strictly impersonal.

Mi duole che lo dica	It pains me to have you say it
Mi piace che voglia venire	I am glad you wish to come
Non basta che scriva; deve venire	It is not enough that he write; he must come

2. **Non mi piace**, 'I do not like,' should not be confused with **mi dispiace**, 'I am sorry,' 'I regret.'

Non mi piace questa canzone	I do not like this song
Mi dispiace che Lei abbia ricevuto una brutta notizia	I am sorry you have had bad news

e. For the impersonal use of the reflexive, cf. 106, *b.*

165. Expressions that Describe Weather.

Piove	It is raining
Nevica	It is snowing
Tuona	It thunders
Lampeggia, balena	It lightens

Tira vento	The wind blows
Gēla, ghiaccia	It is freezing
Sgēla, dighiaccia	It is thawing
Fa bēl tēmpo	It is fair weather
Fa cattivo tēmpo	The weather is bad, disagreeable
Fa caldo, frēddo, frēsko, ūmido	It is hot, cold, cool, damp
C'è il fango	It is muddy
C'è la nebbia	It is foggy

166. The Verb *stare* 'be,' 'stay.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *stare, stando, stō, starò, stētti, stato*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

stō	stiamo
stai	state
sta	stanno

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

stia	stiamo
stia	stiate
stia	stiano

a. Special uses of *stare*:

1. With the present participle, or with *a* and the infinitive, to translate the English 'be' (cf. 102).

Stō leggendo	I am reading
Stanno parlando	They are talking
Eravamo stati a guardarci pochi minuti	We had been looking on a few minutes

2. To mean 'be,' in the sense of to be in a place or a condition.

Nōn stētti molto a Firenze	I was not long at Florence
Sta bēne di salute	He is in good health
Stō di casa in Via Garibaldi	I live on Via Garibaldi

b. Idioms with *stare*.

Stare allegro	To be cheerful
Stare attēto	To be attentive
Star bēne, male	To be well, ill
Star bēne a, star male a	To befit, not to befit
Stare al buio	To be in the dark
Star di casa	To live, reside

Stare in casa	To stay in
Star cōmodo	To be comfortable
Star fërmo	To be still
Stare frẽso	To be sadly off (<i>derisory</i>)
Stare con le mani in mano	To be idle
Star nascosto	To be hidden
Stare in pensiero	To be worried
Stare per far una cōsa	To be on the point of doing a thing
Stare in piedi	To stand up
Star vicino, lontano	To be near, far
Star zitto	To be silent
Come sta? Stō bene	How do you do? I am well

VOCABULARY

la disgrazia	misfortune	accadere, accadde, accaduto	happen
il fango	mud	avvenire (<i>like venire</i>)	happen
il ghiaccio	ice	balenare	lighten
la nebbia	fog	bastare	suffice, be enough
il sole	sun	cessare (<i>di</i>)	cease (to)
brutto	disagreeable, ugly	dispiacere a (<i>irr.</i>)	make sorry,
ricco (-chi, -che)	rich	cause to regret; mi dispiace	I am sorry
al giorno d' oggi	nowadays	diventare	become (<i>divento</i>)
non . . . che	only, not but, nothing but	ghiacciare	freeze
non c' è male	pretty well	minacciare	threaten
non c' è rimedio	there is no help for it	nevicare	snow
non mi par vero di	I can't believe,	occorrire, occorresse, occorso	be necessary
I can't wait to		piovere, piöve, piovuto	rain
star di casa	live, reside	rincrescere, rincresbbe, rincresciuto	(a) (<i>impers.</i>) make sorry; mi rincresce I am sorry
stare in casa	stay in the house	tirar vento	blow
star cōmodo	be comfortable	tonare (cf. 110, d)	thunder
stare in pensiero	worry, be worried		
star per (<i>w. inf.</i>)	be about to		

EXERCISE

I

1. Buon giorno, Signore. Come sta? Non c'è male, grazie.
2. E la Signora Bondi, come sta? Non sta tanto bene. 3. Non va fuori perchè minaccia di nevicare. 4. Starà in casa tutto il giorno.
5. Mi dispiace che non stia bene di salute. 6. Quando sarà cessato di nevicare, farà una passeggiata. 7. Le dica che andrò a prenderla. 8. Dove sta di casa? In Via Cavour. 9. Le rincresce della brutta notizia. 10. Per imparare una lingua, non basta che lo scolare la studi e la legga. 11. Occorre anche la pratica. 12. Rincrebbe loro che non venissimo. 13. Avviene spesso al giorno di oggi che il povero diventi ricco. 14. Che tempo fa? Fa cattivo tempo. 15. Il vento tira forte, ghiaccia, dighiaccia, piove, nevic, tutto a un tempo. Che brutto tempo! 16. Non c'è quest'inverno che il fango, la nebbia e la neve. 17. Allora non andrò fuori. Si sta più comodo in casa. 18. Non mi piace che tiri vento. C'è sole?

II

1. What day of the month is it? 2. It is the 9th. 3. What kind of weather is it? 4. It is very hot. 5. It is lightening, and threatens to thunder. 6. Has it stopped raining? 7. Yes, and the wind does not blow, but there is no sun. 8. I shall stay in the house to-day, but I wish you to go out. 9. Do you think it is raining? 10. It seems to me they do not wish to give it to me. 11. A misfortune has occurred, and we are very sorry. 12. I am about to go to France. 13. They need two trunks. 14. How do you do? I am well, but my mother is ill. 15. I am sorry, but do not be worried. 16. Your mother will be better to-morrow. 17. I hope so [it]. 18. It seems to me I have nothing but misfortunes. 19. She lives in Florence. 20. I live on Via del Casato. 21. One is very comfortable in Via Cavour.

LESSON XXVII

CONJUNCTIVES WITH A DEPENDENT INFINITIVE.
THE VERB *POTERE*

167. Conjunctive Objects with a Dependent Infinitive.

a. Generally speaking, if a dependent infinitive has a pronoun object (or objects), the latter may either be appended to it (cf. 95, *b*), or precede the main verb.

Manda a prēnderlo	} He sends for him
Lo manda a prēndere	
Vorrebbe dirmelo?	} Should you be willing to tell it to me?
Me lo vorrebbe dire?	

b. But when the governing verb is impersonal, the object must go with the infinitive.

Non conviene farlo	It is not convenient to do so
Bisogna dārgliela	It is necessary to give it to her

c. Whereas, if the governing verb be *fare*, *lasciare*, *sentire*, *udire*, or *vedere*, the object must precede the main verb. The independent verb, if transitive, becomes passive in meaning.

Lo fēcero fucilare	They had him shot
Ti sēto cantare	I hear you singing
Lo lasciarono bāttere	They allowed him to be beaten

1. If the object of either verb be a noun, it usually follows both verbs.

Carlētto amava di sentire sonare la banda	Charlie liked to hear the band play
Il generale fece punire il soldato	The general had the soldier punished

OBJECT OF DEPENDENT INFINITIVE §§ 167-168

2. If the main verb also has an object, that object becomes indirect.

Glielo vidi fare	I saw him do it
Per non fare prendere un raffreddore ai bovini	In order not to let the cattle take cold
Fecero accettare la c�rica al generale	They made the general accept the office
La fanno accettare al generale	They make the general accept it

168. The Verb *potere* 'be able.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *potere, potendo, posso, potr , pot i, potuto*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

posso	possiamo
puoi	potete
pu�	possano

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

possa	possiamo
possa	possiate
possa	possano

a. Cf. 132, a, 1.

VOCABULARY

la banda	band	piccino	little, tiny
il caff�	caf�		
il cameriere	waiter	ascoltare	listen, listen to (ascolto)
la finestra	window	condurre, conduco, condurr�, condussi, condotto	take, conduct
il gelato	ice, ice cream	figurarsi	imagine
la gioia	joy	ordinare	order (�rdino)
la giratina	little walk	riunire	unite, assemble
lo spasso	walk, excursion	sonare (110, d)	play (an instrument)
lo statuto	constitution	sorbire	sip
a un tratto	suddenly	spicciarsi	hasten, hurry
fuori (di)	outside (of)	spiegare	explain
fuori di porta	outside the walls	stancarsi	become tired
mentre	while		

EXERCISE

I

PERCHÈ OGGI SUONA LA BANDA?

Quella prima domenica del mese di giugno, Carletto, tutto vestito a festa, fu condotto a spasso dal suo babbo.

Prima essi fecero una giratina fuori di porta, poi ritornarono in paese, dove, nella piazza principale, sonava la banda.

Carletto si stancò a stare in piedi. Allora il suo babbo lo condusse al caffè, lì nella piazza, e gli fece prendere un gelato. Il gelato piaceva tanto a Carletto: figuratevi la sua gioia di poterlo sorbire seduto, mentre ascoltava la banda.

A un tratto egli domandò:

— Babbo, perchè suona oggi la banda, e perchè in molte case ci sono le bandiere alle finestre?

— Perchè oggi è la festa dello Statuto — gli rispose il babbo.

— E che cosa è lo Statuto?

— Ah! tu sei così piccino, non saprei come spiegarlo: ti basti sapere che lo Statuto è la più solenne nostra festa civile, la quale insegna a tutti noi Italiani, adulti e piccini, che siamo liberi e riuniti in una sola grande famiglia.

Allora Carletto, battendo le mani, esclamò: *Viva l' Italia!*

II

1. What day is Constitution Day in Italy? It is the first Sunday of June. 2. Why are there tricolored flags at the windows? 3. Can his father explain it to him? 4. He will explain it to him when he is ten years old. 5. Charlie's father took him to walk. 6. Charlie will become tired standing. 7. His father will take him to the café. 8. Will he give him [have him take] an ice? 9. He cannot have him take it because there is no room. 10. Now they have found a table and they can order it. 11. The waiter will bring it to them. 12. Charlie can hardly wait to sip it. 13. But his father

says: "Wait a moment. Let him bring it to you." 14. The waiter would not make them wait if he could hurry. 15. They like the ice very much. 16. They can sip it while they listen to the band. 17. Charlie's father thinks it is beginning to rain. 18. If it rained, they would leave the café. 19. Charlie does not wish it to rain. 20. He wishes to stay there where he can hear the band play. 21. We should like to hear them sing. 22. If it should thunder and lighten they would not be able to stay there. 23. There is the sun! It must have stopped raining.

DIÁLOGO

DALLA SARTA

È noioso d' andare dalla sarta, ma le signore ne hanno troppo bisogno.

— Dove sta la sua sarta? Ho sentito ch' è molto brava.

— Sta all' ultimo piano di una casa in Via Tornabuoni. L' avvertò che ci sono molte scale. Vuole che l' accompagni?

— Mi farebbe un vero piacere. Così mi aiuterà a scēgliere il figurino e la stoffa. . . . Vorrei un abito da passeggio.

— Come dev' essere, scuro o chiaro?

— Siccome sto per fare un lungo viaggio, me ne occorrerebbero due, uno d' inverno e uno di mezza stagione. Ho bisogno anche di un vestito da casa e un vestito scollato da sera.

— Cominciamo col vestito da casa. Lo farei di una stoffa mezza seta, con guarnizione d' un tōno più scuro.

— Gli abiti da passeggio li vorrei colla sottana a pieghe, molto sēmplice, all' inglese, e piuttosto corta, perch' è piu pratica. Mi ci metta nella giacchetta una fōdera bianca.

— Mi raccomando che la fodera sia forte, perchè quella dell' ultimo vestito che mi fece a me, mi si sciupò subito.

— Quanto al colore, ci penserò e glielo dirò quest' altra volta quando tornerò per la prova del vestito da casa.

LESSON XXVIII

THE SUBJUNCTIVE. THE VERB *DOLERE*

169. The Subjunctive in Dependent Clauses. The subjunctive, generally speaking, is used to express uncertainty, or at most something less than certainty. It is required in dependent clauses,

a. After verbs of causation or prevention, desire or emotion, concession, doubt, opinion, or ignorance.

Il generale ha dato ordine che non smontino il campo	The general has given orders not to break camp
Impediranno che il nemico s' avvicini	They will prevent the enemy from approaching
Pregava che fossero generosi	He begged them to be generous
Si messe in testa che l' avessero fatto a posta	He took it into his head that they had done it on purpose
Credei d' indovinare che cercasse di morire	I fancied I had guessed that he sought to die
Di dove esca , dove vada , non lo so	Where he comes from, whither he is going, I do not know
Mi fa piacere che vivano lieti	I am glad they are living happily
Temo che il mio figliuolo sia ammalato	I am afraid my little boy is ill

1. Pleonastic **non** is commonly used in subordinate clauses after **temere**, **badare**, **mancar poco**, **non dubitare**, **non c'è dubbio**, and similar expressions.

Temo che il viaggio non sia troppo lungo	I am afraid the journey will be too long
Poco mancò che non cadesse	He came near falling (It lacked little that he should fall)
Non dubito che non sia vero	I do not doubt that it is true

b. After a verb used negatively or interrogatively.

Non è vero che i ricchi siano sempre felici	It is not true that the rich are always happy
Di rado avviene che un forestiere parli italiano speditamente	It rarely happens that a foreigner speaks Italian fluently
Chi direbbe che fossero Inglesi?	Who would say they were English?

c. After conjunctions of time (before which), concession, and purpose (not yet accomplished), and those meaning 'as if,' 'whenever,' 'wherever,' 'without.' (Cf. 230, a.)

Glielo dirò prima che vengano	I shall tell you before they come
Purchè guarisca, non importa dell' altro	Provided he recovers, nothing else matters
Benchè lo dica lui stesso, non lo credo	Though he says so himself, I don't believe it
Tentò di comprare un vagabondo, perchè facesse una testimonianza falsa	He tried to pay a vagabond to give false testimony
Stava in pensiero, come se temesse qualche disgrazia	He was in anxiety, as if he feared some misfortune
Dovunque sia, lo troveremo	Wherever it is, we shall find it
Passarono diversi minuti senza che desse un segno di vita	Several minutes passed, without his giving a sign of life

d. In conditions contrary to fact or probability (cf. 93, a).

Se rimanesse , farebbe piacere a sua madre	If he should remain, he would please his mother
--	--

e. After impersonal verbs or expressions.

Si può dire che l' uomo abbia due nature	It may be said that man has two natures
Occorrerebbe che andasse via subito	It would be necessary for him to go away at once

*1. When the subordinate verb in the subjunctive has a subject, the order is often such as to make that subject appear to belong with the impersonal main verb.

Tutto il paesaggio pareva che dicesse la tranquillità	All the landscape seemed to ex- press tranquillity
La battaglia era venuta a quel punto in cui la direzione bisogna che sia supplita dal senno	The battle had reached the point where it is necessary that author- ity be replaced by judgment

f. After superlatives, and 'only.'

Lavora il più che sia possibile	He works the most he can
La più bella città ch'io abbia mai vista	The most beautiful city I have ever seen

*1. Sometimes, for vivacity or emphasis, after comparatives.

Il brigandaggio è molto meno frequente che non lo fosse	Brigandage is much less frequent than it was
---	---

g. In an attributive clause which predicates of the antecedent something doubtful, limited, or not yet accomplished.

Un Americano che vada in Italia e studi il movimento politico	An American who should go to Italy and study the political situation (would find, etc.)
Cerca degli orecchini che accom- pagnino la collana	She is looking for earrings to match the necklace
Non c'è uno su dieci che la pensi come lui	There is not one in ten who is of his opinion

h. After indefinites.

Chi ci avesse visti dal basso, ci avrebbe presi per due pazzi	Any one who had seen us from below would have taken us for two madmen
Per quanto patisse , non si lagnò	No matter how much he suffered, he did not complain
Chiunque venga , non sarà ricevuto	Whoever may come, he will not be received

i. In indirect questions.

Tutti sanno quale famoso cacciatore egli fosse	Everybody knows what a famous hunter he was
Pagherei sapere quello che faccia	I wonder what he does

Sentì quanta fosse la grandezza di quell' uomo	He realized how great was the nobility of that man
--	---

NOTE 1. For the subjunctive may usually be substituted the future, when it relates to future time. It is always future, when the matter is certain.

NOTE 2. **Che** is not infrequently omitted.

Una sera sembrò dicesse avessi dato
retta ai suqi consigli!

One evening it seemed **that** he said
that if only I had given heed to
his advice —!

170. Sequence of Tenses. *a.* A principal verb in the present, imperative, future, or present perfect is followed by the present or present perfect subjunctive.

Non vuole ch' io rimanga?	Do you not wish me to remain?
Dille che venga	Tell her to come
Non crederà che sia venuto	He will not believe I have come
Non ho richiesto che vada	I have not demanded that he go

b. A principal verb in any other past tense will be followed by the past or past perfect subjunctive.

Si diceva che avesse dei parēnti pōveri	It was said that he had some poor relatives
Bisognerebbe che partissi	I should have to leave
Non dicemmo che fosse morto	We did not say he had died

1. The past tenses of the subjunctive may, of course, follow a present tense of the main verb, where the sense requires it.

Crediamo che fossero partiti prima We believe they had gone before
che noi ne avessimo notizia we had news of it

171. Subjunctive in Independent Clauses. The subjunctive is used in the independent clause,

a. To supply the missing third person of the imperative (cf. 92, *a*).

Sia detto ad onor del vero Be it said out of respect for the
truth

b. In the past tense to express an augury or imprecation, usually unlikely of fulfillment.

Ho due canarini. Tu **vedessi** come I have two canaries. If you could
son graziosi! only see how pretty they are!

172. The Verb *dolere* 'grieve,' 'pain.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *Dolere, dolendo, dolgo, dorro, dolsi, doluto*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

<i>dolgo</i> (<i>doglio</i>)	<i>dogliamo</i> (<i>dolghiamo</i>)	<i>dolga</i> (<i>doglia</i>)	<i>dogliamo</i> (<i>dolghiamo</i>)
<i>duoli</i>	<i>dolete</i>	<i>dolga</i>	<i>dogliate</i>
<i>duole</i>	<i>dolgono</i> (<i>dōgliono</i>)	<i>dolga</i>	<i>dōlgano</i> (<i>dōgliano</i>)

VOCABULARY

<i>la difesa</i> defense	<i>sebbene</i> although
<i>il dovere</i> duty	<i>accrescere</i> increase
<i>la faccia</i> face	<i>alterare</i> alter
<i>la salvezza</i> safety	<i>comandare</i> command
<i>lo scopo</i> purpose	<i>deprimere, depreSSI, depresso</i> de- press, lower
<i>lo spirito</i> spirit	<i>dimostrare</i> show, demonstrate
<i>militare</i> military	<i>esitare</i> hesitate
<i>mite</i> mild, gentle	<i>esporre, esponendo, espongo, esposi,</i> <i>esposto</i> expose
<i>selvaggio</i> savage, wild	<i>impedire</i> prevent
<i>umano</i> human	<i>importare</i> (<i>impers.</i>) be important
<i>vile</i> cowardly	<i>lanciare</i> hurl
<i>contro</i> against	<i>punire</i> punish
<i>finchè</i> as long as	<i>richiedere, richiesi, richiestO</i> de- mand
<i>finchè . . . non</i> (<i>w. subj.</i>) until	<i>sembrare</i> seem (<i>sembro</i>)
<i>qualora</i> whenever	<i>sparire</i> disappear
<i>qualunque</i> (<i>adj.</i>) whatever	

EXERCISE

I (From *La terza Italia*)

1. Lo scopo supremo delle istituzioni militari è la difesa del paese. 2. A questo scopo importa soprattutto che non sia depresso lo spirito militare. 3. Giuseppe Garibaldi ha sempre comandato forze troppo piccole perchè ci possa fornire insigni esempi di organizzazione; ma ha vinto. 4. Noi Americani possiamo dire sinceramente che non siamo militaristi; ma ci sembrerebbe un vile l'uomo che parlasse contro il dovere di esporre la vita, qualora sia necessario, per la patria. 5. Il nostro Lincoln era l'uomo più mite, più antimilitarista che sia stato al mondo. 6. Ma dimostrò che egli non avrebbe esitato un momento a lanciare il suo paese in una guerra tremenda, se la salvezza del paese stesso l'avesse richiesto. 7. Le guerre sono una cosa terribile, uno spettacolo selvaggio; speriamo che col tempo finiscano per sparire della faccia del terra. 8. Finchè il mondo rimane quello che è, bisognerebbe alterare profondamente la natura umana per impedire che la coscienza della superiorità nazionale non accresca le energie individue, in qualunque direzione esse vengano applicate.

II

1. Let us hope that wars may disappear from the face of the earth. 2. As long as the world remains what it is, it is important that men should know how to fight for their country. 3. In whatever direction they are going, they wish the soldiers to follow them. 4. Do you think that the supreme purpose of military institutions is the defense of the country? 5. The general gave orders that his soldiers should not expose their lives that day. 6. We wish to prevent the military spirit from increasing. 7. It grieves us that you should speak of it. 8. It seems to us that the defense of the country is important above all. 9. Although he was a mild man, the safety of the country demanded that he should

fight. 10. They would talk against a soldier who should hesitate to expose his life. 11. We are afraid that he will seem a coward, although he has done his duty. 12. The general had him punished, although he had shown the military spirit. 13. He exposed his life whenever the safety of the country demanded it. 14. We must alter the world before wars can disappear. 15. He seems the greatest general that has ever commanded our soldiers. 16. If we could reduce the military spirit, we should prevent wars from increasing. 17. The general ordered us to follow him in order not to expose his soldiers.

LESSON XXIX

THE INFINITIVE. THE VERB DIRE

173. The Infinitive. The infinitive may be used —

a. As a substantive, in all cases; it often best translates the English gerund in *-ing* (cf. 193, *d*).

Mi duole il dirlo	It pains me to say it
Non è assurdo lo sperare che si possa rinunciare alla guerra	It is not absurd to hope that war may be given up
La produzione dell' Inghilterra è lungi dal bastare ai suoi bisogni	The production of England is far from sufficing for its needs
Le arti giovano al paese nel suo andare verso la civiltà	The arts are helpful to a country in its movement toward civilization
Stimava il ridere essere medicina sicura	He thought that laughing was a sure remedy
Al primo entrare	On first entering
Fu imprigionato per aver congiurato	He was imprisoned because of having conspired

b. As a verb, governing objects etc., being substituted very often, especially where the subject is identical, for a dependent clause (usually in the subjunctive) of time, cause,

command, purpose, result, condition or concession, or indirect discourse or question.

Le donne, a vederci passare, pian-
gēvano

Mi telēfoni prima di venire

Ditegli di scrīvermi

Ha promesso di mutar vita

Chi è posto tanto in alto da non
temere di cadere?

L'ha detto in modo da farsi crēdere

A sentirlo parlare, si direbbe che
fosse Francese

Lo lasciarono partire, a patto di
tornare l'indomani

Credo di doverlo fare

Cercava qualche luogo ove fare il
suo deposito

The women, as they saw us pass,
were weeping

Telephone me before you come

Tell him to write me

He has promised to change his
way of life

Who is so high that he need fear
no fall?

He said it in such a way as to
make them believe him

If you heard him speak, you would
say he was a Frenchman

They let him go, provided he
should return next day

I think I have to do it

He was looking for some place
where he might make his deposit

1. Or it may be at once substantive and verb, governing an object while itself an object.

Si propose di far un viaggio

He intended to make a journey

c. Elliptically.

E poi da capo a parlare inglese

Then they began all over again
to talk English

Ecco venire frettoloso un volontario

Here came up hastily a volunteer

Qui, il Griso a proporre, don Ro-
drigo a discūtere finchè ebbero
concertata la maniera di con-
durre a fine l'impresa

Hereupon Griso began to propose
and Don Rodrigo to discuss,
until they had arranged a method
for bringing the enterprise to a
conclusion

Che fare?

What is to be done?

Piuttosto morire che fare una tal
cosa

I would rather die than do such a
thing

174. Government of the Infinitive. The infinitive may depend upon —

a. A noun, by means of **da** or **di**.

Māchina **da** scrivere
Ha intenzione **di** farlo

Typewriter
He intends to do it

b. An adjective.

1. By means of **a**.

Il coltello è adatto **a** tagliare
Siamo pronti **a** partire
Fu il primo **a** entrare
Cose leggiadre **a** riguardare

The knife is useful for cutting
We are ready to leave
He was the first to enter
Things lovely to look at

2. By means of **da**.

Il suolo è rīpido **da** doverci posare
i pièdi ben pari

The ground is so steep that we
must plant our feet very evenly

3. By means of **di**.

Siamo felici **di** vederlo

We are happy to see him

c. A verb.

1. Directly, upon the following :

ardire dare
bastare suffice
bisognare be necessary
convenire be suitable
dovere owe, must, ought
essere d' uopo, essere (di) mestieri,
be necessary
fare make, cause, have done
lasciare allow, let

occorrere be necessary
osare dare
parere appear
potere be able
sapere know how
sentire hear, feel
udire hear
vedere see
volere wish, will

2. By means of **a**. Verbs of motion or rest, and many verbs signifying the source, beginning, continuance, or promotion of an action, take **a** before the infinitive.

Andò **a** chiamarla
Si misero **a** discorrere in italiano

He went to call her
They began to talk in Italian

Stette a sentire con aria di curiosità	He stood listening with an air of curiosity
Seguitavo a leggere ad alta voce	I went on reading aloud

3. By means of **di**. All other verbs govern the infinitive by means of **di**.

Mi par di averlo veduto	It seems to me I have seen him
Promette di venire	He promises to come
M' ha scritto di mandarglielo	He has written me to send it to him
Dimostra di avere gran ricchezza	He appears to have great wealth

4. In special senses, by means of **per** and **da**. The infinitive with **per** expresses purpose; with **da** it expresses obligation, or propriety, and usually has passive force.

O anima che vai per esser lieta	O spirit who goest to (in order to) be joyful
Che resta da fare?	What remains to be done?
Ci sarà molto da aspettare?	Will there be long to wait?
Le costruzioni francesi sono da evitarsi	French constructions should be avoided

175. The Verb *dire* 'say,' 'tell.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Dire**, dicendo, dico, dirò, dissi, detto

PRESENT INDICATIVE

dico	diciamo
dici	dite
dice	dicono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

dica	diciamo
dica	diciate
dica	dicano

VOCABULARY

il bilancio balance, account
la civiltà civilization
la coscienza consciousness
l' *esercito* *m.* army
il danno damage
l' *evenienza* *f.* occurrence
l' *onda* *f.* wave

l' *ordinamento* *m.* arrangement
la povertà poverty
il sostegno support
la spesa expense
assurdo absurd
civile civilized, civil
fiacco weak

appartenere	belong	trattarsi di	be a question of
diffondere, diffuso	scatter	eroicamente	heroically
figurare	figure	forse	perhaps
rinunziare a	give up (<i>sometimes</i> di <i>before an inf.</i>)	in quanto a	as for
		verso	towards

EXERCISE

I (From *La terza Italia*)

1. Non è da dimenticare che in Italia lo spirito militare è molto fiacco. 2. Naturalmente, in quanto a spese militari, la miglior cosa sarebbe che se ne potesse fare a meno. 3. Forse potrà venire un giorno in cui queste spese non figureranno più nei bilanci delle nazioni civili. 4. Ma è assurdo il credere che una nazione possa rinunziare a tenersi pronta per ogni evenienza. 5. La relativa povertà dell' Italia moderna dipende soprattutto, come credo d' aver dimostrato, dai suoi cattivi ordinamenti amministrativi, ordinamenti che non servono di sostegno al paese nel suo andare verso la civiltà. 6. Questa onda di sentimento, che si cerca di diffondere nel popolo italiano, contraria a tutto ciò che sa di vita militare, finirà per esser di grave danno al paese. 7. Non si tratta di fare del militarismo, ma di far sì che ogni buon figlio d' Italia abbia la coscienza d' appartenere a un grande popolo, e sia determinato a fare eroicamente il suo dovere. 8. Non sarebbe difficile far combattere i soldati quando l' esercito fosse condotto da buoni generali.

II

1. We think we have shown that it is not a question of the military spirit. 2. We must not give up holding ourselves in readiness to defend our country. 3. It is to be hoped that war will vanish from the face of the earth. 4. We wished to go to France, although the expenses of the journey would be great. 5. It is absurd to think that the army is not led by good generals. 6. We are happy to know that they are talking against everything that smacks of war.

7. It is important that we should be ready to leave. 8. They ended by giving up following the army. 9. They would have told me to write them about it if they had wished to know. 10. He hesitates to leave, and we are trying to prevent him from leaving. 11. Would it be difficult to make the army leave before the general returns? 12. It pains us to see that he cannot write. 13. It pleases us to belong to a great people. 14. They have several letters to write. 15. They are glad to write them. 16. We cannot hear them sing.

LESSON XXX

NUMBER IN NOUNS AND ADJECTIVES. THE VERB *PIACERE*

176. Invariables. All monosyllables, and all nouns ending in a consonant, an accented vowel, *u*, *i*, or *ie* (except *moglie*), do not change for the plural.

il re the king; *i re*
il lapis the pencil; *i lapis*
la libertà liberty; *le libertà*
il chiù the cue-owl; *i chiù*
la crisi the crisis; *le crisi*
la serie the series; *le serie*

177. Feminine Plurals. *a.* Feminine nouns, and feminine forms of adjectives, ending in unaccented *a*, change *a* to *e* in the plural.

la spazzola the brush; *le spazzole*

1. Those in *-ca* and *-ga* form the plural respectively in *-che* and *-ghe*, inserting the *h* to preserve the hard sound of *c* and *g*.

la barca the boat; *le barche*
la bottega the shop; *le botteghe*
la mano bianca the white hand; *le mani bianche*

2. Nouns (but not adjectives) in unaccented **-cia** and **-gia** preceded by a consonant drop **i** before the **e** of the plural.

la provincia the province; **le province**

la spiaggia the beach; **le spiagge**

But

la nostalgīa homesickness; **le nostalgīe**

la sottana grigia the gray shirt; **le sottane grigie**

3. Feminine nouns in **o** and **e** (not **ie**) form their plural in **i**.

la mano the hand; **le mani**

la lite the lawsuit; **le liti**

178. Masculine Plurals. *a.* Masculine nouns in **a**, **o**, **e** (not **ie**), and masculine forms of adjectives in **o** or **e**, form their plural in **i**.

il papa the pope; **i papi**

il problema the problem; **i problemi**

il socialista the socialist; **i socialisti**

il buono Inglese the good Englishman; **i buoni Inglese**

l'Italiano intelligente the intelligent Italian; **gli Italiani intelligenti**

1. Those in **-ca** and **-ga** form their plural respectively in **-chi** and **-ghi**.

il duca the duke; **i duchi**

il collega the colleague; **i colleghi**

Except **Belga** 'Belgian,' of common gender, which has a masculine plural **Belgi**, and a feminine **Belghe**.

2. Those in unaccented **-io** change **io** to **i** (often written **ì**, **j**, or **ii**). Where the **i** is accented, the plural is always **ii**.

lo studio the study; **gli studi**

il foglio the sheet of paper; **i fogli**

But

l'oblio forgetfulness; **gli oblii**

3. When a noun in **-ista** refers to a woman and takes the feminine gender, its plural ends in **e**.

la socialista the woman socialist; **le socialiste**

b. Those in **-go** form their plural in **-ghi**.

l'albergo the hotel; **gli alberghi**

1. But those in unaccented **-fago**, and those in unaccented **-logo** when referring to scientists, form the plural in **-gi**.

antropōfago man-eating; **antropōfagi**

il filōlogo the philologist; **i filōlogi**

But

il diālogo dialogue; **i diāloghi**

2. **Mago** has two plurals, differing according to meaning: **maghi** 'magicians' and **magi** 'Magi.'

c. Those in **-co** form their plural in **-chi** if the penult is accented; otherwise in **-ci**.

il mēdico ricco the rich physician; **i mēdici ricchi**

il fuoco mājico the magic fire; **i fuochi mājici**

il ciēco stanco the tired blind man; **i ciēchi stanchi**

il mōnaco austriaco the Austrian monk; **i mōnaci austriaci**

1. The following words, though the penult is accented, form their plurals in **-ci**:

amico friend

grēco Greek

nemico, inimico enemy

pōrco pig

NOTE. **Greco** has a regular plural in the phrase **vini grechi** 'Greek wines.'

2. The following words, although the penult is unaccented, form their plural in **-chi**:

cārico loaded

mānico handle

strāscico train of gown

dimēntico neglectful

pārroco parish priest

tōssico poison

fōndaco warehouse

stōmaco stomach

trāffico traffic

lāstrico pavement

stōrico historic

NOTE. There are further exceptions under **b**, 1, and **c**, 2, but the words are obsolete or rare.

179. Irregular Plurals. *a.* Certain masculine nouns in **o** have an irregular plural in **a** with change of gender. These are

un centinaio about a hundred; **delle centinaia**
 un migliaio about a thousand; **delle migliaia**
 il miglio mile; **le miglia**
 il paio pair; **le paia**
 l'uovo egg; **le uova**

b. Many others have this feminine plural in **a** in addition to a regular masculine one in **i**. For most of the following words the form in **a** is very common; especially for those referring to parts of the body when taken collectively:

l'anello ring; **gli anelli, le anella**
 il budello bowel; **i budelli, le budella**
 il calcagno heel; **i calcagni, le calcagna**
 il castello castle; **i castelli, le castella**
 il dito finger; **i diti, le dita**
 il ginocchio knee; **i ginocchi, le ginocchia**
 il grido cry; **i gridi, le grida**
 il labbro lip; **i labbri, le labbra**
 l'osso bone; **gli ossi, le ossa**
 il pugno fist; **i pugni, le pugna**
 lo strido shriek; **gli stridi, le strida**

*1. In the following nouns the plural in **a** has a different or more restricted meaning, usually more literal:

il braccio, i bracci, arm	le braccia arms <i>of the body</i>
il carro, i carri, wagon	il carro, le carra, wagon-load
il cervello, i cervelli, brain	le cervella brains <i>in the physical sense</i>
il ciglio, i cigli, visage	il ciglio, le ciglia, eyebrow
il coltello, i coltelli, knife	le coltella large knives
il corno, i corni, horn	le corna horns <i>of an animal</i>
il cuoio, i cuoi, leather	le cuoia hides, whole skins
il filo, i fili, thread	le fila collective
il fondamento, i fondamenti, foundation	le fondamenta foundations <i>of a building</i>

il frutto, i frutti, fruit
 il fuso, i fusi, spindle
 il gęsto, i gęsti, gesture
 il gōmito, i gōmiti, elbow
 il lęno, i lęni, wood
 il lenzuōlo, i lenzuōli, sheet
 il męmbro, i męmbri, member

il muro, i muri, wall

il riso, i risi, rice
 il sacco, i sacchi, sack
 lo staio, gli stai, barrel
 il suōlo, i suōli, ground, pavement
 l' urlo, gli urli, cry

le frutta fruit *served on the table*
 le fusa purring
 il gęsto, le gęsta, exploit
 le gōmita elbows, *part of the body*
 le lęna wood *to burn*
 le lenzuōla pair of sheets
 le męmbra parts of the body, *collectively*
 le mura all the walls of a building
 or city, *collectively*
 il riso, le risa, laughter
 il sacco, le sacca, sackful
 lo staio, le staia, barreland
 il suōlo, le suōla, sole of a shoe
 le urla human cries

*2. The following have the feminine plural in *a* only in poetry :

il fato fate
 il peccato sin

il pōmo apple
 il vestigio trace, footstep

c. Plurals wholly irregular.

l' ala wing ; le ali (le ale)
 il bue ox ; i bui
 il dio god ; gli dei

la mōglie wife ; le mōgli
 l' uōmo man ; gli uōmini

*180. Plurals of Proper Names. *a.* Given names form their plurals according to the regular rules, except that masculines in *a* and feminines in *o* are invariable.

I Carli

The Charleses

I Geremīa

The Jeremiahs

L' Ēlene

The Helens

Le Clio

The Clions

b. Family names are invariable, unless ending in *o* and not compound.

Il Galileō, i Galilęi

Galileo, the Galileos

Il Buondelmōnte, i Buondelmōnte

Buondelmonte, the Buondelmonte
 family

Il dęlla Rōbbia, i dęlla Rōbbia

Della Robbia, the Della Robbias

181. Plural of Compound Nouns. Compound nouns form their plural in one of four ways:

a. The second member only is variable.

il gentiluomo gentleman; i gentiluomini

il lavamano washstand; i lavamani

b. The first member only is variable.

il capopōpolo head of the popular party; i capipōpolo

c. Both members are variable.

la buonamano tip, fee; le buonemani

il palcoscēnico proscenium arch; i palchiscēnici

d. Both members are invariable.

il lustrascarpe bootblack; i lustrascarpe

il pōrtavōce megaphone; i pōrtavōce

***182. Defective Nouns.** *a.* The following nouns have no singular:

gli annali annals

le fōrbici scissors

gli occhiali spectacles

le busse beating

i maccherōni macaroni

le tēnebre darkness

le esēquie obsequies

le nōzze wedding

etc.

b. The following have no plural:

la calvizie baldness

la fame hunger

la sēte thirst

la canizie white hairs

la mane morning

etc.

la cōpia plenty

il pepe pepper

Many names of metals, and many abstract nouns.

c. Many nouns, though not strictly defective, are used almost exclusively in either the singular or the plural. Such are

la progēnie, la prole, la stirpe,

i rūderi ruins

race, progeny

gli spinaci spinach

i pōsteri posterity

d. Some nouns have a different meaning in the plural.

la mōlla spring, catch

le mōlle tongs

il rōstro beak

i rōstri tribune, rostrum

il vizzo custom

i vizzi caresses

***183. Collectives.** Collective nouns which are plural in meaning but singular in form take a verb or adjective in the singular.

Sono gente che non viaggia mai	They are people who never travel
Avevo lasciato tutta la mia roba a Parigi	I had left all my things in Paris

***184. Distributive Singular.** The singular is used in Italian, of nouns referring to parts of the body or to clothing, to mean 'one each,' where the plural would be used in English.

Alzarono la mano destra	They raised their right hands
Si levarono il cappello	They took off their hats

But

Fece tagliar loro le mani	He had their hands cut off (both hands of each)
----------------------------------	--

a. Yet the adjective in such cases agrees in the plural.

L'idea d'uscirne sani e salvi non passò per il capo a nessuno	The idea of getting out safe and sound never entered their heads
---	---

185. The Verb *piacere* 'please,' 'be pleasing.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Piacere, piacendo, piaccio, piacerò, piacqui, piaciuto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

piaccio	piacciamo
piaci	piacete
piace	piacciono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

piaccia	piacciamo
piaccia	piacciate
piaccia	piacciano

VOCABULARY

l' **albergo** *m.* hotel
 l' **antologìa** *f.* anthology
 l' **arancio** *m.* orange-tree
 la **barca** boat
 il **Belga** Belgian

la **bottèga** shop
 il **chirurgo** surgeon
 la **città** city
 il **diàlogo** dialogue
 il **dito** finger

il domēstico domestic	l' uovo <i>m.</i> egg
le fōrbici scissors	la virtù virtue, power
il frutto fruit	
il fungo mushroom	antico ancient
la gente folk, people	austriaco Austrian
il ginōcchio knee	bēllico pertaining to war, of warfare
Giulio Cēzare Julius Cæsar	bellicoso warlike
la guancia cheek	britānnico Britannic
il labbro lip	caduco weak
il lapis pencil	cārico loaded
il lavamano washstand	cieco blind
il legno wood	clāssico classic
la letteratura literature	etrusco Etruscan
il luogo place, location	filosōfico philosophical
il lustrascarpe bootblack	forzato forced
la macchia brambles, thicket	grēco Greek
la marcia march	lāico laic, layman
la metrōpoli metropolis	ricco rich
la moglie wife	scārico run down, free, unloaded
la molla spring, mainspring	simpātico nice, congenial
le mōlle tongs	stanco tired
il muro wall	típico typical
il nemico enemy	ubriaco drunk
il paio pair	
il pārroco parish priest	accēndere, accēsi, accēso, light,
il soprābito overcoat	kindle
la spēcie kind, sort	caricare load, wind up
lo stivale boot	lustrare black, polish
il tacco heel	rōmpere, ruppi, rōtto break
la tēsta head	tagliare cut

EXERCISE

I

1. They have their boots blacked. 2. The Britannic kings were old. 3. The watches are run down, both of them. 4. They must be wound up. 5. The mainspring is broken. 6. The Greek boot-blacks had little shops in all the great metropolises. 7. Bring me

some wood for the fires. 8. Let us take a walk outside the walls. 9. The Etruscan cities have been dead for centuries. 10. She has burnt her fingers. 11. The philosophical Greeks studied political institutions. 12. Julius Cæsar tells us that the ancient Belgians were a warlike people. 13. I have lost two pairs of scissors, and all my pencils. 14. Her lips and cheeks are red. 15. The Austrian surgeons are very rich. 16. There are orange-trees in our garden. 17. Oranges are the fruit of the orange-tree. 18. The soldiers are not drunk but tired; they have made many forced marches. 19. Scissors are adapted to cutting. 20. The fires were kindled by hostile soldiers.

II

1. The ancient Greeks were a very civilized people. 2. The boats are loaded. 3. Monks and laics are all enemies of the army. 4. Please give me the tongs. 5. The doctors finished their studies in two Austrian cities. 6. The old servants are not rich; they are blind. 7. It is difficult to find mushrooms. 8. They will search for them in the woods and other places. 9. My friends have some anthologies of Greek and Italian literature. 10. The rich politicians have taken off their overcoats. 11. In the hotels of French cities one is very comfortable. 12. The classic literatures were very congenial to him. 13. The Etruscan kings had domestic wives. 14. He had their heads cut off. 15. The virtues of the ancient Greeks were many. 16. He brought me several packages of fruit. 17. They are typical Englishmen. 18. By [with] dialogues one learns the spoken language. 19. I like Mrs. B., I think she is very nice. 20. Send me six eggs and three kinds of fruit. 21. My Greek friends will arrive to-morrow. 22. They seem typical parish priests. 23. It is absurd to say the ancient civilizations were not great. 24. The French are an agreeable people. 25. They are people who think the military spirit is an evil. 26. Her Austrian friends (*f.*) are very nice. 27. Surgeons and doctors become tired because of working too much. 28. Guns are instruments of warfare.

LESSON XXXI

MODAL AUXILIARIES. THE VERB *DOVERE*

186. Modal Auxiliaries. *a.* The modal auxiliaries are **volere** 'wish,' 'will,' **potere** 'be able,' **dovere** 'be obliged,' expressing what *must, may, should, ought to, or is to* happen.

b. As these verbs are not defective like their English equivalents, **potere** and **dovere** may as auxiliaries be conjugated in the compound tenses. The dependent infinitive remains in the present tense, whereas in English it must be thrown into the compound past tense.

Avrebbe dovuto **farlo**

He ought to have done it

Non avrebbe potuto **venire**

He could not have come

Non ha potuto andarvi oggi

He has not been able to go there
to-day

1. But cf. 140, c, 2.

c. These verbs follow the regular rules for the agreement of the past participle (cf. 194, b).

Ci sarebbero **voluti** pochi soldi

It would have taken but a few cents

Tali sono oggi, quali li hai **potuti**
vedere

Such they are to-day as you have
been able to see (them)

d. When governing an infinitive, these verbs may take the auxiliary of the dependent verb.

Non **era** voluto **partire**

He had not wished to leave

Non **hanno** potuto **lavorare**

They could not work

Sarebbe dovuto **venire**

He ought to have come

È cominciato a **ammalare**

He began to be taken ill

*1. When the infinitive is passive, the modal auxiliary may be thrown into the passive and the infinitive remain active.

Non potè esser **portato**

Non fu potuto **portare**

} He could not be carried

2. Used absolutely, without infinitive, the auxiliary is **avere**.

Ha voluto ma non ha potuto

He wished to but could not

187. Special Uses of the Modal Auxiliaries.

a. Special uses of **volere**.

1. The conditional means 'should like,' 'want.'

Vorrei visitare la città

I should like to see the sights of
the city

2. 'Will you?' unless it means 'Do you wish?' 'Should you like?' is often best translated not by **volere** but by the present tense of the verb.

Mi fa il piacere di indicarmi la
strada?

Will you do me the kindness to
show me the way?

3. Cf. 133, a, 1 and 2.

b. Special uses of **potere**.

1. It translates 'may' or 'might' in independent clauses (the subjunctive translates them in dependent ones).

Si può dire che tutti i Tedeschi
sappiano cantare

It may be said that all Germans
know how to sing

Potrebbe darsi

It might be, it might be the case

Potevano essere le due

It might have been two o'clock

2. **Non poter a meno di** means 'not be able to help.'

Non potei a meno di ridere

I could not help laughing

3. **Poter su** 'have power over,' 'influence.'

Sortì da natura fortissimo ingegno
e animo fiero. I casi della vita
molto poterono sull'uno e sul-
l'altro

He had by nature a powerful gen-
ius and an intrepid spirit. The
chances of life had great influ-
ence upon both (*lit.* had much
power over the one and the other)

4. Cf. 132, a, 1.

c. Special uses of *dovere*.

1. In the conditional it means 'ought'; in the other tenses, 'must,' 'have to,' 'is to,' etc.

Dovrebbe pagarlo subito	He ought to pay it at once
Deve pagarlo subito	He must pay it at once
Doveva passare l'inverno a Nizza	He was to pass the winter at Nice

2. For the 'must' or 'must have' of probability is substituted the future or future perfect of the dependent verb (cf. 141, a, 1).

3. In the first person singular present indicative it translates 'Shall I?' in the sense of 'Do you wish me to?'

Devo fare i bauli?	Shall I pack the trunks? (Do you wish me, is it time, to pack the trunks?)
---------------------------	---

188. The Verb *dovere*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *dovere*, *dovendo*, *dovrò*, *dèvo* or *dèbbo*, *dovèi*, *dovuto*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

dèvo, dèbbo, (dèggio)	dobbiamo
dèvi, dèi	dovete
dève, (dèbbe), dèc	dèvono, dèbbono, (dèggiono)

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

dèva, dèbba, (dèggia)	dobbiamo
dèva, dèbba, (dèggia)	dobbiate
dèva, dèbba, (dèggia)	dèvano, dèbbano, (dèggiano)

Imperative wanting.

VOCABULARY

il chilo	kilogram	di là	on that side
il conto	bill, account	di qua	on this side
la corsa	run, course	nemmeno	not even
il fornaio	baker	però	however
la moneta	coin, piece	soltanto	only
il resto	change	stretto	tight, narrow
il servizino	little service	tra	within, between
dirilato	straight ahead		

costare cost	rifare make again rebuild
dubitare doubt	ripetere repeat
mormorare murmur	rivoltare turn back
osservare observe	sbagliare make a mistake
ricontare count over, recount	voltarsi turn

EXERCISE

I

— Egisto, va' qui dal fornaio a comprare mezzo chilo di pane, di quello da trenta centesimi il chilo. Eccoti una lira, sta' attento, fatti dare il resto. E mi raccomando, non ti fermare per la strada, eh? —

Queste parole erano dette a Egisto dalla mamma. Il bambino a cui non pareva vero di fare i servizini a sua madre, andò difilato dal fornaio; prese il pane e il resto della lira, e via verso casa, senza nemmeno voltarsi di qua o di là.

Quando fu a mezza strada ebbe un'idea: quella di ricontare i denari del resto; erano sei monete da dieci centesimi e due da un soldo, dunque il conto non tornava.

— Facciamolo meglio — mormorò tra sè Egisto — se un chilo di pane costa 30 centesimi, mezzo chilo costa 15. Il fornaio doveva darmi 85 centesimi di resto, invece me ne ha dati soltanto 70.—

Egisto non stette più a pensare; rivoltò, e tornò di corsa dal fornaio, e gli disse:

— Sa, Lei ha sbagliato, mi ha dato tre soldi meno di resto; guardi.

— Proprio, bambino? — rispose il fornaio — Li avrai persi per la strada.

— No, no, — ripeté il ragazzo con vivacità; — li tenevo stretti stretti in questa mano.

Il fornaio lo guardò; e gli lesse in viso un'aria tale di sincerità, che non dubitò più. Gli ridiede i soldi, ma gli osservò:

— Ho sbagliato, e lo riconosco; però un'altra volta sta' attento, e il conto rifallo subito qui in presenza mia.

II

1. We must always count our money. 2. She could not do without bread. 3. He would not have been able to help losing his way. 4. Egisto's mother told him not to stop on the way. 5. She says to him: "Here are two lire for you. Don't forget to bring me the change." 6. Go to the baker's, hurry, and be careful. 7. He ought to have brought it to her. 8. Shall I light the fire in all the rooms? 9. The boy ought to have brought two lire; it might be that he had lost them on the way. 10. His mother told him to hurry, that he might bring her the bread before lunch. 11. He was not able to start before eleven, he could not have brought it to her in time. 12. He had the change given him. 13. It must be ten o'clock. 14. He had in his pocket three ten-centesimo pieces and four one-cent pieces. 15. I do not doubt that it is to happen. 16. He had to return at once to the baker's. 17. Egisto was not to stop on the way. 18. His mother feared, if he did not hurry, that he might lose his way. 19. They have not been able to rebuild the walls of those cities. 20. It would have taken ten years. 21. They ought to have told us so before beginning the work. 22. Bakers make bread. 23. It was twelve o'clock before he returned. 24. His mother thinks he has lost his way. 25. The baker might have made a mistake. 26. He might have given me two cents too little. 27. No, he has given me three cents too much.

DIALOGO

DAL SARTO

—Vuol venire con me dal sarto? Mi devo provare un abito da passeggio.

—Volentieri. Dev' essere pronto anche il soprabito che ho fatto pulire. Com'è il nuovo abito?

—È fatto di una stoffa di lana leggièra, a quadretti neri e bigi. È un color pratico.

— Eccoci arrivati. Il sarto sta al terzo piano.

— Buon giorno, Signori. Sono venuti per la prova? Tutt' è pronto. Aspettino un momento che venga il giovane. Ecco. Come le piace?

— Mi pare che i calzoni siano un pochettino troppo lunghi. E la giubba non mi sta bene sulle spalle; è troppo attillata. Che ne pensa?

— Le maniche mi sembra che siano un po' troppo corte e anche larghe.

— Come crede, Signore. Lasci fare a me. Siamo in tempo a cambiar tutto facilmente. E Lei, Signore, non le occorre niente?

— Per dir la verità, ho proprio bisogno di una nuova *redingote*. Siccome non mi piace la roba bell' e fatta, devo ordinarlo. Può farmelo fra tre giorni? Sto per far un viaggio.

— Altro! Glielo farò trovare in casa giovedì sera. Ma ci vuole la misura. Prendiamola subito.

— Vabbene. Si deve pagare anticipatamente o dopo?

— Ma che Le pare! Un amico del Signor B! Mi pagherà quando Le converrà. Non ha bisogno di nient' altro?

— No, grazie. Andiamo dunque, e al ritorno devo far delle compre, mi occorre tanta roba da vestiario: delle scarpe basse colorate, un cappello sodo, e un altro a cencio, da viaggio. Il cilindro non lo prendo. Poi delle ciarpette di seta, chiare e scure.

— Come le piacciono le cravatte, rigate o scozzesi?

— Nè l' une nè l' altre. Le porto sempre lisce.

— Ecco una bottega che ha per insegna: *Novità da uomini*. Entriamoci.

LESSON XXXII

RELATIVE, DEMONSTRATIVE, AND INTERROGATIVE
PRONOUNS. THE VERB *UDIRE*

189. The Relative Pronoun. *a.* For the forms, see 114.

b. Special uses of *che* :

1. It is often used elliptically, without preposition, in adverbial or descriptive clauses.

Paese **che** vai usanza **che** trovi

Whatever country you go **to**, [follow] whatever customs you find.
(In Rome, do as the Romans do)

È venuto nel momento **che** stavo mangiando

He came at the moment **when** I was eating

Una donna **che** tutti non facevano altro **che** dire **che** l'era tanto buona

A woman **of whom** every one did nothing but say how good she was

2. When its antecedent is a phrase, it must take the article.

Avevamo il largo e profondo fosso alle spalle con solo uno stretto ponte per passo, **il che** rendeva difficile la ritirata

We had behind us the wide, deep ditch, with only a narrow bridge for crossing, **which fact** made retreat difficult

c. **Cui**, which is usually used after prepositions, may be used as a direct object, where **che** (which may be either subject or object) might cause ambiguity.

E caddi come l'uom **cui** sonno piglia

And I fell like one **whom** sleep overtakes

d. **Il quale**, which is either adjective or pronoun, is used (because declinable) to avoid ambiguity, and it seems rather to be preferred for general use, especially with a plural antecedent.

Quelli non erano tempi **nei quali**
 un presidente di Consiglio po-
 tessse agevolmente venir mutato
 Non ci maravigliamo che la scena
 de' *Promessi Sposi* sia stata
 posta dall' autore in quel di
 Lecco, nei luoghi ove lo ripor-
 tavano le prime e le più care
 sue reminiscenze, **dai quali** egli
 si era dovuto staccare per sempre
 con un vivo dolore

Those were not times in which a
 President of Council could easily
 be changed

We do not wonder that the scene
 of "The Betrothed" was laid
 by the author in the territory of
 Lecco, in the places whither his
 earliest and dearest recollections
 bore him, from which he had to
 sever himself with sharp grief.
 (The masculine form **quali** can
 evidently refer only to **luoghi**)

190. The Demonstrative Pronoun. *a.* **Questo, quello, cotesto.**

1. For the forms of **questo** and **quello**, see 86; **cotesto, codesto**,
 is inflected like **questo**.

2. **Questo** refers to what is near the speaker; **cotesto, codesto**,
 to what is near the person addressed; **quello**, to what is more or
 less removed from both.

Che ne pensa di **questo** cavallo?

What do you think of **this** horse?

Come si chiamano **quelle** colline?

What is the name of **those** hills?

M' è piaciuto parecchio **codesto**
 ābito

I greatly liked your costume, **that**
 costume of **yours**

3. **Quello** and **questo** mean respectively 'the former' and 'the
 latter'; but **questo**, 'the latter,' is always mentioned first.

Il cavallo e il bōve sono tutt' e
 due utilissimi all' uōmo, ma si
 affeziona **meno** a **questo** che a
quello

The horse and the ox are both
 extremely useful to man, but
 we have **more** affection for **the**
former than for **the latter**

4. To mean 'this one' and 'that one' when speaking of things,
questo and **quello** are usually reinforced by **altro**.

Questo libro non l' ho letto. Ho
 letto **quell' altro**

This book I have not read. I
 have read **that one**

5. Special uses of **quello** :

a. **Quel che** = 'what' when it can be resolved into 'that which.'

Non credè quel che gli dissi He did not believe **what** I told him

b. Before **di** or a relative, it means 'the one,' 'that one.'

Ho prestato loro il mio cavallo e quello di mio fratello I have lent them my own horse and **my brother's**

Quelli che vede non sono i Colli Euganei **The ones** you see are not the Euganean Hills

c. Elliptically.

In quel (territorio) di Milano In the country round about Milan

Tu non sei più quello (medesimo, or di prima) You are no longer the same person

In quella (ora) At that moment

b. **Questi, quegli, (quei, que')**. These forms are invariable masculine singulars, applicable to persons only, and used only as subject. **Questi** = 'this one,' 'this man'; and **quegli** = 'that one,' 'that man.'

Questi, l'or me di cui pestar mi vedi This man in whose footsteps you see me tread

c. **Costui, colui**. These have the same meaning as **questi** and **quegli**, but are completely inflected and are used in all cases.

1. Forms :

SINGULAR	PLURAL	SINGULAR	PLURAL
costui	costoro	colui	coloro
costei		colei	

2. 'He who' is expressed by **colui che**, or preferably by **chi**.

Colui che guadagna ha il diritto di spendere **He who** earns has the right to spend

Il mondo è di chi se lo piglia The world belongs to **him who** takes it

Chi dice soldato, dice obbedienza **Who** says soldier, says obedience

a.* In this use, **chi is sometimes equivalent to 'if one.'

Chi è entrato nella vita politica,	If one enters political life, it is not
non conviene che cerchi di arricchirsi	fitting that he seek to enrich himself

NOTE. These demonstratives referring to persons only all end in the singular in *i*.

d. Ciò. **Ciò** is a neuter of rather general meaning, referring not to a person or a thing, but to a whole idea, meaning 'this' or 'that.'

Gl' Italiani sognavano libertà, ma	The Italians dreamed of liberty,
ciò dispiaceva agli Austriaci	but that displeased the Austrians

e. Desso, stesso, medesimo. These words all mean 'same,' 'selfsame,' 'that very,' etc. **Desso** is used only substantively, as a predicate complement, and for the most part of persons. **Stesso** and **medesimo** are either substantives or adjectives, and refer to either persons or things.

Questi è desso , e non favella	This is he, and he speaks not
Il re stesso l' ha fatto	The king did it himself
La fortuna medesima è il nostro nemico	Fortune itself is our foe

191. The Interrogative Pronoun. The interrogatives are—

chi ? who ? whom ?

che ? **che cosa** ? what ? what thing ? (*pronoun*), what kind of ? (*adjective*)

quale ? (*inflected*) what ? which ? (*adjective or pronoun*)

di chi ? whose ?

quanto ? (*inflected*) how much ? how many ?

come ? what did you say ?

Chi lo sa ?

Who knows ?

Che cosa ha detto ?

What has he said ?

Che libro legge ?

What kind of a book are you reading ?

Quale desidera ?

Which (one) do you wish ?

Di chi sono questi fiori ?

Whose are these flowers ?

Quanti ne vuole ?

How many do you wish ?

a. 'What a,' 'what,' in exclamations, is expressed by **che** without article (cf. 162, *f*).

Che panorama stupendo!

What a magnificent view!

***b.** The interrogatives may be reinforced by **mai**.

Chi mai l' avrebbe creduto?

Who would ever have believed it?

Come mai l' ha fatto?

How did you ever do it?

***c.** **Cosa?** for **che cosa?** is frequent in familiar speech, but is not elegant.

Cos' hai fatto?

What have you been doing?

192. The Verb *udire* 'hear.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Udire**, **udendo**, **odo**, **udirò** (**udrò**), **udii**, **udito**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

odo	udiamo
odi	udite
ode	ōdono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

oda	udiamo
oda	udiate
oda	ōdano

VOCABULARY

il cārcere prison

la cōsta coast

il cuōre heart

il dōsso back

l' erōe *m.* hero

la fucilazione execution, shooting

l' inganno *m.* deceit

l' īsola *f.* island

la marina navy

il pōrto port

lo sbarco disembarkation

la scintilla spark

la strage butchery

il supplizio punishment, torture

il tradimento treachery, betrayal

l' ufficiale *m.* officer

la vēla sail; far vēla set sail

la vergogna shame

attēdere, attēsi, attēso await

avviarsi take one's way, start

cavare take out

corrispōdere (*like* rispondere) correspond

effettuare effect

fuggire flee

sbarcare land

scuōtere, scōssi, scōsso shake

assai much, very, rather

veneziano Venetian

EXERCISE

I

I FRATELLI BANDIERA

I fratelli Attilio ed Emilio Bandiera, figli di nobile famiglia veneziana, erano ufficiali nella marina austriaca. Cuori generosi come quelli, al servizio dello straniero! — Vada la nostra vita, ma scuotiamoci da dosso tanta vergogna — devono aver pensato quei due giovani eroi. E fuggirono. Fuggirono in Grecia, nell' isola di Corfù. Di là, corrispondendo coi loro amici d' Italia, pensarono di effettuare uno sbarco sulle coste della Calabria, per accendere la prima scintilla di guerra in quel di Napoli. Fecero vela con pochi compagni, e sbarcarono al porto di Cotrone.

Ma l' inganno e il tradimento li aspettavano su quella terra; furono presto arrestati e immediatamente condannati alla fucilazione. La strage fu consumata nella città di Cosenza. Attesero calmi l' ora fatale, sentendo in cuore la gioia di dare il loro sangue alla patria. E quando i soldati del Borbone vennero a cavarli dal carcere per condurli a morte, essi e sette loro compagni si avviarono al luogo del supplizio, cantando serenamente: *Chi per la patria muor, vissuto è assai.*

II

1. The Bandiera brothers, who were officers in the Austrian navy, wished to shake from their backs the shame of being in the service of the foreigner. 2. What awaited them in the territory of Venice? 3. Deceit and treachery awaited those brothers in the land of the Bourbon. 4. That is not what they hoped. 5. Who knows how many men have given their lives for their country? 6. He who reads the history of Italy must admire her heroes. 7. What a beautiful history! What do you think of it? 8. What I have read of it pleases me very much. 9. The heroes were taken out of prison to be led to the place of punishment. 10. Which of the Bandiera brothers was the older? 11. We sang as we took our

way to the place of punishment. 12. What did you sing? 13. We sang, "He who dies for his country, has lived enough." 14. They were arrested, and what is worse, sentenced to be shot. 15. The officers had them punished, which was not to be expected. 16. They do not believe that what you tell them is true. 17. We have sold our house, and that of our brother. 18. I have taken my new dresses out of the box. 19. I do not like this one; I think the other one is more beautiful.

LESSON XXXIII

PARTICIPLES. THE VERB *PORRE*

193. The Present Participle. The present participle has two forms: a form in *-ante*, *-ente*, which Italian grammar recognizes as the participle, and one in *-ando*, *-endo*, which Italian grammar calls the "gerundive."

a. The form in *-ante*, *-ente*, has the character of adjective, substantive, or verb, and is inflected like an adjective in *e*.

1. As adjective it is in frequent use.

Il grillo parlante

The talking cricket

I prīncipi regnanti

The reigning princes

2. Any present participle with an article before it becomes a substantive, as *l' amante* 'the lover.'

3. As verb it is perhaps less common than the form in *-ando*, *-endo*, and rarely takes an object. It is used, with object, of the verbs *avere*, *contenere*, *fare*, *formare*, *indicare*, *rappresentare*, *tenere*, etc.

I treni aventi wagoni-letto

Trains having sleeping-cars

b. The form in *-ando*, *-endo*, has the character of verb or adverb, and is invariable.

1. As a verb it may replace a clause of time, cause, concession, condition, or simple explanation, and may always govern an object.

Andando insieme al teatro, chiacchieravano di molte cose

Trovandomi quell' autunno a casa, e **ricordandomi** di quel vecchio, andava spesso a visitarlo

Sentendosi incapace di muoversi, disse nonostante queste parole audaci

Rimproverandolo, potrà forse persuaderlo a mutar vita

While they were going to the theater they chatted of many things

As I happened to be at home that fall, and **to remember** the old man, I went often to visit him

Knowing that he was incapable of a movement, he yet spoke these audacious words

If you reprove him, you will perhaps be able to persuade him to change his way of life

c. To translate the English present participle,

1. With the verb 'to be,' cf. 102.

2. When standing alone or with object after a noun, it is often best to use a simple relative clause.

There is a lady **waiting**

C' è una signora **che aspetta**

And like a wasp **withdrawing** its sting

E come vespa **che ritragge** l' ago

3. After a verb of sensation use the infinitive.

They saw 'us **coming**

Ci videro **venire**

I heard her **singing**

La sentii **cantare**

d. To translate the English gerund,

1. In general, use the infinitive.

Smoking is forbidden

È vietato di **fumare**

Working is praying

Lavorare è **pregare**

2. After a preposition, use the form in **-ando**, **-endo**, without preposition, unless the latter be essential to the sense; when the preposition is essential to the sense, retain it, and translate the participle by the infinitive.

On recognizing him, I hastened to overtake him

Riconoscendolo, mi spicciai per raggiungerlo

One cannot make progress without studying	Non si può far progressi senza studiare
We talk of waging war	Parliamo di muover guerra

194. The Past Participle. *a.* The past participle may be used as adjective, noun, or verb.

Tutte le cose narrate si erano succedute con una rapidità maravigliosa	All the things narrated had suc- ceeded each other with a mar- velous rapidity
Il condannato era un povero Vene- ziano	The condemned man was a poor Venetian
Finita la messa	Mass being over

b. Agreement. As noun, as adjective, or when used without auxiliary, the past participle is always inflected. With auxiliary, it agrees —

1. After **essere**, in intransitive and passive verbs (cf. 99).
2. After **avere** (cf. 122).

a. But it is usually invariable —

- (1) When the object is part of a set phrase.

Ci ha dato fede	He has pledged his faith to it
Ho avuto fame	I was hungry

- (2) When the participle has a dependent infinitive governing a noun object.

Non ho voluto comprare quelle scarpe	I did not wish to buy those shoes
--	-----------------------------------

- (3) When **fatto** is substituted for the repetition of some other participle.

Certo negli ultimi venti anni si son salite più montagne, che non s'era fatto in venti secoli	Certainly in the last twenty years more mountains have been scaled than in the preceding twenty centuries
---	--

b. Whereas it must usually agree —

(1) When the direct object is a personal pronoun or **ne**.

Dove li hanno veduti?

Where did they see them?

Mi hai portato (or portati) dei fiori?

Have you brought me any flowers?

Te ne ho portati molti!

I have brought you a great many!

(2) This is true even when the pronoun object belongs with a dependent infinitive.

Li avreste potuti vedere

You might have seen them

3. With reflexives (cf. 104, c, 1).

a. With impersonal forms, the participle agrees if the verb is normally conjugated with **essere**; if it is regularly conjugated with **avere**, there is no agreement.

Si è vissuti troppo

We have lived too long

Si è comprato molti cavalli per la
cavalleria

Many horses were bought for the
cavalry

b. When the pronoun is a dative "of reference or concern" (cf. 105, b, 3) it is not a true reflexive.

c. Inversion. In temporal clauses the past participle and its auxiliary are often inverted, **che** then taking the place of **quando**, **appena**, etc.

Liberato che fu

When he was liberated, as soon as
he was liberated

Vinto che l'abbia, lo divorza

When [as soon as] he has con-
quered it, he devours it

195. Absolute Constructions. These are extremely common in Italian, and may take the place of almost any kind of clause.

Detto fatto

No sooner said than done

Giunto tardi a casa, ed acceso il
lume, si accorse subito del furto

Arriving home late, and having
lighted the lamp, he at once
noticed the theft

Dopo occupato l'altipiano, gl' Italiani cominciarono a tirare

After occupying the elevation, the Italians began to fire

a. Cf. 136, *h*; 145, *d*.

196. The verb *porre* 'place.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Porre, ponendo, pongo, porrò, posi, posto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

pongo	poniamo, ponghiamo
poni	ponete
pone	pōngono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

ponga	poniamo, ponghiamo
ponga	poniate
ponga	pōngano

VOCABULARY

il *băvero* coat-collar

il *benefizio* benefit

il *cannone* cannon

il *cittadino* citizen

la *giacchetta* jacket

la *giovanetta* young girl

il *giovanello* boy, young man

il *gruppo* group

l' *incasso* *m.* receipts

il *metallo* metal

il *nastrino* little ribbon

il *petto* breast

lo *scudo* shield

la *somma* sum

il *Turco* Turk

la *vendita* sale

acquistare acquire

andarsene go away

appuntare pin

dare il buon anno wish a Happy New Year

formicolare swarm

offrire, offerirsi, offerto offer

puntare aim

sparare fire, shoot

ciascuno each, every one

EXERCISE

I

IL PICCOLO SCUDO

1. Era il primo giorno dell' anno 1912, l' anno della nostra guerra contro i Turchi. 2. La gente formicolava per le strade e si salutava dandosi il buon anno. 3. Qua e là le persone, che passavano per le vie, erano fermate da gruppi di giovanetti e giovanette

che offrivano, a chi voleva comprarli, dei piccoli scudi di metallo bianco, portanti un nastrino coi tre colori della bandiera nazionale. 4. Su ogni scudo si vedeva un soldato che sparava, e un altro che puntava il cannone. 5. Gli scudetti erano venduti da quei giovani a beneficio dei nostri soldati che combattevano in Libia. 6. Costavano non meno di due soldi, ma ciascuno, prendendoli, poteva offrire quello che voleva. 7. E tutti i cittadini li acquistavano volentieri, con entusiasmo, e se li mettevano al bavero della giacchetta. 8. Li compravano anche le donne, e se li appuntavano sul vestito. 9. Quasi tutti ebbero ben presto sul petto questi piccoli scudi col nastrino tricolore. 10. L'incasso della loro vendita dette una somma considerevole.

II

1. The soldiers, while fighting in Libya, were led by the officers. 2. The combatants gave up firing, the cannon having been taken by the enemy. 3. That lady will pin the little shield upon her dress. 4. People flocking through the street and saluting each other wished each other a Happy New Year. 5. Having put the little ribbon on the collar of his coat, that citizen gave no less than three lire. 6. On New Year's Day of the year 1912, shields were sold for the benefit of the Italian soldiers. 7. As we entered the room, we found there a young girl singing. 8. We stayed, because we liked to hear her singing. 9. Having told us not to wait for them, they went away without speaking to him. 10. The shields bought, all soon had them at their breasts. 11. Little shields, on which was seen a soldier shooting, were offered by groups of young girls. 12. Do not go home before speaking to her. 13. Whoever wished to buy one, would pay not less than two cents. 14. By giving her two lire he won the approval of [made himself praised by] all the young people. 15. Have you bought a shield as you passed along the streets? 16. My brothers being both in Libya, I have bought two of them. 17. Having bought them, I shall give you one.

DIALOGO

DAL CALZOLAIO

— Ho da farmi fare un paio di scarpe. Andiamo in quella bottega di calzolaio ch'è sull'angolo di Via Parione. Ho sentito che quello lavora molto bene.

— Lo conosco di nome. Fa sempre le scarpe di lusso a una signora di mia conoscenza.

— Ecco il suo negozio. È davvero troppo grande ed elegante da chiamarlo bottega.

— Buon giorno, Signore. Che desiderano?

— Io vorrei ordinare un paio di scarpe bianche, alte.

— Alte non si fanno le bianche, Signora. Ne ho viste delle signore americane che le portano, ma qui in Italia non si trovano mai. Però, potrei fargliene un paio su misura. Ma bisognerebbe prima fare delle forme. Prendiamo la misura del suo piede. Ecco presa la misura. Come le vuole? Di pelle?

— No, di tela, di buona qualità. Le porterò domani una mia scarpa per confrontarla colla forma. Ho sempre paura quando vado per la prima volta da un calzolaio, che mi faccia le scarpe troppo larghe e troppo corte.

— Non dubiti, Signora. Colle forme ben fatte non si può sbagliare.

— Mi dia due paia di stringhe, e faccia attenzione che non scricchiolino le scarpe. Questo paio che ho fu bagnato dalla pioggia la settimana scorsa, e d'allora scricchiolano ch'è un orrore.

— Ci baderò, Signora. E i tacchi come li vuole? Di tela?

— No, di cuoio, e piuttosto bassi. I tacchi alti sciupano i piedi.

— Baderò a tutto, Signora. Sono sicuro che rimarrà soddisfatta. Quanto al prezzo, ci accomoderemo quando saprò quanto tempo ci vuole per far le forme. Farò un prezzo discreto da venti a venticinque lire.

— Vabbene. Buon giorno.

— Arrivedella, Signora.

LESSON XXXIV

GENDER OF NOUNS. THE VERB *USCIRE*197. Gender Determined by Form. *a.* Cf. 80, *b.*

b. Feminine are the nouns ending in *ie*, *si* (*except il brîndîşi* 'toast'), and accented *ice*; and abstract nouns when accented on the last syllable: *la specie* 'kind,' *la radice* 'root,' *la libertà* 'liberty.'

198. Gender Determined by Meaning. *a.* Cf. 80, *a.* Masculine are also —

1. Names of lakes; of mountains, *except le Alpi*, *le Ande*, *la Sierra Nevada*, and a few others; of rivers, unless ending in *a* (cf. *b*, 2); of empires, kingdoms, and provinces, unless ending in *a* or *de* (*except il Bengala*).

2. Names of trees, *except la quercia* 'oak,' *la palma* 'palm,' and *la vite* 'grapevine,' which are feminine, and *l'êlce* 'ilex,' of common gender.

3. Names of metals, *except la latta* 'tin.'

4. Names of months, and of all days *except domēnica*.

5. Other parts of speech used substantively.

b. Cf. 80, *a.* Feminine are also —

1. Names of fruits, which usually correspond to the names of the trees. If the latter end in *o*, *o* changes to *a*; if in *e*, there is merely a change of gender.

Il pêsco, *la pêsca*

The peach-tree, the peach

Il nôce, *la nôce*

The walnut-tree, the walnut

EXCEPTIONS. The following names, of masculine gender, are identical for tree and fruit :

l' ananasso pineapple	il limōne lemon
il cedro lime	il pistacchio pistachio nut
il dattero date	il pomo apple
il fico fig	il ribes currant

2. Names of cities, except **il Cairo** 'Cairo'; and of rivers ending in **a**, except **il Niagara**, **il Vōlga**, and a few others.

la Lōira the Loire	il Danubio the Danube
---------------------------	------------------------------

199. Nouns having Two Genders with Different Meanings :

il cārcere imprisonment, prison	la cārcere , oftener le cārceri , prison
il dramma drama	la dramma dram
il fine purpose	la fine (il fine) end
il pianēta planet	la pianēta priest's cope
il prigiōne prisoner	la prigiōne prison
il tēma theme	la tēma fear

a. Some nouns, such as **fōnte** 'spring,' **fōlgore** 'thunderbolt,' **trave** 'beam,' etc., are of common gender without change of meaning.

200. Gender of Names of Animals. a. Of such as change their form with change of gender, those ending in **o** change **o** to **a**, and those in **e** change **e** to **essa**, rarely **a** :

cavallo , cavalla ; horse	gatto , gatta , cat
cignale , cignala , wild boar	leōne , leonēssa , lion
colombo , colomba , dove	lupo , lupa , wolf
elefante , elefantēssa , elephant	pavōne , pavōna , pavonēssa , peacock

1. Irregular are —

cane , cagna , dog	gāmbero , gamberēssa , crawfish
gallo , gallina , cock, hen	and others

2. Defective are —

tōro , vacca	bull, cow
montōne , ariēte ; pēcōra	ram; (sheep), ewe
vērre ; trōia or scrōfa	boar; sow

b. Some of those ending in *e* or *u* are of common gender, and distinguished only by the article.

il serpe, la serpe, serpent

il gru, la gru, crane

c. Others have but one gender for both sexes.

1. Masculine are —

il coniglio rabbit

il serpente serpent

il delfino dolphin

il sōrcio mouse

il luccio pike

il topo rat

lo scarafaggio beetle

il tōrdo thrush

2. Feminine are —

l' āquila eagle

la rōndine swallow

la balēna whale

la scīmmia monkey

la formica ant

la tōrtora turtle-dove

la lucērtola lizard

la vīpera viper

la mōsca fly

la vōlpe fox

la pantera panther

201. Names denoting Sex in Human Beings :

maschio, fēmmīna, male, female

gēnero, nuōra, son-in-law, daughter-in-law

padre, madre, father, mother

cognato, cognata, brother-in-law, sister-in-law; step-brother, step-sister

figlio, figlia, son, daughter

fratello, sorella, brother, sister

nonno, nonna, grandfather, grandmother

patrigno, matrigna, stepfather, stepmother

il nipote, la nipote, grandson, granddaughter; nephew, niece

figliastro, figliastra, stepson, stepdaughter

zio, zia, uncle, aunt

cugino, cugina, cousin

compare, madrina, godfather, godmother

suocero, suocera, father-in-law, mother-in-law

figlioccio, figlioccia, godson, goddaughter

202. Masculines in *a*. The following nouns, though ending in *a*, are of masculine gender :

Il boia 'executioner,' *il duca* 'duke,' *il monarca* 'monarch,' *il poēta* 'poet,' *qualcosa* 'something'; nouns in *-ista* denoting the

professions, sects, etc., when referring to men; **il colera** 'cholera,' **lo scià** 'shah,' **il sofà** 'sofa,' and some other words of foreign origin; **l' enigma** 'enigma,' **il problema** 'problem,' and other words from the Greek in **-ma**; and many geographical names.

203. Feminine Forms of Words Expressing Professions, Rank, or Character.

abate abbot, **abbadessa** *or* **badessa** abbess
 barone baron, **baronessa** baroness
 cameriere waiter, **cameriera** waitress, chambermaid, stewardess
 canōnico canon, **canonichessa** canoness
 cantore singer, **cantante** (*cantatrice*)
 capitano captain, **capitanessa** (*burl.*), captain's wife
 conte count, **contessa** countess
 diavolo devil, **diavolessa**
 dio god, **dēa**, **diva**, goddess
 dottore doctor, learned person, **dottora**, **dottoressa** (*often burl.*)
 duca duke, **duchessa** duchess
 eroe hero, **eroīna** heroine
 fante page, **fantessa** maidservant
 fattore steward, (**fattora**), **fattoressa**, steward's wife
 filōsofo philosopher, **filōsofa** (*burl.*), **filosofessa**
 forestiere foreigner, **forestiera**
 governatore governor, **governatrice**; **governatora** governor's wife
 imperatore emperor, **imperatrice** empress
 istitutore teacher, tutor, **istitutrice** teacher, governess
 marchese marquis, **marchesa** marchioness
 mēdico physician, **medichessa**
 padrone master, **padrona** mistress
 papa pope, **papessa**
 patriarca patriarch, **patriarchessa**
 pittore painter, **pittrice**
 principe prince, **principessa** princess
 priore prior, **priora**, **prioressa**, prioress
 professore professor **professoressa**
 profeta prophet, **profetessa** prophetess
 re king, **regina** queen

sacerdōte priest, sacerdotessa priestess
 scolare scholar, pupil, scolara
 sēvo servant, sēva
 stiratōre launderer, stiratōra, stiratrice laundress
 traditōre traitor, traditōra, traditrice traitress
 uditōre auditor, uditrice

204. The Verb *uscire* 'go out.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *uscire*, *uscendo*, *esco*, *uscirò*, *uscii*, *uscito*

PRESENT INDICATIVE		PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE		IMPERATIVE	
esco	usciamo	esca	usciamo		usciamo
esci	uscite	esca	usciate	esci	uscite
esce	escono	esca	ēscano	esca	ēscano

VOCABULARY

acciaio steel	rame copper
argento silver	Rēno Rhine
fērro iron	scarafaggio beetle
fico fig	Sēna Seine
gallina hen	socialista socialist
gēnero son-in-law	suōcero, -a father-in-law, mother-in-law
gru crane	Tamigi Thames
istitutore, -trice teacher	tēma theme
latta tin	Tēvere Tiber
limōne lemon	traditōre, -tōra traitor, traitress
pēcora sheep	uva grape
nōce walnut-tree	vacca cow
nuōra daughter-in-law	vite grapevine
olmo elm	
oro gold	cōgliere, cogliendo, cōlgo, coglierò,
padrōne landlord, proprietor	cōlsi, cōlto gather
pēro pear-tree	uscire di go out of
pēsko peach-tree	
problēma problem	generalmente usually
quērcia oak	

EXERCISE

I

1. Beetles are usually black. 2. The grape is the fruit of the vine. 3. He has bought himself three cows and some hens. 4. Gold and silver are precious metals. 5. It is said that figs are not gathered from brambles. 6. My father-in-law and mother-in-law, having risen early, left this morning at seven. 7. The Spaniard aimed the gun at the cranes. 8. Grapes are gathered from grapevines, peaches from peach-trees, pears from pear-trees, and walnuts from walnut-trees. 9. His theme was the problem of the socialists. 10. The cows are hungry. 11. What kind of fruit is there on the table? There are figs and lemons. 12. Sheep and cows are usually bought at the village.

II

1. Iron, steel, tin and copper are not precious metals. 2. My son-in-law, having gathered some walnuts and having given us some, has carried the rest home in his basket. 3. As I went out of the house, I saw them returning. 4. At the end of the year 1870 the hostile soldiers came out of Rome. 5. Having gone away before half past ten, I did not hear them talking about it. 6. Hurry, sir, if you wish to arrive before the train leaves. 7. Here are some grapes; let us gather some. 8. I do not doubt the proprietor will permit us to carry some home. 9. Traitors and traitresses are to be punished in whatever places they are found. 10. Elms and oaks are found in America. 11. The Rhine, the Thames, the Seine, and the Tiber are rivers of Europe.

LESSON XXXV

INDEFINITES. THE VERB *SCEGLIERE*

205. Alphabetical List of Indefinites.

- alcuno, -i, -a, -e 'some,' 'any.' (Adj. or pron., used often with **non** to mean 'not any.')
- altrettanto, -i, -a, -e (pron. or adj.) 'as much more,' 'as many more'
- altri (pron.) 'another,' used of persons
- altri . . . altri (pron.) 'some . . . others,' used of persons (also sing.)
- altro (pron.) 'something else,' 'anything else'
- altrui (pron.) 'to, of, *or* for another,' or 'others,' used of persons, and never in the nominative
- certuni, -e (pron.) 'certain ones,' used of persons
- checchè, checchessia (pron.) 'whatever,' 'anything whatever'
- chi . . . chi (pron.) 'some . . . others,' 'one . . . another'
- chicchessia, chiunque (pron.) 'whoever,' 'any one whatever'
- ciascuno, -a, ciascheduno, -a (pron.) 'each one,' used of persons
- cosiffatto, -a, -i, -e (adj.) 'such'
- nessuno, -a, niuno, -a (pron. or adj.) 'not one,' 'no one'
- ogni (adj.) 'every'
- ognuno, -a (pron.) 'every one,' used of persons
- parecchi, -ie (pron. or adj.) 'several'
- per quanto (adv.) 'however'
- i più (pron.) 'most,' 'most people'
- qualche (adj.) 'some'
- qualcheduno, -a, qualcuno, -a (pron.) 'some one'
- qualcosa (pron.) 'something'
- qualsiasi, qualsisia, qualsivoglia (adj.) 'whatever,' 'any whatever,' never used in the nominative
- qualunque (adj.) 'whatever,' 'any whatever'
- tale, -i (adj. or pron.) 'such'
- tale . . . quale 'such . . . as'
- tanto, -i, -a, -e 'so much,' 'so many'
- tanto . . . quanto 'as much . . . as'
- uno, -a (pron.) 'one'; (adj.) 'one,' 'a single'

un chē, un non sō chē 'a something,' 'something or other'

una cōsa 'something,' clear in the speaker's mind

un tale (adj.) 'such a'; (pron.) 'so-and-so,' 'such a one'

l' uno e l' altro 'both'

nē l' uno nē l' altro 'neither'

l' uno o l' altro 'either'

veruno, -a 'no one,' 'any one,' used in negative or doubtful sentences or expressions of doubt

a. An indefinite followed by an adjective requires **di**.

Niente **di** nuovo

Nothing new

Qualcōsa **di** bello

Something beautiful

206. Alcuno, etc., 'some,' 'any.' **a. Alcuno** is either adjective or pronoun. In affirmative sentences its use is confined chiefly to the plural.

Alcuni lo dīcono

Some say so

Hō **alcuni** libri russi

I have **some** Russian books

1. With **non, alcuno** in the singular regularly means 'none,' 'not any,' and follows the noun.

Nella regione devastata dal terremoto, **non** rimane più casa **alcuna**

In the region devastated by the earthquake, there is not a house remaining

2. 'Anything,' 'anybody,' in questions, are translated by the negative indefinites (cf. **210**) **nulla, nessuno**, etc.

È venuto **nessuno**?

Has **any one** come?

Di quest' affare ne sa **nulla**?

Do you know **anything** of this matter?

3. 'Any one else' is **ogni altro**.

Ha fatto più di **ogni altro**

He has done more than **any one** else

4. For the translation of 'any' as pronoun, cf. **124**.

b. Qualcuno, qualcheduno, are singular substantive forms, meaning 'some one,' commonly preferred to **alcuno** in affirmative sentences.

C'è qualcuno che vorrebbe parlarle	There is some one who would like to speak to you
Sceglia qualcuno di questi quadri	Choose some one of these pictures

c. Qualche, certo, are adjectives meaning 'some,' 'certain,' 'a certain.'

1. **Qualche** is used only in the singular, even when the idea is plural.

A quel povero si deve qualche aiuto	That poor man should have some help
Vi stettero qualche giorno	They stayed there some days

2. **Certo** requires **un** in the singular.

Certe abitudini sono da riprovarsi	Certain habits are blameworthy
Un certo Ciceruacchio menò i Romani alla rivolta	A certain Ciceruacchio led the Romans to revolt

d. Qualcosa, meaning 'something,' is always used substantively.

Mi hanno detto che ha qualcosa per me	They tell me you have something for me
---	---

1. When referring to something in the mind, 'something' is translated **una cosa**.

Mi permetta di dirle una cosa	Allow me to tell you something
--------------------------------------	---------------------------------------

2. In an abstract sense, it is translated **un che, un non so che, un certo che**.

Nella sua prosa c'è sempre un che di artificioso	In his prose there is always some- thing artificial
In questo paesaggio trovo un non so che di pittoresco	I find something picturesque in this landscape

e. 'Some . . . others' is translated by **alcuni . . . altri, altri . . . altri, gli uni . . . gli altri, chi . . . chi**, and sometimes **quale . . . quale**. **Chi** and **quale** take the verb in the singular.

Alcuni combattēvano sēmpre, altri la dāvano vinta	Some continued to fight, others gave up
Chi lo compiangeva, chi lo deri- deva	Some pitied him, others laughed at him
Qual fiōr cadea sul lēmbō, qual sulle tēcce biōnde	Some flowers fell on her robe's hem, some on her blond tresses

207. Uno 'one,' etc. *a.* The pronoun 'one,' in the general sense of 'we,' 'you,' 'they,' 'people,' is translated by **uno**, or by the third person of the reflexive (cf. 106, *b*).

Quand' uno si troya in un paēse straniēro, dēve studiarne i cos- tumi	When one is in a foreign country, he should study its customs
Dōve si ēntra ?	Where does one enter ?

b. Before a proper name, **un** is equivalent to **un certo**.

Fu il tēzō triūmviro un Carlo Armellini	The third triumvir was a certain Carlo Armellini
---	--

c. **Uno** sometimes means 'one single,' 'one and the same.'

La pōvera vēcchia non ha un sōldo	The poor old woman has not a (single) penny
Amōre e 'l cōr gentil son una cōsa	Love and the gentle heart are one same thing [ROSSETTI]

i. In the feminine singular it modifies some word like **aziōne** 'action' or **truffa** 'trick,' understood. Cf. 146, *k*, *i*.

Ce ne ha fatta una	He has played us one of his tricks
----------------------------------	---

d. 'The . . . one,' with an adjective between, often takes a demonstrative where it would not be needed in English; the word 'one' is omitted in translation.

Non mi piace quest' ombrellino.	I do not like this parasol. I shall
Prendo quello scuro	take the dark one
Codesta pera non è buona; prenda	This pear is not good; take the
quell' altra	other one
Mi piacciono quelle belle	I like those pretty ones (<i>f.</i>)

e. 'Each one,' 'every one,' are translated by *ciascuno*, *ciascheduno*, and *ognuno*, pronoun. *Ogni*, 'each,' 'every,' is an adjective. For *tutti*, 'everybody,' *tutto*, 'everything,' cf. 160.

Ciascuno di quei principi fu degno	Each of those princes was worthy
d' onore	of honor
Ogni casa aveva un giardinetto	Each house had a little garden
In ogni caso	In any case
Ognuno agisce come crede	Every one acts as he thinks best

1. 'Apiece' is translated by *per uno*, *per ciascuno*.

Diède loro sei lire per uno	He gave them six lire apiece
-----------------------------	------------------------------

f. **Uno** correlative with **altro**.

Saper l' un dell' altro	To know one from the other
L' uno e l' altro	Both
L' un lito e l' altro vidi infin la	Both shores I saw as far as Spain
Spagna	
Nè l' uno nè l' altro	Neither
L' uno o l' altro	Either
Gli uni . . . gli altri	Some . . . others

Used reciprocally, cf. 104, *b*.

1. Except in the phrase *gli uni . . . gli altri*, *uno* has no plural. Its plural is supplied by *alcuni*.

208. Altro 'other,' etc. *a.* **Altri** is a singular pronoun, referring to persons; it means 'another,' 'some one else,' and is often used in contrast.

Nè tu nè altri	Neither you nor any one else
----------------	------------------------------

b. *Altrui* is like *altri*, except that it may have a plural meaning, and is never nominative.

Non si deve bramare i beni *altrui* One should not covet the goods of
others

c. *Altro* as pronoun refers only to things, and means 'something else,' 'anything else,' 'else.'

Ci vuole <i>altro</i> ?	Is something else needed?
Nient' <i>altro</i>	Nothing else
Che <i>altro</i> ?	What else ?
Non desidero <i>altro</i>	I do not wish anything else

1. With the article, or in the plural, it refers to persons.

L' altra è colei che s' ancise amorosa	The other is she who killed her- self for love
Un altro , che forata avea la gola	Another, who had his throat pierced

2. With numbers, *altro* usually precedes.

Altri quattro	Four others
----------------------	--------------------

d. *Altro* as adjective means 'other,' and has some special uses.

1. With *noi* and *voi* it is reënforcing.

Noi altri Russi	We Russians
Voi altri Ingleſi	You English

2. In the partitive construction it means 'some more.'

Desidera dell' altro vino?	Do you wish some more wine?
Dell' altr' acqua calda, per piacere	Some more hot water, please
Le piacciono le susine? Si serva delle altre	Do you like the plums? Take some more

3. Expressions of time.

L' altro anno	Last year
Quest' altra settimana	Next week

4. For its use correlatively and reciprocally, cf. 207, *f*.

5. For its adverbial use, cf. 215, *e*; 216, *f*.

e. Altrettanto, a pronoun referring to things, means 'as much *or* as many more.'

Diède cinque soldi al ragazzo e altrettanti alla sua sorellina	She gave five pennies to the boy, and as many more to his little sister
Legò tre mila lire a lui, e altret- tanto a me	He left three thousand lire to him, and as much more to me
Le auguro cento di questi giorni. Grazie, altrettanto a Lei	I wish you many happy returns of the day. Thank you, the same to you

209. Some More General Indefinites. a. Tale 'such,' tanto 'so much,' etc.

1. **Tale, un tale**, means 'one,' 'a certain one.'

Tal si partì da cantare alleluia	One left off singing alleluia
Quel tal Sandro, autòr d' un ro- manzetto.	A certain Sandro, author of a tale

2. 'Such a' is translated **un tale**.

Non potēvano continuare a com- battere dopo una tale sconfitta	They could not continue fighting after such a defeat
--	--

3. **Tal quale** may mean 'a kind of' or 'like.'

Questi uccelli producono una tal qual armonia che piace	These birds produce a kind of pleasing harmony
Come gli somiglia il suo gemello. È tal quale !	How much his twin brother re- sembles him! He is exactly like

4. **Tale . . . quale** means 'such . . . as,' and in long poetic comparisons **quale** often precedes.

Tal mi fec' io quai son color che stanno, Per non intender quel ch' è lor risposto	I became as those who stand still because of not understanding what is replied to them
Qual è quel cane ch' abbaiano agugna . . . Cotai si fecer quelle facce lorde	Like the dog which barking craves . . . such those foul faces became

5. **Tanto . . . quanto** are similarly correlative, and mean 'as much . . . as.'

Quanto gli prestai, tanto mi restitui	He returned me as much as I lent him
---	---

6. Special uses of **tanto**.

Ai tanti del mese	On such a day of the month
Un tanto la settimana	So much per week
Visitò la Turchia agli ottanta tanti	He visited Turkey in the eighties

b. Chiunque, qualunque, etc., 'whoever,' 'whatever,' 'any whatever,' etc.

1. **Chiunque** and **chicchessia** are pronouns referring to persons; **chicchessia** and **checchessia** are not used in the nominative. **Checchè** is preferred to **checchessia**.

Non lo farò, chiunque me lo consigli	Whoever advises it, I shall not do it
Non lo darei a chicchessia	I should not give it to anybody at all
Checchè avvenga, non abbandoneranno la posizione	Whatever happens, they will not abandon the position

2. **Qualunque, qualsivoglia, and qualsiasi** are adjectives.

Garibaldi ritirandosi da Roma, si sarebbe rifugiato in qualsiasi paesetto	Garibaldi, when retreating from Rome, would have taken refuge in any village whatever
Qualunque ne sia il motivo, è un'azione indegna	Whatever may be its motive, it is an unworthy action

3. **Per quanto** is an adverb, meaning 'however.'

Per quanto il capitano fosse magnanimo, non poté perdonare un tale insulto	However magnanimous the captain might be, he could not forgive such an insult
---	--

c. Cf. 169, h.

210. Negative Indefinites. *a.* **Nessuno, niuno, veruno**, are pronouns or adjectives referring to persons or things. **Nessuno** is the most common.

Nessun erçe fu mai più valoroso di Orlando	No hero was ever braver than Roland
Nessuno ci si mōsse	No one stirred

1. **Nulla, niente**, are pronouns meaning 'nothing.'

Non c' è nulla da mangiare	There is nothing to eat
Non voglio nulla	I wish nothing
Di niente	Not at all, don't mention it

2. When one of these negatives follows the verb, **non** must precede. If the negative precede, **non** is not required.

Non fa niente	Never mind
Non ci si vede niente	There is nothing to be seen
Nessuno era arrivato prima delle sette	No one had arrived before seven
Non c' è nessuno de' miei	Not one of my relatives is here

3. Used absolutely, without verb, these words are negative in meaning.

Chi c' è? Nessuno	Who is there? No one
--------------------------	----------------------

4. Cf. 206, *a*, 1.

211. The Verb *scegliere* 'choose.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **Scēgliere, scegliendo, scēlgo, sceglierò, scēlsi, scēlto**

PRESENT INDICATIVE

scēlgo	scegliamo, scelghiamo
scegli	scegliete
sceglie	scēlgono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

scēlga	scegliamo
scēlga	scegliate
scēlga	scēlgano

VOCABULARY

la carezza	caress	accōrgersi, accōrsi, accōrto	perceive
la chicca	sweetmeat	avvezzare	accustom
la collera	anger	corrēggere, corrēssi, corrētto	correct
la colpa	fault, blame	corrēggersi di un difetto	correct a fault
il difetto	defect, fault		
la fede	faith	durare	last, hold out
i genitori	parents	principiare	begin
il nipotino	little nephew	rimproverare	reprove (<i>rimprōvero</i>)
la pace	peace	riuscire (<i>like</i> uscire)	succeed; <i>non</i>
il rimprōvero	reproof	mi riesce	I can't
il segno	sign	tornar conto	be of advantage
allora	then	alcuno, -i, -a, -e	some, any
dentro di	within, inside of	altrettanto	as much more
dovunque	wherever	nessuno	no, not any, no one
spesso	often	niēte	nothing

EXERCISE

I

DAL GIORNALE DI GIGI

Tutte le volte che ho da fare qualche cosa di nuovo, dico subito dentro di me — Non mi riesce! — e trovo gran fatica a principiare. Ma appena ho cominciato, spesso mi accorgo che quello che mi pareva impossibile è possibilissimo, e che, qualche volta, è anche facile. Ho poco fede nelle mie forze, e voglio correggermi di questo difetto.

Tutti mi rimproverano perchè sono troppo facile a lasciarmi prendere dalla collera. Se tutti mi dicono questo, è segno che deve esser vero. Specialmente la mamma non mi dà mai pace coi suoi rimproveri. Ma la mamma la voglio contentarla, e ora che son grande mi voglio correggere.

Questa è una cosa che non la sa nessuno; ma io la so. Una gran parte di quelle carezze che faccio ai nonni e ai miei genitori,

le faccio perchè mi torna conto. Ma io non ci ho colpa. Mi ci devono avere avvezzato da piccino, e più di tutti mi ci deve avere avvezzato la povera zia Francesca, buon' anima, che mi diceva sempre — Se mi dai un bacio, ti do una chicca. — E io, allora, duravo a dargliene finchè ci eran chicche; ma quando le chicche della zia Francesca eran finite, finivano subito i baci del nipotino Gigi.

II

1. Whenever one has something new to do, one should not say "I can't do it." 2. No one could make me begin it. 3. Do not say it to any one. 4. In this book there is nothing good. 5. My parents gave my little brother three cents, and they gave me as many more. 6. Wherever you go, you will find no one who loves you as they do [like them]. 7. Everybody reproved him for being easily made angry. 8. Has any one spoken of it to you? No one. 9. However bad your defects may be, you can correct them. 10. Do you wish anything else? Nothing else. 11. I had already perceived it last year. 12. I was not speaking of this book, but of the new one. 13. Let us try to correct our faults. 14. Some praised him for accustoming himself to working; others reproved him for not correcting his faults. 15. They will never give you peace as long as you let yourself become angry easily. 16. But it is not your fault. 17. Have you any nuts? Let me give you some more. 18. No, thank you, but I should like some more coffee. 19. Come with us, gentlemen; have you noticed what time it is? 20. However difficult those lessons are, he will have them learned within a few days.

III

L' AUTOMOBILE

Il mio amico Giācomo ha comprato un' automōbile. Siccome non sa ancora troppo bene condurla, gli cāpita di quando in quando qualche malanno. La prima volta ch'è rimasto in panna, fu per mancanza di benzina, il che può succedere anche agli automobilisti

esperti. Un'altra volta una persona sul marciapiede gli fece segno che uno dei copertoni delle ruote era consumato. Era sgonfio. Immediatamente dopo, uno schianto come un tuono lo avvertì che un altro pneumático era scoppiato. Si dovè fermare dieci minuti a pompare. Poi tirò via, sonando la cornetta da svegliare i Sette Dormienti. Poco dopo gli è successo un accidente, di quelli gravi. Fu così: Il mântice, che generalmente lo teneva giù, era stato alzato per la pioggia; perciò non poteva vedere bene come al sōlito. A un tratto s'accorse che un bambino gli traversava la strada proprio davanti. Cercando di evitarlo, dette il frēno, ma il freno, per la prima volta, non andava. Allora cercò di sterzare più presto che poteva, ma nell'eccitamento girò un po' troppo il volante; e l'automobile, che stava in cima alla salita, s'voltò improvvisamente a destra, andando a sbattere su quel po' di muricciuolo all'orlo della strada, il quale cedette, e l'automobile slittò giù fino al fiume. Si fermò per fortuna proprio sull'orlo del torrente, e benchè tutti fossero spaventati da morire, non ci fu nessuna disgrazia.

LESSON XXXVI

ADVERBS. THE VERB VALERE

212. Position of Adverbs. *a.* Rules for position are not very strict, but most adverbs, except **non**, follow the verb.

Non lo trovò

He did not find it

Lo trovò **immediatamente**

He found it immediately

b. An adverb modifying an adjective, another adverb, or a phrase, usually precedes.

È **troppo** difficile

It is too difficult

Riuscì **singularmente** bene

He succeeded singularly well

Viaggiando, **specialmente** con un compagno simpático, se ne gode moltissimo

When one travels, especially with a congenial companion, one has much enjoyment

214. **Adverbs of Manner.** *a.* These are almost all formed by adding **-mente** to the feminine of the adjective.

1. If the feminine of the adjective ends in **-le** or **-re**, the **-e** is dropped before **-mente**.

2. Certain adverbs ending in **-one**, **-oni**, indicate the posture of the body.

b. A few adverbs end in -i or -e; as **altrimenti** 'otherwise,' **bene** 'well,' **volentieri** 'willingly,' etc.

c. Certain adjectives in -o are used as adverbs; as *alto* 'high,' *presto* 'quick,' *sicuro* 'sure,' *sūbito* 'sudden.'

1. Certain others, when so used, continue to agree with their noun. Such are **caro**, **grande**, **mezzo**, **solo**, **tutto**, **primo**, and **ultimo**.

Mezza mōrta	Half dead
Desidero due sole paia	I wish only two pairs
Questa catena l' ho pagata cara	I paid dear for this chain

2. **Bello** is used adverbially along with the past participle.

La roba bell' e fatta	Ready-made goods
Lo scorpione era bell' e morto	The scorpion was good and dead

3. Certain adverbial phrases are used adjectively to modify nouns.

Il piede di dietro	The hind foot
Un uomo per bene	An honorable man
Una cosa da nulla	A trifle

215. Adverbs of Affirmation. *a.* Sì is 'yes' in answer to a question.

Verrà stasera? **Sì** Shall you come this evening? **Yes**

b. *Già* is 'yes' in simple confirmation or agreement.

Piùve a diròtto. *Già* It is pouring. Yes, it is

1. In such confirmatory phrases as 'I think so,' 'I hope so,' 'so' is expressed by *lo* (cf. 100, e, 1).

Lo spero I hope so

c. *Pure* adds emphasis, and is equivalent to 'do,' 'pray do.'

Venga *pure* Do come

d. *Pur troppo* assents with regret, meaning 'only too much,' 'only too well,' 'yes, unfortunately.'

Lo conosce? Pur troppo Do you know him? Only too well

e. The following are emphatic affirmatives :

<i>Altro!</i>	By all means!
<i>Appunto</i>	Exactly
<i>Davvero</i>	It is true. Really?
<i>Certo, sicuro, sì bene</i>	Yes, indeed
<i>Lo credo!</i>	I believe you!

f. *Ma sì* affirms while contradicting.

Non è mai stato in Amērica, credo. Ma sì, più volte You have never been in America, I think. O yes, several times

g. *Altro che* not only answers in the affirmative, but adds something not implied in the question.

Non s'è visto ancora il mēdico? Altro che visto! C'è! Nothing has been seen yet of the doctor? Better than that! He's here!

Conosce quella signorina? Altro che conoscerla! È mia sorella! Do you know that young lady? Rather! She is my sister!

h. *Signora sì* and *Signor no* are equally admissible with *Sì Signora* and *No Signore*, though less usual.

216. Adverbs of Negation. *a.* **Non** immediately precedes the verb, or the object pronoun if there be one.

Non voglio I will not, I refuse

Non lo trovò He did not find it

b. **Non . . . che** means 'not but,' 'only.'

Non ne desidero **che** due I wish **only** two of them

i. In the locutions **non . . . che**, **non . . . mai**, the verb stands between.

Non lo fece **mai** He never did it

Non chiede **che** un po' di pane She asks **only** a bit of bread

c. 'Neither . . . nor' is **nè . . . nè**.

Nè più **nè** meno Neither more nor less

d. **No** is 'no' spoken in reply to a question, and is used instead of **non** in the phrases **o no** 'or not,' **se no** 'if not,' and sometimes in antithetical phrases, where a part only of the proposition is contradicted.

Verrò domani, **o no**? Shall I come to-morrow or not?

Se no, verrò domani l'altro If not, I will come day after to-morrow

Prendo il bianco e il marrone, **ma non** il rosso I'll take the white one and the brown, but not the red one

Vengo volentieri al teatro, **ma in** platea **no** I will go to the theater gladly, but not in the orchestra seats

i. **Di** is required with the adverbs of affirmation or negation in such expressions as the following:

Crede **di no** I think **not**

Rispose **di sì** He said **yes**

e. For the negatives 'nothing,' 'nobody,' etc., cf. **210**.

i. **Niente** is often used adjectively in conversation to mean 'not any.'

Niente frutta, grazie No fruit, thank you

f. The principal adverbs of negation are

no no, not

non not

non . . . mai, non . . . giammai never

non . . . più no longer, never again

non . . . punto, non . . . mica (*contradicting*) not at all

niente affatto nothing at all, not at all

per niente not in the least

tutt' altro by no means, on the contrary

Non lo farò più

I shall never do it again

Non lavora più

He is no longer working

Suo zio non le legò niente affatto

Her uncle left her nothing at all

Ma non c'è nulla, proprio nulla

But there is nothing there, nothing at all

Pensa insomma di farlo? Per niente!

You *are* thinking of doing it after all? Not for anything

Le dà noia se apro la finestra?

Will it disturb you if I open the window? On the contrary, it is

Tutt' altro; ci fa caldo

too warm here

1. **Mai** and **punto**, used absolutely and without verb, have negative value; but **mai** alone in comparative or interrogative sentences means 'ever.'

Le piace questo paesaggio? Punto

Do you like this view? Not at all

Il migliore ch'io abbia mai visto

The best I ever saw

Ha mai visitato la Cina? Mai

Have you **ever** visited China? **Never**

217. Adverbs of Place. *a.* 'Here,' 'there,' etc., when at all emphatic, are expressed by the following adverbs, which are to be carefully distinguished according to whether the place indicated is near the speaker, near the person spoken to, or remote from either.

1. **Near the speaker:** *qua* means 'here,' 'here in this room or place'; *qui* means 'here by me'; *quaggiù*, *quassù*, mean respectively 'down here,' 'up here.'

2. **Near the person addressed**: *costì, costà*, 'there where you are'; *costaggiù* 'down there where you are'; *costassù* 'up there where you are.'

3. **Remote from either**: *là, colà, lì, ivi, quivi*, 'there' (*là* and *colà* being further removed than *lì*); *laggiù* 'down there' and *lassù* 'up there'; *indi, quindi*, 'thence.'

4. **Special uses**: *di qua, quaggiù*, mean 'here below,' 'on this earth'; *di là, costà, quassù*, 'above,' 'in the other world.'

Essere più di là che di qua

To be more dead than alive

Di lì a due giorni

Two days from then

Stare lì lì per far una cosa

To be on the very point of doing
a thing

Essere in là cogli anni

To be well on in years

b. When not emphatic, or when referring to a place already mentioned, 'here,' 'there,' and 'thence' are expressed respectively by *ci, vi, ne* (cf. 126).

1. **Special uses of ci**. *Ci* is used very often with apparent redundancy, as if to reinforce or enrich the meaning of the verb.

Non ci sento niente

I hear nothing

Ci ho due mila lire

I have two thousand lire (in the
house, on my person)

Iddio c'è

God is

c. 'Here is,' 'there is,' when demonstrative, are translated by *ecco* (cf. 100, a); when not demonstrative, by *c'è, ci sono, v'è, vi sono*. *Ecco* answers 'where?' *c'è* etc., 'what?'

Ecco una farfalla!

There is a butterfly

Ci sono tanti olivi sulle colline

There are many olive-trees on the
hillsides

d. *Altrove, altronde*, are adverbs of place meaning 'elsewhere.'

e. *Dove* and *quando* are used correlatively: *dove . . . dove* meaning 'here . . . there,' and *quando . . . quando* 'now . . . now.'

218. Adverbs of Quantity. a. Cf. 160.

b. Troppo is followed by **da** (or **per**) to mean 'too much . . . to.'

È **troppo** buono **da** farlo He is too kind **to** do it

1. Troppo followed by **più** has the meaning of **molto**.

È **troppo** più difficile che non crede It is **much** more difficult than you think

c. 'The more . . . the more' is translated by **più . . . e più**.

Più vò innanzi cogli anni **e** più amo The older I grow the more I love
i giòvani the young

219. Lists of Adverbs and Adverbial Phrases. (Cf. 227.)**a. Adverbs of Manner.**

Adagio	With ease, slowly, softly
Ad alta voce	Aloud
All' aperto, al fresco	In the open
A bell' agio	At ease, conveniently, comfortably
A braccetto	Arm in arm
Alla buona	In a familiar way, after a fashion
Alla carlona	Carelessly
A suo cōmodo	At one's convenience
Alla deriva	Adrift, to leeward
Affatto	Entirely, at all (<i>usually negative</i>)
A galla	Afloat
A gara	In competition
All' improvviso	Unexpectedly
Alla lunga	Long drawn out
A lutto	In mourning
Alla macchia	In secret
A malincuore	Against one's will
Alla meglio	For the best, as best one can
Alla peggio	The worst possible, very badly
Al possibile	The most possible
A quattr' occhi	Tête-à-tête
Alla rinfusa	Helter-skelter; abundantly
A rovescio	Upside down, wrong end to

Alla sfuggita	On the fly, at a glance
Al sōlito, come al sōlito	As usual
A soqquadro	Topsy-turvy
Alla stracca	Listlessly, unwillingly
Alla svelta	Cursorily, hastily
Alla svogliata	Heedlessly, indifferently
All' ūltimo	At last
A un tratto	Suddenly, at once
A vicenda	In turn ; mutually
Da capo	Over again
Da sēnno	In earnest
Di nascosto	Secretly
Di nuovo	Again
Del resto	For the rest, in other respects
Di sōlito	As a rule
Del tutto	Altogether
Forse	Perhaps
In complesso	Everything considered
Indarno	In vain
Infatti	In fact
In fine	In short
In fretta	In haste
In ogni caso	Anyway, in any case
In pūbblico	In public
In tanto	After all, meanwhile
In vano	In vain
Piano	Softly, gently, slowly
Per altro	In other respects, for that matter
Per dispetto	For spite
Sēnz' altro	Without delay ; purely and simply
Sēnza dubbio	Without doubt
Sì e nò	Approximately
Sotto sopra	Upside down, helter-skelter
Sul serio	Seriously, in good earnest
Suo malgrado	In spite of him
Bocconi	Flat on one's face
Carponi	On all fours
Ciondoloni	Dangling

In ginocchioni
 Penzoloni
 Ruzzoloni
 Tastoni

On one's knees
 Hanging
 Head over heels
 Gropingly, feeling one's way

b. Adverbs of Place.

Abbasso
 Accanto
 Al di dentro
 Al di fuori
 A dritto
 All' indietro
 All' in giù
 All' in su
 Da ciascuna parte
 Dappertutto
 Davanti
 Di contro }
 Di faccia }
 Di dentro
 Difilato
 Diritto
 Di fuori
 Di là
 Di qua
 Di qua e di là
 Di sopra
 Di sotto
 Fin dove?
 Fuori di porta
 Giù
 In giù
 Innanzi
 In su
 Intorno
 Per ogni dove
 Qua e là

Downstairs, down
 Next, next door
 Inside
 Outside
 Straight ahead
 Backward
 Downward
 Upward
 On each side
 Everywhere
 Ahead, in front
 Opposite
 Inside
 Straight ahead without stopping
 Straight ahead
 Outside
 On that side, that way
 On this side, this way
 On both sides
 Upstairs, above
 Below, down
 How far?
 Outside the walls
 Down, below
 Downward
 Ahead
 Upward
 Around
 Everywhere
 Here and there

Su	Up, above, upstairs
Su e giù	Up and down
Su per giù	Roughly, approximately

c. Adverbs of Time.

Alla fine	At last
A giorni	At times
Al giorno di oggi	Nowadays
A momenti	In a moment, presently
Appena	No sooner, hardly
A tempo	On time
A volte	At times, sometimes
Da mane a sera	From morning till night
Da oggi in poi	Henceforth, from now on
Da qui innanzi	
D'ora innanzi	
Da qui ad un mese	A month from now
Da un momento all'altro	At any moment
Da un pezzo	For some time past
Dianzi	Before, a little while ago
Di buon'ora	Early
Di quando in quando	Now and then
Di rado	Seldom
Di recente	Recently
Delle volte	Sometimes
Fino a quando?	Until when?
Fin dal principio	From the first
Fra breve	In a little while
Fra giorni	In a few days
Fra quanto?	How soon?
In giornata	In the course of the day
In men che non si dice	In no time
In oggi	Nowadays
In principio	At first
In quel mentre, in questo mentre	In the meanwhile
In seguito	Afterwards, in the future
In un batter d'occhio	In a flash
Nel frattempo	Meanwhile

Ogni quanto?	How often?
Ogni tanto	Every so often
Ora ora	Just now
Per ora	For the present
Per tempo	Early
Più qua	Later
Poco' anzi	A little while ago
Prima o poi	Sooner or later
Quanto prima	As soon as possible
Su due piedi	Then and there, on the instant
Sull' ultimo	At the last moment
Talvolta	Sometimes
Tempo fa	A while ago
Tempo indietro	Before this, in the past, some time ago
Una volta ogni tanto	Once every so often

220. The Verb *valere* 'be worth.'

PRINCIPAL PARTS: *valere, valendo, valgo, varrò, valsei, valuto or valso*

PRESENT INDICATIVE

valgo	valiamo, valghiamo
vali	valetè
vale	vàlgono

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE

valga (vaglia)	valghiamo (vagliamo)
valga (vaglia)	valghiate (vagliate)
valga (vaglia)	vàlgano (vagliano)

VOCABULARY

il bōia executioner	giurare swear
Ciro Cyrus	impiccare hang
la fedeltà fidelity	intravedere glimpse
Francesco Francis	salvare save
l'ingegno <i>m.</i> talent	sbarrazzare rid, disembarass
il marito husband	tradire betray
il mārtere martyr	valersi di avail oneself of
la māschera mask	abbasso down, downstairs
il mostro monster	alla fine at last
scellerato criminal, wicked	all' improvviso suddenly, unexpectedly
buttare throw away	

a lutto in mourning	di nuovo again, once more
a momenti in a moment	di rado seldom
a quattr'occhi tête-à-tête	di recente recently
a tempo on time	fin dal principio from the beginning
bocconi flat on one's face	fin dove? how far?
carponi on all fours	ginocchioni on one's knees
da mane a sera from morning till night	infatti in fact
dappertutto everywhere	in ogni caso in any case
di nascosto secretly	quanto prima as soon as possible
	sul serio seriously

EXERCISE

I

CIRO MENOTTI

Ecco un' altra vittima illustre della tirannia straniera, un altro martire, tradito, imprigionato e impiccato da quel ridicolo mostro che fu Francesco IV, duca di Modena. La sua elevata posizione sociale, il suo ingegno, il suo cuore, l'essere marito e padre, nulla gli valse per salvarlo. Conoscendo quanto fosse ambizioso quel Duca scellerato, gli fece intravedere la possibilità, se si fosse messo alla testa del movimento rivoluzionario, di diventar lui il Re della nuova Italia. E il Duca si mise alla testa dei rivoluzionari modenesi e giurò fedeltà. Ma questo forse egli fece per conoscer meglio gli uomini dei quali avrebbe dovuto sbarazzarsi. Infatti, colto il momento opportuno, buttò via la maschera, li fece tutti arrestare, e nel medesimo tempo scrisse al Governatore austriaco di Reggio: *Mandatemi il boia.*

II

1. Duke Francis availed himself of the mask of fidelity, in order to rid himself of the revolutionists. 2. The wicked man sought secretly, from morning till night, to rid himself of them. 3. At last, suddenly, he had them taken, and had the executioner come

as soon as possible. 4. He had the martyrs of Italian independence hanged, and many Italian women dressed once more in mourning. 5. After the battle the soldiers were found not seldom on their knees, on all fours, or flat on their faces. 6. One easily sees that you have studied seriously. 7. Was Duke Francis of Modena born in 1779? Yes. 8. Here it is said that Prince Louis is a monster; what do they say of him up there where you are? 9. How far shall we follow this road before turning to the left? 10. In any case we must start early, because it has rained recently. 11. Are you too tired to accompany me? On the contrary, I should like to go. 12. *Ciro Menotti* died a martyr. Yes. 13. Do you like Mrs. C.? Not at all. She is not at all congenial. 14. Shall we take a walk in the public gardens? By all means!

LESSON XXXVII

PREPOSITIONS

221. The Simple Prepositions. *a*. The simple prepositions *a*, *con*, *da*, *di*, *in*, and *per* should as a rule be repeated before every noun or pronoun which they govern.

Ne ha dato *a* Giovanni e *a* Luigi
Parlarono *di* te e *di* me

He gave some to John and Louis
They spoke of you and me

b. The prepositions *contro*, *dentro*, *dopo*, *oltre*, *presso*, *senza*, *sopra*, *sotto*, *su*, *verso*, and sometimes *fra*, take *di* before a personal pronoun.

Non parta *senza di* me
Arrivai *dopo di* lui

Do not leave without me
I arrived after him

222. Compound Prepositions. The great majority of Italian prepositions are compound, being composed usually of an

adverb and a preposition, but sometimes of two prepositions together: *fuori di* 'outside,' *intorno a* 'around.'

Su per le vie

Up and down the streets

Al di dentro

Inside

a. The prepositions compounded with **a**, when governing a pronoun, drop **a**; the pronoun (cf. 136, **a**) becomes conjunctive in the dative case.

Mi vidi innanzi una sentinella (*not*
vidi innanzi **a me**)

I saw **in front of me** a sentinel

Gli andai incontro (*not* incontro
a lui)

I went **to meet him**

Due battaglioni gli vengono sopra
Cadēvagli poco discosto Torquato
Ci fa segno di andargli dietro

Two battalions came **upon him**

Torquato fell **not far from him**

He makes a sign to us to **follow him**

b. **Lungi**, **lontano**, **discosto**, meaning 'far,' which usually are compounded with **da**, take **di** before an adverb.

Lungi di qui

Far from here

Lontano di là

Far from there

But

Lontano dal centro

Far from the center

223. The Preposition with Adjectives. **a.** Many adjectives take **di** before a noun of material, characteristic, etc.

Una catinella piena **d'** acqua

A basin full **of** water

I monti neri **di** pini

The mountains black **with** pines

Il sentiero ingombro **di** sassi

The path cumbered **with** stones

Others, which would not take 'of' in English, are

abbondante (**di**) abundant (**in**)

pōvero (**di**) poor (**in**)

ammalato (**di**) ill (**with**)

ricco (**di**) rich (**in**)

contento } (**di**) contented (**with**)

soddisfatto (**di**) satisfied (**with**)

pago

vestito (**di**) clothed (**in**)

b. Many, such as *fedele* 'loyal,' *pericoloso* 'dangerous,' *pronto* 'ready,' *simile* 'similar,' *utile* 'useful,' take **a**, as their English equivalents 'to.'

c. A few, such as *alieno* 'foreign,' 'averse (to),' *diverso* 'different (from),' *indipendente* 'independent (of),' take **da**.

224. The Preposition with Verbs. **a.** For the use of prepositions before infinitives, cf. 174.

b. Many verbs which in English are transitive, in Italian require a preposition before their object, and the reverse is equally true. Those verbs which take **a** take the conjunctive in the dative; when the object is a thing, the pronoun is **ci**. **Ne** is used as the pronoun object of the verbs that take **di**.

Ubbidisce al padre	She obeys her father
Il principe successe al re	The prince succeeded the king
Giocare alla pallacorda	To play tennis
Se ne accorse subito	He perceived it immediately
Ci devo rinunciare	I must give it up
Cambierà d' opinione	He will change his mind
Domandi a Margherita	Ask Margaret
Lo cerco	I am looking for it
La guardano	They are looking at her
Ascoltano la musica	They are listening to the music
Non lo ammette	It does not admit of it
Ho sognato te	I dreamed of you

1. Sometimes the preposition is merely different.

Domandano di Lei	They are asking for you
Pensare a una cosa	To think of a thing
Ci penso	I am thinking of it
Ridere di una cosa	To laugh at a thing
Ne ridēvano tanto	They laughed at it a great deal

225. Compound Nouns. English compound nouns are usually translated by means of a prepositional phrase.

a. If the modifying member of the compound be merely descriptive, the preposition is **di**, sometimes **a**.

biglietto di vīṣita	visiting-card
gallerīa di cuadri	picture-gallery
libro di scuḡla	schoolbook
libro di tēsto	textbook
a prōva di bōmba	bomb-proof
orologio a sveglia	alarm clock
schicppo a due canne	double-barreled gun

b. If it indicates means, the preposition is **a**.

barca a vėla	sailboat
mācchina a vapore	steam-engine

c. If it indicates purpose, the preposition is **da**.

cani da caccia	hunting-dogs
tazza da caffè. (But 'tazza di caffè' is 'cup of coffee')	coffee-cup
mācchina da cucire	sewing-machine
carta da lēttēre	letter-paper
servizio da tē	tea-service

d. For the formation and pluralizing of Italian compound nouns, cf. 181.

226. List of Prepositions. **a.** English-Italian.

about, approximately	circa , prēso a pōco
about, around	intorno a , dintorno a , attorno a , per
about, concerning	di
above	sopra
according to	secondo
across	a traverso
after	dopo ; <i>before an infinitive</i> dopo di
against	contra , contro
along	lungo
among	fra , tra
as far as	fino a , sino a

as for *per*, *in quanto a*
 as to *in riguardo a*, *in rispetto a*
 at *a*
 at the rate of *a ragione di*
 because of *a causa di*, *a motivo di*, *per motivo di*, *a ragione di*
 before, in front of *davanti a*, *innanzi*
 before (*time*) *prima di*, *innanzi*
 behind *dietro*
 below, beneath *sotto*
 beside, besides, in addition to *oltre (a or di)*
 beside, next to *accanto a*
 between *fra*, *tra*
 beyond *oltre*, *al di là di*, *di là da*
 by (*agent*) *da*
 by (*instrument or means*) *di*
 by, beside *accanto a*
 by dint of *a forza di*
 by means of *per mezzo di*
 during *durante*
 except *eccetto*, *fuori di*, *tranne*
 for *per*
 for (*with measure of time*) *da*
 from *da*
 from (*used of abstract things*, 'from that time,' 'from the beginning')
 fin da
 in *in*; *after a superlative di or fra*
 inside of *dentro di*
 instead of *invece di*
 in the midst of *in mezzo a*
 into *in*
 near *vicino a*, *presso a*
 of *di*
 on *su (sur)*, *sopra*
 on this side of *al di qua di*
 on the other side of *al di là di*
 opposite to *dirimpetto a*, *in faccia a*
 outside of *fuori di*
 over *sopra*

through *per, attraverso*

to *a*; *before the name of a country in*; *before that of a person da, a*

toward *verso*

under *sotto*

until *fino a, sino a*

with *con*

within, inside of *dentro (di or a)*

within, in the course of (*time*) *fra*

without *senza*

without, outside of *fuori di*

b. Italian-English.

a, ad at, to

a beneficio di for the benefit of

a causa di because of

accanto a }
accosto a } beside, next to

addosso a on, on top of, on the back of

a dispetto di in spite of

ad onore di in honor of

ad onta di in spite of

a favore di in favor of

a forza di by dint of

al di là di beyond

al di qua di on this side of

allato a by the side of

all' infuori di outside of

a malgrado di notwithstanding

appetto a facing, opposite

appiè di at the foot of

a prò di to the advantage of

a ragione di because of; at the rate of

attorno a around, round about

attraverso a across, through

con with

contra, contro (a or di) against

da by, from

davanti a before, in front of

dentro a (*or di*) within, inside of
 di of
 dietro (a *or di*) behind
 di là da on the other side of
 dinanzi a in front of
 dintorno a around
 di qua da on this side of
 dirimpetto a opposite, facing
 discosto a away from
 dopo, dopo di after
 durante during
 eccetto except
 entro a within (*time*)
 fin da from (*time*)
 fino a until, up to
 fra between, among; within (*time*)
 fuori di outside of
 giusta according to, conformably to
 in in, into
 in cambio di in exchange for
 in capo a (*di*) at the end of, at the head of
 in cima a at the summit of
 incontro a against
 in faccia a opposite, facing
 in fondo a at the end of, at the back of, at the bottom of
 in luogo di instead of
 in mezzo a in the midst of
 innanzi a in front of
 in quanto a as to
 in riguardo a }
 in rispetto a } with respect to
 insieme a (*con*) together with
 intorno a around
 invece di instead of
 lontano da (*di*) far from
 lungi da (*di*) far from
 lungo along
 malgrado in spite of

mediante by means of
mercè thanks to
oltre a beyond
per through, for
per mezzo di by means of
per motivo di because of
presso a near
prima di before (*time*)
rasente a close to, grazing
salvo except

secondo according to
senza without
sino a up to
sopra (a) above
sotto (a) below
su (sur) on
tra between, among
tranne except
verso towards
vicino a near

227. Idiomatic Use of Prepositions. The correct use of prepositions is one of the most delicate and difficult things in the study of any foreign language. The uses of a given preposition overlap, and it is not easy to determine the limits of each. 'To' and 'from,' for example, may each be translated variously, according to the shade of meaning, by *a*, *di*, or *da*. No rules can be formulated in this matter, practice and observation being the only guides. A careful reading and rereading of the examples assembled below will, however, show which is the preposition to be used in a good many typical cases.

a. Phrases with *a*, meaning 'at,' 'by,' 'from,' 'in,' 'of,' 'on,' 'to,' 'with,' 'within.'

A bocca aperta

A bordo

Al buio

A capo chino

A che cosa pensa?

Al chiaro di luna

A contanti

A cottimo

A danaro sonante

Alla destra, alla sinistra

A due per due

With open mouth

On board

In the dark

With bowed head

Of what are you thinking?

By moonlight

In cash

By the piece, piecework

In cash

To the right, to the left

Two by two

A due per volta	Two at a time
A giornata	By the day
Alla giornata, vivere	To live from day to day, from hand to mouth
All' ingrosso	At wholesale
A macchina	By machine
A mano	By hand
Al mare	By the sea
A mente	By heart
A migliaia	By thousands
A minuto	At retail
A modo suo	In one's own way
A nolo, prēndere <i>or</i> dare	To rent <i>or</i> let
A olio	In oils
A ora	By the hour
A orecchio	By ear
Alla pioggia	In the rain
A portata di mano	Within reach of one's hand
A posta	On purpose
A che pro?	To what end?
Al sole	In the sun
A volo	On the wing
A volta di corriere	By return mail
La morte lo rapiva alla famiglia	Death took him from his family
La riconosco alla voce, al color dei capelli	I recognize her by her voice, by the color of her hair
L'ho sentito dire a degli altri	I have heard it said by others
Ai tempi di cui parlo	At the time of which I am speaking
La minestra sembra buona all'odore	The soup seems good by the odor of it

b. Phrases with **da**, meaning 'as,' 'at,' 'at the house of,' 'by,' 'characteristic of,' 'for,' 'from,' 'like,' 'on,' 'such as to,' 'to,' or 'with.'

Da padre	Like a father
Dalla parte nostra	On our side
Lettere da casa	Letters from home

Materiale da costruzione	Construction materials
Vini da pasto	Table wines
Ha una famiglia da mantenere	He has a family to maintain
Vede il bambino dai capelli ricciuti?	Do you see the child with curly hair?
Dimora da nostro cugino	He lives at our cousin's
Passi dalla posta	Stop at the post office
Non vuol essere da meno degli altri	He does not wish to be inferior to others
Si crede da più degli altri	He thinks himself superior to others
La chiesa ha tutto da guadagnare, nulla da perdere	The church has everything to gain and nothing to lose
Non dipende da lui	It does not depend on him
Fa da interprete	He acts as interpreter
Abbiamo sostenuto da soli una dura guerra	We have carried on by ourselves a hard war
Non è da dimenticare	It is not to be forgotten
È organizzato in modo da stimolare le energie individue	It is organized in a manner to stimulate individual efforts
Non sembra cosa da vergognarsi	It does not seem to be a thing to be ashamed of
Lo guardano dall' alto in basso	They look down on him
Va da sé	It goes without saying
Non mi sento da tanto	I do not feel equal to so much
Non è da tutti	Not every one is capable of it
Dei francobolli da dieci centesimi	Some ten-centime postage stamps

c. Phrases with **di**, meaning 'at,' 'by,' 'from,' 'in,' 'of,' 'to,' or 'with.'

Di corsa	At a run, on the run
Di giorno, di notte	By day, by night
Di giorno in giorno	From day to day
D' estate	In summer
Di gennaio	In January
Fuori d' uso	Out of date
Più lungo di due metri	Longer by two meters
Prendere di mira	To take aim at
Di seconda mano	At second hand

La strada **di** Firenze
 Rideva **di** gioia
 Fu punito **di** morte
 Che facesti **delle** forbici?

The road **to** Florence
 She laughed **for** joy
 He was punished **with** death
 What did you do **with** the scissors?

d. Phrases with **in**, **per**, and **su**.

In capelli	Bare-headed
In casa	At home
In chiesa	To church
In mare	At sea
In punta di piedi	On tiptoe
Andare in Francia	To go to France
Tenere in poco conto	To consider of small importance
Per mare, per terra	By land, by sea
Per la posta	By mail
Per la strada	In the street, on the way
Lo sceglie per amico	He chooses him as a friend
Sui libri, sui giornali	In books, in the newspapers
Tre metri su sei	Three meters by six
Su misura	To order
Due su tre	Two out of three
La camera guarda sul davanti	The room is on the front

1. Notice that 'to' before the name of a person is **da** (or **a**); before that of a country, **in**; and before that of any other place, **a**.

Va da Maria, in Italia, alla posta	He goes to Mary's , to Italy, to the post-office
Va a Maria	He goes to Mary

2. 'From,' with a word referring to a place, is **di** when the limits of the place are more strictly conceived, otherwise **da**. If the article is present, **da** is required.

Esce di chiesa	He is coming out of church
Vengo da chiesa	I am coming from church
Viene di Firenze	He comes from Florence (from within the very walls)
Viene da Firenze	He comes from Florence, or its vicinity

Morì di fame, **dalla** fame

He died **from** hunger

Viene di Germania *or* **da** Germania

He comes **from** Germany

But

Viene dall' Alta Bretagna

He comes **from** Upper Brittany

(because the modifying word requires the article, and the article requires **da**).

VOCABULARY

l' ambizione *f.* ambition

Aristotile Aristotle

il duomo cathedral

la gōndola gondola

il lago lake

l' operaio *m.* workman

la parte side, share

il piattino da tazza saucer

il remo oar

la sarta dressmaker

la scala a chiocciola winding stair

la scala a piuoli ladder

lo spedale hospital

il tè tea

l' unità *f.* union, unity

adriatico Adriatic

drammatico dramatic

fino fine

occidentale western, west

pieno full

cadere, cadrò, caddi, caduto fall

ridere, risi, riso laugh

salire, salgo (salghiamo), salii *or*

salsi, salito climb, go up

addosso a on the back of, on the top of

dentro di within, inside of

dietro a behind

di là da beyond, on the other side of

dinanzi a before, in front of

di qua da on this side of

disosto a away from

fin da from (time)

fino a up to, until

in faccia a opposite

in fondo a at the back of, at the bottom of, at the end of

in mezzo a in the middle of

lontano da far from

a capo chino with bowed head

a contanti in cash

a cōttimo by the piece

a giornata by the day

a mano by hand

al mare by the sea

di seconda mano at second hand

in mare at sea

indarno in vain

EXERCISE

I

1. Bring me a teacup, child, and two saucers. 2. They both work : she has a sewing-machine and works at home, and he works by the day at the baker's. 3. The Spaniard was coming behind us, with his head bowed. 4. See how fine this lace is ! It is made by hand. 5. They are all against me. 6. Where is the cathedral ? We were near it just now. Now we are two miles away from it. 7. Are we far from the walls ? No, the walls are not far from here. 8. They will not be able to do without us. 9. At first the Italians dreamed in vain of independence and unity. 10. You will arrive after us. 11. His theme was the dramatic unities of Aristotle. 12. Winding stairs are easier to climb than ladders. 13. Here there is nothing to sell. 14. Sailboats, steamboats and rowboats were following the gondolas. 15. Who are the gentleman with the white hair and the lady with the blue eyes ? 16. The soldiers were falling on top of us. 17. On which side of the lake do you live ? 18. We live on the other side of the lake. 19. I prefer to live on this side of it. 20. Are you acquainted with the hospital for children ? Our house is opposite it. 21. How long shall you stay ? From the first of April to the eleventh of May. 22. The dress-maker is in the middle of the city, at the end of Via Roma. 23. By dint of money one can do much.

II

1. They live outside the gates. I thought they lived inside. 2. As we were coming out of church, they passed us, coming from home. 3. We spent two months by the sea, near one of the Adriatic ports. 4. That is a thing to remember. 5. We were not able to have the criminal imprisoned. 6. I bought these books at second hand ; I shall pay for them to-morrow in cash. 7. Wait for us inside the church. 8. Children obey their parents. 9. Come

to our house, all of you, at twenty minutes before five. 10. He spoke these terrible words before her and me. 11. Do not look at these pictures; they are ugly. 12. He will change his mind and renounce his ambitions. 13. Instead of sending it to us now, he will bring it to us when he comes to Florence. 14. Those workmen are working by the piece. 15. Look for us outside the cathedral, on the west side. 16. The lakes are full of water at this season. 17. The prisoner stood before him. 18. You cannot do without it. 19. They were laughing at us. 20. We were two weeks at sea. 21. I have received by mail some letters from home. 22. Some ladies are here who are asking for you. 23. You cannot give it up. 24. We always spend a month by the sea in summer.

DIALOGO

DALLA MODISTA

— Vuol accompagnarmi dalla modista?

— Volentieri. Dove sta?

— Vicino, a due passi. Nella prima via a destra, numero 20.

— Già vedo il suo cartello: *Sorelle Chiarini. Cappelli da Signore*. Entriamo.

— Buon giorno, Signore. Che cosa mi comandano?

— Io non voglio niente, ma questa signora desidera un cappello da viaggio. Non è pratica di Firenze e le ho detto che Lei la servirà bene.

— Grazie, Signora. Proverò di meritare la Sua raccomandazione.

— Ci faccia vedere dei figurini.

— Siamo a mezza stagione. Lo desidera di paglia o di feltro?

— Di feltro, di forma piccola.

— Le mostrerò prima dei fondini. Eccone uno. Proviamolo.

— Non mi piace. La tesa è troppo larga e il capino troppo tondo. Mi stringe alla fronte, mi darà mal di testa.

— Questo Le starebbe bene, mi pare.

— Mi sta bene, davvero. Solo sarebbe un po' sfacciato per il colore. Per il viaggio ci vuole qualcosa di più modesto.

• — Ecco la stessa forma di un colore più scuro.

— Benissimo. E la guarnizione?

— Per guarnizione, Signora, io direi un fiocco di nastro di seta nera, ovvero una piccola fantasia. Con questa forma non sta bene la piuma.

— Preferisco il fiocco. Quando sarà finito?

— Per domani.

— Vabbene. Badi di non mancare, io parto alle sette della mattina seguente.

— Non abbia paura. L'avrà senza fallo. A rivederla, Signora.

LESSON XXXVIII

AUGMENTATIVES AND DIMINUTIVES

228. Augmentatives and Diminutives. Terminations modifying the meaning of nouns and adjectives are very common in Italian, and with nouns may take the place of the corresponding adjective at the will of the speaker, unless the idea of size is to be emphasized. These terminations are augmentative or diminutive, caressing or disparaging, most diminutives combining with the idea of small size that of affection or disparagement.

a. The most important augmentatives are *-one*, *-a*, *-otto*, and *-occio*.

1. *-One* means 'very large,' and it may be masculine even when added to a feminine noun; but it has a feminine form in adjectives,

abstract nouns, and those describing persons as to age or human relationship.

Una donna ; un donnone (<i>burl.</i>)	A woman ; an enormous woman
Un uomo ; un omone	A man ; a large man
Una strada ; uno stradone	A road ; a highway
Una figliuola ; una figliolona	A little daughter ; a tall, or overgrown, little daughter
Una vecchia ; una vecchiona	An old woman ; a very tall old woman

2. **-Otto**, **-occio**, mean 'rather large' with nouns, and with adjectives modify the meaning like 'rather.' With names of animals, **-otto** is a diminutive meaning the young of the species.

Una casa ; un casotto	A house ; a somewhat large house
Grasso ; grassotto <i>or</i> grassoccio	Fat ; plump
La tigre ; il tigrotto	The tiger ; the tiger's cub

b. The most important diminutives are **-ino** (**-cino**, **-icino**, **-olino**), meaning diminutiveness, charm, and affection ; **-etto** and **-ello** (**-cello**, **-erello**, **-icello**), implying compassion or indulgence in addition to the idea of small size ; **-uccio**, **-uzzo**, **-uzzolo**, **-uolo** (**-olo**), which imply endearment when applied to persons and disparagement when applied to things ; and **-accio**, **-astro**, and **-azzo**, which are terms of unqualified dislike and disparagement.

La mano ; la manina	The hand ; the pretty little hand
La povera ; la poverina	The poor woman ; the poor dear woman, the poor thing
La casa ; la casuccia	The house ; the poor little house
La viola ; il violino	The viol ; the violin
Il figlio ; il figliuolo	The son ; the young son
Cantare ; cantarellare	To sing ; to warble
Bello ; bellino	Beautiful ; pretty
Caro ; carino	Dear ; charming
Un mēdico ; un medicastro	A doctor ; a poor, unskillful doctor

Il cavallo; il cavallaccio

The horse; the bad-tempered,
wretched horse

L' āsino; l' asinello

The donkey; the small, or young,
donkey

229. Rules of Formation. These terminations cannot be used indiscriminately, but must be chosen in accordance with precedent and euphony. The ear is a sufficient guide in this matter to the Italian, but the foreigner must use great discretion and will find it safest to confine himself to forms he has met with.

a. If the normal ending of a word chance to be one of these terminations, then not that one but some other must be chosen as diminutive or augmentative.

Il ruscello; il ruscelletto

The brook; the small brook

L' uccello; l' uccellino

The bird; the young bird

La cugina; la cuginetta

The cousin; the attractive little
cousin

b. If the word end in **-one**, the terminations **-one**, **-ino**, and **-ello** become respectively **-cione**, **-cino**, and **-cello**.

Il bastone; il bastoncione

The stick; the great stick

Il padrone; il padroncino

The master; the young master

Il violone; il violoncello

The bass viol; the violoncello

c. These terminations may be combined.

Un pochino, un pochettino

A little bit

Un figliuolo; un figliolino

A little son; a dear little son

d. The augmentative or diminutive sometimes loses its character of termination, and the modification becomes a permanent new word.

L' acqua; l' acquerello

Water; the water-color

La suora; la sorella

The nun; the sister

Il frate; il fratello

The friar; the brother

Il cavallo; il cavalletto

The horse; the saw-horse or easel

VOCABULARY

il bastone cane, stick	grasso fat
il cane dog	ignorante ignorant
la facoltà division of university	sapiente wise, sapient
il salotto sitting-room	annoverare enumerate, count
la scala stairs	porgere, porsi, porto hold out
lo scalino step of stair	presumere, presunsi, presunto as- sume
Tommaso Thomas	oramai now, in view of this
l' università <i>f.</i> university	in salvo in safety

EXERCISE

I

1. In Italia lo studio della medicina dura sei anni; a New York, tre o, al più, quattro. 2. Quali sapientoni di medici devono uscire dalle università americane! 3. Ma in Italia i due primi anni della Facoltà medica sono esclusivamente dedicati allo studio delle scienze naturali. 4. Nelle università americane, invece, si presume che il giovane che vuole entrare in una Facoltà di medicina abbia già di queste materie quelle nozioni che oramai fanno quasi parte della cultura generale. 5. In Italia non trovate una cittaduzza di diecimila abitanti che non abbia l'onore di annoverare entro le sue mura qualche dozzina di avvocatucci e di medicastri. 6. La famiglia reale ha dovuto fuggire, per mettere in salvo i principini. 7. Un grand' artista fiorentino, il quale morì giovane, è conosciuto ai pōsteri sotto il nome di Masaccio, cioè, Cattivo Tommaso! 8. Non si può confrontare la mia casuccia con quel palazzone! 9. Come sta, amico mio? Benone! 10. I canini giuocano coi gattini. 11. Ho comprato qualche cosuccia per la bambina.

II

1. As one enters the hall, there is a stairway which leads upstairs to the drawing-room, with a sitting-room next it. 2. The steps of the stairs are rather high. 3. The young man has a cane, and

his little brother has a little cane. 4. Her father is fat, and she is already plump. 5. We shall take the big dog with us, and leave the puppies at home. 6. Unskillful poets are not to be praised. 7. The little peasant boy carries a great stick. 8. These horrid big books are heavy to carry. 9. She has small hands. 10. My little son, you will one day be a big man like me. 11. We live near the great gate. 12. The baby put out its little hands to us. 13. In the Italian universities are found many students.

DIALOGO

SI FANNO LE COMPRE

— Vuol venire con me fino al centro? Ho tante commissioni da fare.

— Volentieri.

— Strada facendo, ci fermeremo dal gioielliere, dove ho lasciato il mio orologio per farlo riparare. Non va bene. Un giorno va troppo avanti, un altro giorno troppo indietro. Non va mai giusto. In questo momento fa cinque minuti il giorno.

— Anch' io voglio andarci. Devo lasciare il mio fermaglio da raccomandare. Non si chiude bene, e la pietra non è incassata a dovere.

— Poi andremo dal merciaio, dove ho bisogno di comprare tante cosine. Prima vorrei un metro di seta uguale a questo campione. Poi occorre tutta la roba da cucire, per un astuccio da viaggio che voglio preparare per un' amica. Comprerò un paio di forbicini, degli aghi di diverse grossezze, dei rocchetti di cotone e di seta, un ditale, e degli spilli e dei ganci. È tanto comodo viaggiando di poter trovare tutto l' occorrente in caso di bisogno.

— Al ritorno passiamo dal cartolaio, per prendere della carta protocollo della quale mi servo per copiare.

— Io ho bisogno dell' inchiostro per la penna a serbatoio, della carta da lettere, e della cartasuga.

— La carta come la compra? Sciolta o in scatola?

— Sempre sciolta. Non mi piace quella in scatola; ce ne danno meno, e non è sempre di buon gusto. Mi occorre anche un pacchetto di buste assortite colla carta, e non ci sarà altro da fare.

LESSON XXXIX

CONJUNCTIONS AND INTERJECTIONS

230. Conjunctions. The conjunctions, like the prepositions, are frequently compound. The following lists are offered for ready reference in translation. The Italian-English list is much the longer, the English-Italian being confined to the more common conjunctions which the student will find useful. Those which require the subjunctive are indicated.

a. List of Conjunctions, English-Italian.

after *dopo che*

also *anche, pure*

although *benchè, sebbene (w. subj.)*

and *e*

as, since *poichè, siccome*

as (*after tanto*) *quanto*; (*after tale*) *quale*; (*after così*) *come*

as if *come se, quasi, quasi che (w. subj.)*

as fast as *via via che*

as long as *tanto che, fintantochè*

as well as *come anco*

because *perchè, perciocchè*

before *avanti che, prima che (w. subj.)*

both . . . and *e . . . e*

but *ma*; but if *che se*

but rather, but indeed *bensi*

either . . . or *o . . . o*

even if *anche se; ancorchè, quando anche (w. subj.)*

except that **se non che, tranne che** (*w. subj.*)
 for **chè, poichè**
 granting that **dato che, sempre che** (*w. subj.*)
 however, nevertheless **però, pure, tuttavia**
 however (*before adj. or adv.*) **per quanto, quantunque** (*w. subj.*)
 if **se**
 if only **solo che, purchè** (*w. subj.*)
 in case **caso mai, nel caso che** (*w. subj.*)
 in order that **acciocchè, affinché, perchè** (*w. subj.*)
 in spite of the fact that **malgrado che** (*w. subj.*)
 much less **non che** (*w. subj.*)
 neither . . . nor **nè . . . nè**
 nevertheless **però, tuttavia, nondimeno, ciò non ostante**
 nor . . . either **nemmeno, neppure**
 nor even **neanche, neppure**
 not to say . . . but even **non che . . . ma**
 notwithstanding that **nonostante che, malgrado che** (*w. subj.*)
 on condition that **a patto che, a condizione che** (*w. subj.*)
 or **o**
 or else **oppure, ossia** (*equivalence*), **ovvero** (*difference*)
 provided that **purchè** (*w. subj.*)
 rather than **piuttosto che**
 since (*causal*) **poichè, siccome, giacchè**
 since (*temporal*) **dacchè**
 so, so then **dunque**
 so that, in order that **perchè, affinché, acciocchè** (*w. subj.*)
 so that (*result*) **di modo che, sicchè**
 supposing that **posto che, supposto che** (*w. subj.*)
 than **che, che non, di quel che** (*cf. 115, b, c, d*)
 that **che**
 that, in order that **perchè** (*w. subj.*)
 that is **cioè**
 the more as, the more that **tanto più che**
 then, accordingly **dunque**
 therefore **perciò, però, dunque, adunque**
 though *see* although
 too **anche, pure**
 unless **senza che, a meno che non** (*w. subj.*)

until **finchè non**
 when **quando**
 whence **donde**
 where **dove, là dove, ove**
 whereas **considerando che**
 wherefore **onde** (*w. subj.*), **per lo che**
 wherever **dovunque** (*w. subj.*)
 whether **se, sia, sia che**
 while **mentre, mentre che**
 yet **nondimeno, tuttavia, però, pure, nulladimeno**

b. List of Conjunctions, Italian-English.

acciò, acciocchè (*w. subj.*) so that, in order that
a condizione che (*w. subj.*) on condition that
adunque then, so then
affinchè (*w. subj.*) in order that
a mano a mano che proportionately as, as fast as
a meno che non (*w. subj.*) unless
anche also
anche se even if
ancora yet, still, again
ancorchè (*w. subj.*) even if, although
anzi che rather that
a patto che (*w. subj.*) on condition that
avanti che (*w. subj.*) before
avvegna che (*w. subj.*) although
benchè (*w. subj.*) although
bensi but rather, nay indeed
caso, caso mai (*w. subj.*) in case
che that
che, che non than
chè for
cioè that is
ciò non ostante notwithstanding
come as, as it were
come anco as well as
come se (*w. subj.*) as if
conciossiachè although

considerando che whereas
 con questo che (*w. subj.*) notwithstanding that
 così as (*after come*)
 dacché since (*temporal*)
 dato che (*w. subj.*) granting that
 di modo che so that (*result*)
 donde whence
 dopo che after
 dovunque (*w. subj.*) wherever
 dunque then, so then
 e and
 e . . . e both . . . and
 eccetto che (*w. subj.*) unless
 finché as long as
 finché non until
 fintantoché as long as
 fuorché (*w. subj.*) except that
 giacché since (*causal*)
 in guisa che so as to
 là dove where
 laonde wherefore
 ma but
 malgrado che (*w. subj.*) notwithstanding that
 mentre, mentre che while
 nè nor
 nè . . . nè neither . . . nor
 nel caso che (*w. subj.*) in case
 nemmeno nor, nor . . . either
 neppure nor, nor . . . either
 non che (*w. subj.*) much less
 non che . . . ma not to say . . . but even
 nondimeno, non perciò, nulladimeno nevertheless
 non ostante che (*w. subj.*) notwithstanding that
 non solo . . . ma not only . . . but
 o or
 o . . . o either . . . or
 onde (*w. subj.*) wherefore, because of which, so as to
 oppure, ossia, ovvero or else

perchè because ; (*w. subj.*) in order that
 perciò therefore
 perciocchè because
 per lo chè wherefore, because of which
 però however
 perocchè because
 per quanto (*w. subj.*) however (*before adj.*)
 piuttosto chè rather than
 poichè since (*causal*)
 poscia chè after
 posto chè (*w. subj.*) supposing that
 prima chè (*w. subj.*) before
 purchè (*w. subj.*) provided that
 pure however, also
 quale as (*after tale*)
 qualora (*w. subj.*) whenever, as often as
 quando when
 quando anche (*w. subj.*) even if
 quanto as (*after tanto*)
 quantunque (*w. subj.*) whenever
 quasi, quasi chè (*w. subj.*) as if
 se if
 sebbene (*w. subj.*) although
 secondochè according as
 sèmprechè (*w. subj.*) granting that
 se non chè except that
 senza chè (*w. subj.*) unless
 se pure (*w. subj.*) if only
 sia, sia chè whether
 sicchè so that (*result*)
 siccome as, since
 solo chè (*w. subj.*) if only
 supposto chè (*w. subj.*) supposing that
 tanto chè as long as
 tanto più chè the more that
 tranne chè (*w. subj.*) except that
 tuttavia however, anyway
 via via chè as fast as

1. Certain conjunctions, as **anche** *se*, **di mōdo** *che*, etc., which are usually followed by the indicative, are sometimes followed by the subjunctive.

2. Questions and exclamations are introduced sometimes, for greater vivacity, by **o** or **che**, used pleonastically.

Dimmi, Santino, che ti piace più la frutta frēsa o quella sēcca?	Tell me, Santino, do you like fresh fruit better, or dried?
O provātevi ānche voi! È tanto fācile	Try it yourself! It is very easy
O credēte chi ci fōsse?	Now who do you think was there?

3. A clause is introduced sometimes by **sì che**, as a strengthening or contrasting form.

E sì che di amministrazioni libere agli uōmini di stato italiani non mancāvano eșēmpi!	And yet Italian statesmen did not lack for examples of liberal administration!
Se, per eșēmpio, il giōvane leg- gesse un' orazione di Cicerone, alcune ōdi di Orazio, un libro di Virgilio . . . allora sì che egli avrebbe un' idēa, tutt' altro che completā, ma almenō rispettabile, della letteratura clāssica	If, for example, the youth should read a speech of Cicero, a few odes of Horace, a book of Vir- gil . . . then he would indeed have an idea, far from complete, but at least tolerable, of classic literature

4. The conjunction **che** is often used alone in familiar speech to mean 'so that,' 'such that.'

Cantavano ch' era un piacere	They sang so that it was a delight (to listen)
Parlava italiano ch' era un orrōre	He spoke Italian horribly

231. Interjections. The following are the more frequent interjections in Italian:

a. Expressing joy, admiration, enthusiasm, and the like:

Bēne!	Well! Good!
Bravo! Brava!	Well done! Good for him (<i>or</i> her)!

Oh gioia!	What joy! How delightful!
Viva! Evviva!	Hurrah!
Beato te!	Happy you!

b. Grief, pain, compassion, anger, and the like :

Ahi! Ohi! Deh! Ahimè! Ohimè!	Alas!
Guai!	Woe! Beware!
Peccato! Che peccato!	What a pity! What a shame!
Pōvero a me!	Poor me
Oh, poverino!	Oh, the poor thing!
Pietà!	Mercy!
Dio ci aiuti!	Heaven help us!
Oibò! Vergogna!	Shame!
Maledetto! Diāvolo!	Zounds! The deuce!

c. Surprise :

Diāmine! Per bacco!	Is it possible! Of course!
Oh bella! Curioso!	How strange!
Mah! Ma chē!	But —! How absurd!
Come mai!	How in the world? How can it possibly be?

d. Encouragement :

Pazienza!	Have patience! Resignation!
Speriamo!	Let us hope so!
Coraggio! Ānimo!	Courage!
Orsù!	Come now!
Su!	Here! Come!

e. Miscellaneous :

Ecco!	There! Exactly!
Via!	Come, come! Oh, come now!
Ben venuto! Ben venuta!	Welcome!
Largo!	Make way!
Magari!	Rather! Would to God!
Zitto!	Hush!
Chi lo sa!	Who knows!
Piano!	Softly! Gently!

Basta !
 Al ladro !
 All' armi !
 Abbasso la tirānnide !
 Viva l' Italia !

Enough !
 Stop thief !
 To arms !
 Down with tyranny !
 Long live Italy !

VOCABULARY

l' *ālbero* *m.* tree, mast
 la *breccia* breach
 la *cima* summit
 la *ferita* wound
 la *finzione* pretense
 Livorno Leghorn
 il *marinaio* sailor
 la *pōlvre* powder
 il *rīschio* risk
 il *sepolcreto* cemetery
 il *sogno* dream
 lo *strapazzo* abuse, neglect
avverare fulfill
deplorare regret
gridare shout
redīmere, redēnsi, redēnto redeem
saltare in aria be blown up

a mēno chē unless
a patto chē on condition that
a vicēnda in turn ; mutually
caso mai in case
dacchē since (*time*)
in cima a on the top of
malgrado chē notwithstanding that
neppure not even
nondimēno nevertheless
piuttōsto chē rather than
poichē since (*cause*)
prima chē before
purchē provided that
siccome as
tranne chē except that
irredēnto unredeemed

EXERCISE

I

ULTIMI ANNI DELLA GUERRA

Nel 1866, alla battaglia navale di Lissa, Alfrēdo Cappellini livornese, un erōe da paragonarsi ai più grandi dell' antichità, piuttosto che veder cadere nelle mani dei nemici la sua nave, 'Palestro', dette fuoco alle polveri e saltò in aria con tutti i suoi marinai, i quali morirono gridando dalle cime degli alberi: *Viva l' Italia !*

A Villa Gloria cade Enrico Cairoli, e vi resta malamente ferito Giovanni Cairoli, il quale morì poi, nel 1869. Nomi di una famiglia

sacra alla patria, di una famiglia che per questa patria dette la vita di quattro sopra cinque che erano i suoi figli generosi. Ernesto muore combattendo a Varese; Luigi muore a Napoli per gli strapazzi della guerra del 1860; Benedetto solo, carico di ferite, sopravvive dopo tanti rischi a conforto della madre. Onore alla memoria di Adelaide Cairoli, di questa fortissima donna, che dorme ora nel sepolcreto di Groppello, in mezzo a quei figli, che, educati da lei, seppero dare tanta gloria al loro nome e all' Italia.

Oggi, al fine, dopo tante fatiche, tanti sacrifici, e tanti martiri, eccoci arrivati alla nostra capitale, ecco finalmente avverato il sogno di tanti secoli! Ci saremmo dovuti entrare senza le armi, ma le armi ci vollero. Il 20 settembre, 1870, i cannoni dell' esercito italiano tuonavano dinanzi alle mura di Porta Pia. Breve fu la finzione di resistenza da parte dei soldati che la difendevano, e una larga breccia aprì il passo nella città eterna al trionfo dell' Italia redenta.

Viva Roma capitale d' Italia! Ci siamo e ci resteremo!

II

1. The sailors, on top of the masts, were awaiting death. 2. Alfred Cappellini of Leghorn preferred to set fire to the powder and be blown up, rather than let his ship be taken. 3. Since I have been in Italy, the great war has begun. 4. Since they are to arrive so soon, let us not go away before they come. 5. Of the sailors of the ship ' Palestro ' not one was left [remained] alive. 6. They were all blown up. 7. Benedetto Cairoli saw his four brothers die in the war. 8. Only he survived them. 9. Unless many men know how to die for their country, Italy can never be united. 10. The Italian soldiers may say: Italy's dream of so many centuries could not have been fulfilled without us. 11. Nevertheless, it is to be regretted that arms were necessary. 12. Enrico was glad to die fighting, provided that Italy might be free and united. 13. The soldiers opened several breaches in the walls of the city. 14. Few

cities have survived longer than [more than] Rome. 15. She has survived in spite of governments having been changed and wars having been fought [in spite of (the fact) that, notwithstanding that, governments have been, etc.]. 16. Italian soldiers and sailors were glad to fight to capture Rome, on condition that their sons should know how to defend it. 17. For many years this country which you see was called by the Italians "Unredeemed Italy." 18. Here we are arrived in that part of Italy of which we have so often thought. 19. The physicians ought to have visited the soldiers in the hospital before their wounds became so dangerous. 20. Although they were covered with wounds, the soldiers opened the way into the Eternal City, crying, "Long live Italy!"

ALPHABETICAL LIST OF IRREGULAR AND DEFECTIVE VERBS (CF. 96, 120, 130)

accēndere, <i>light, kindle</i>	acceſi	acceſo
acclūdere, <i>inclose</i>	accluſi	accluſo
accōrgersi, <i>be aware</i>	mi accōrsi	accōrtosi
addurre, <i>produce, convey</i>	adduco, adducendo	addotto
	adduſſi, addurrò	
affliggere, <i>afflict</i>	affliſſi	afflitto
ālgerere, <i>be cold</i>	alſi	<i>Defective. Rare</i>
allūdere, <i>allude</i>	alluſi	alluſo
andare, <i>go</i>	<i>Ind. pres. vq or vado, vai, va, andiamo, andate, vanno. Fut. anderò, andrò. Past fut. anderèi or andrèi. Subj. vada etc., andiamo, andiate, vādano. Imp. va', andate</i>	
annēttiere, <i>combine</i>	<i>Past abs. annettei or annēſſi, annettè or annēſſe, etc. Past part. annēſſo</i>	
apparire, <i>appear</i>	<i>Ind. pres. apparisco or appaio, apparisci or appari, apparisce or appare; (appariamo), apparite, appariscono or appaiono. Past abs. apparii, apparvi, apparsi, etc. Subj. apparisca or appaia. Past part. apparito or apparso</i>	
appartenere, <i>belong</i>	<i>See tenere</i>	
appēndere, <i>hang</i>	appēſi	appēso
applaudire (applaudere, <i>poetical</i>), <i>applaud</i>	applauſo, applaudisco	
aprire, <i>open</i>	<i>Pres. ind. apro. Past abs. apērsi or aprii. Past part. aperto</i>	
ārdere, <i>burn</i>	arſi	arſo
ardire, <i>be bold</i>	<i>Defective in parts which are identical with ardere</i>	
arrēndere, <i>comply</i>	<i>See rendere</i>	
arrōgere, <i>add</i>	arroſi	arroſo or arroto. <i>Defective. Rare</i>
ascōndere, <i>hide</i>	<i>See nascondere</i>	
aspērgere, <i>scatter, sprinkle</i>	aspērsi	aspērso

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

assalire, <i>assail</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> assalgo or assalisco, assali or assalisci, etc., assaliamo or assalghiamo, assalite, assālgonο or assāliscono, etc. <i>Past abs.</i> assalii or assalsi. <i>Subj.</i> assalga or assalisca. <i>Past part.</i> assalito	
assīdersi, <i>besiege</i>	mi assiși	assișo
assīstere, <i>assist</i>		assistito
assōlvere, <i>absolve</i>	assolvei, assolveṭti or assōlsi, assoluto or assōlto	
assorbire, <i>absorb</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> assorbisco or assōrbō etc. <i>Subj.</i> assorbisca or assōrba etc. <i>Past part.</i> assorbito or assorto	
assūmere, <i>assume</i>	assunsi	assunto
avēre, <i>have</i>	<i>See 120</i>	
avvertire, <i>warn</i>	avvērto, avvertisco, etc.	
benedire, <i>bless</i>	<i>Past descr.</i> benedicēvo or benedivo etc. <i>Past abs.</i> benedissi or benedii. <i>Imp.</i> benedici etc. <i>Past part.</i> benedetto	
bēvere or bēre, <i>drink</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> bēvo or bēo, bēvi or bēi, bēve or bēe, bēvono or bēono. <i>Past abs.</i> bēvvi or bevētti. <i>Fut.</i> beverò or berrò	
bollire, <i>boil</i>	<i>Pres. ind.</i> bōllo etc.	
cadere, <i>fall</i>	caddi, caduto	<i>Fut.</i> cadrò
calere, <i>matter</i>	3 sg. (mi) cale, poet. caglia, poet. calse, poet. caluto. <i>Defective. Impersonal</i>	
capire, <i>be contained in</i>	3 pers. cape, cāpono	
cēdere, <i>yield</i>	cēssi (poet.)	<i>Regular in prose</i>
chiēdere, <i>ask</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> 1 sg. chiēdo or chiēggo, 3 pl. chiēdono, chiēggono. <i>Past abs.</i> chiēsi. <i>Subj.</i> chiēda or chiēgga, chiediamo, chiēdano or chiēggano. <i>Past part.</i> chiēsto	
chiūdere, <i>close</i>	chiusi	chiuso
cīngere, <i>gird</i>	cinsi	cinto
circoncīdere	<i>See decīdere</i>	
cōgliere or cōrre, <i>pluck</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> cōlgo, cōgli, cōglie, cogliamo or colghiamo, cogliete, cōlgono. <i>Past abs.</i> cōlsi. <i>Fut.</i> coglierò or corrò. <i>Imp.</i> cōgli. <i>Subj.</i> cōlga etc., cogliamo or colghiamo, cōlgano. <i>Past part.</i> cōlto cōlto or culto. <i>Rare</i>	
cōlere, <i>revere</i>		
comparire, <i>appear</i>	<i>See apparire</i>	

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

compire or cōmpiere, fulfill	<i>Ind. pres.</i> compisco or cōmpio, compisci or cōmpi, etc. <i>Imp.</i> compisci or cōmpi. <i>Subj.</i> compisca or cōmpia etc.; <i>past</i> compissi or compieSSI etc. <i>Pres. part.</i> compiendo; <i>past</i> compito or compiuto		
comprimere, compress	comprēssi	comprēso	
concedere, concede	concedēi, concedētti or concessi, conceduto or concesso		
concepire, conceive	(concepe, concepa, conceputo, poetic forms)		
conclūdere, conclude	<i>See</i> acclūdere		
condurre, conduct	<i>See</i> addurre		
connēttre, connect	<i>See</i> annēttre		
conōscere, be acquainted	conōbbi	conosciuto	
conquēdere, conquer	conquīsi	conquīso	Rare
consistere, consist	<i>See</i> assistere		
consumare, consūmere, consume, finish	<i>Past abs.</i> consumai or consunsi, consumò or con- sunse, consumārōno or consūnsero. <i>Past part.</i> consumato or consunto		
contēssere, entwine	<i>Part.</i> contēsto		
contūdere, bruise	contuși	contușo	
convertire, convert	<i>Ind. pres.</i> converto or convertisco. <i>Past abs.</i> con- vertii or conversi. <i>Past part.</i> convertito, converso		
corrēggere, correct	<i>See</i> reggere		
cōrrere, run	cōrsi	cōorso. Like correre are	
	accorrere, decorrere, percorrere, etc.		
cospērgere, sprinkle	<i>See</i> aspergere		
costrīngere, compel	<i>See</i> stringere		
costruire, construct	costruii or costrussi	costruito or costruito	
crēscere, grow	crebbi	cresciuto	
cucire, sew	<i>Ind. pres.</i> cucio, cūciono. <i>Subj.</i> cucia etc.		
cuōcere, cook	<i>Ind. pres.</i> cuocio, cuoci, cuoce, cuōciono. <i>Past abs.</i> cōssi. <i>Fut.</i> cocerò. <i>Imp.</i> cuoci. <i>Subj.</i> cuocia <i>Past part.</i> cotto		
dare, give	<i>Ind. pres.</i> dō, dai, dà, diamo, date, danno. <i>Past</i> <i>descr.</i> davo, davi, etc. <i>Past abs.</i> dētti or diēdi, dēsti, dētte or diēde, dēmmo, dēste, dēttero or diēdero. <i>Fut.</i> darò. <i>Imp.</i> da', date. <i>Pres. subj.</i> dia etc., diamo, diate, diano; <i>past</i> dēssi. <i>Pres.</i> <i>part.</i> dando; <i>past</i> dato		
decīdere, decide	decisi	deciso	

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

delūdere, <i>delude</i>	See alludere	
deprimere, <i>depress</i>	See comprimere	
desumere, <i>infer</i>	See assumere	
difēdere, <i>defend</i>	difesi	difeso
dipēdere, <i>depend</i>	dipesi	dipeso
dipingere, <i>paint</i>	dipinsi	dipinto
dire, (dīcere), <i>say</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> dico, dici <i>or</i> di', dice, diciamo, dite, dīcono. <i>Past descr.</i> dicevo <i>etc.</i> <i>Past abs.</i> dissi. <i>Fut.</i> dirò. <i>Imp.</i> di', dite. <i>Subj. pres.</i> dica <i>etc.</i> ; <i>past</i> dicessi <i>etc.</i> <i>Part. pres.</i> dicendo, dicente ; <i>past detto.</i> <i>Compounds of dire have</i> dici <i>in</i> 2 <i>sg. imp.</i>	
dirigere, <i>direct</i>	diressi	diretto
discorrere, <i>converse</i>	See correre	
discutere, <i>discuss</i>	discussi	discusso
dissolvere, <i>dissolve</i>	dissolvei <i>or</i> dissolsi	dissoluto
dissuadere, <i>dissuade</i>	See persuadere	
distinguere, <i>distinguish</i>	distinsi	distinto
divertire, <i>divert</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> diverto <i>etc.</i> ; "turn aside," <i>regular</i>	
dividere, <i>divide</i>	divisi	diviso
dolere, <i>grieve, pain</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> dolgo, duoli, duole, dolghiamo <i>or</i> do- gliamo, dolete, dōlgono. <i>Past abs.</i> dōlsi. <i>Fut.</i> dorrò. <i>Subj.</i> dōlga. <i>Past part.</i> doluto	
dormire, <i>sleep</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> dormo. <i>Subj.</i> dorma. <i>Imp.</i> dormi. <i>Part.</i> <i>pres.</i> dormente <i>or</i> dormiente	
dovere, <i>owe</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> devo <i>or</i> debbo (<i>poet.</i> deggio) ; devi <i>or</i> dei ; deve, debbe (<i>rare</i>), <i>or</i> de ; dobbiamo ; dovete ; devono <i>or</i> debbono (<i>poet.</i> deggiono), <i>etc.</i> <i>Fut.</i> dovrò. <i>Subj.</i> deya <i>or</i> debba	
elidere, <i>elide</i>	elisi <i>or</i> elidei	eliso
elūdere, <i>elude</i>	See alludere	
emēgere, <i>emerge</i>	emersi	emerso
empire <i>or</i> ĕmpiere, <i>fill</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> ĕmpio, ĕmpi, <i>etc.</i> <i>Past abs.</i> ĕmpii, ĕm- piēi, ĕmpiētti ; ĕmpisti, ĕmpiēsti, <i>etc.</i> <i>Fut.</i> ĕm- pirò. <i>Imp.</i> ĕmpi, ĕmpite. <i>Subj.</i> ĕmpia <i>etc.</i> ; <i>past</i> ĕmpissi, ĕmpiēssi, <i>etc.</i> <i>Part. pres.</i> ĕmpiendo ; <i>past</i> ĕmpito <i>or</i> ĕmpiuto.	
ērgere, <i>erect</i>	ērsi	(<i>adj.</i> ĕrto). <i>Rare in prose</i>
erigere, <i>erect</i>	See dirigere	

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

esclūdere, <i>exclude</i>	<i>See</i> accludere	
eşigere, <i>exact</i>	eşigēi	eşatto
eşimere, <i>exempt</i>	eşimēi	(<i>Past abs. and past part. from eşentare.</i>)
eşistere, <i>exist</i>	<i>See</i> assistere	
espēllere, <i>expel</i>	espulsi	espulso
esplōdere, <i>explode</i>	esplōşi	esplōşo
esprimere, <i>express</i>	<i>See</i> comprimere	
ēssere, <i>be</i>	<i>See</i> 96	
estinguere, <i>extinguish</i>	<i>See</i> distinguere	
evādere, <i>escape</i>	<i>See</i> invadere	
fare, (fācere), <i>do, make</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> fō or faccio, fai, fa (<i>poet. face</i>), facciamo, fate, fanno. <i>Past descr.</i> facevo etc. <i>Past abs.</i> feci. <i>Fut.</i> farò. <i>Imp.</i> fa', fate. <i>Subj.</i> faccia etc. <i>Part. pres.</i> facēnte, facēndo; <i>past</i> fatto	
fedire (<i>defective and poetical for ferire</i>), <i>strike</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> fiēdo, fiēdi, fiēde, fiēdono. <i>Subj.</i> fiēda, fiēdano	
fēndere, <i>split</i>	fendēi or fēssi	fenduto or fēsso
fērvere, <i>glow</i>	<i>Defective. Lacks compound tenses and past part.</i>	
figgere, <i>fix</i>	fissi	fisso or fitto
fīngere, <i>pretend</i>	finsi	finto
flēttēre, <i>bend</i>		flēsso. <i>Defective. Poetical</i>
fōndere, <i>melt</i>	fuşi	fuşo
frāngere, <i>break</i>	fransi	franto
friggere, <i>fry</i>	frissi	fritto
fuggire, <i>flee</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> fuggo, fuggi, fuggē, etc. <i>Imp.</i> fuggi. <i>Subj.</i> fugga etc.	
genuflēttēre, <i>kneel</i>	genuflēsşi	genuflēsso
giacēre, <i>lie</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> giaccio, giaci, giace, giacciamo or giacciamo, giacēte, giacciono. <i>Past abs.</i> giacqui. <i>Subj.</i> giaccia etc. <i>Rare</i>	
giocare, <i>play</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> giuoco, giuochi, etc. <i>See</i> rotare.	
gire, <i>turn</i>	<i>Ind. pres. and Imp.</i> 2 pl. gite. <i>Past descr.</i> givo etc. <i>Past abs.</i> gisti, gimmo, girono. <i>Fut.</i> girò (<i>rare</i>). <i>Past part.</i> gito <i>Defective</i>	
giüngere, <i>arrive</i>	giunsi	giunto
godere, <i>enjoy</i>	<i>Fut.</i> goderò or godrò	
illūdere, <i>illude</i>	<i>See</i> alludere	
immērgere, <i>immerse</i>	<i>See</i> emergere	

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

imprimere, <i>print</i>	See comprimere	
incidere, <i>engrave</i>	inciși	incișo
includere, <i>include</i>	See accludere	
incorrere, <i>incur</i>	See correre	
incutere, <i>instil</i>	incuței or incussi	incusso
indulgere	indulsi	indulto <i>Poetical. Rare</i>
indurre, <i>induce</i>	See addurre	
infocare, <i>inflamm</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> infuoco, infuochi, etc. <i>See</i> rotare.	
inghiottire, <i>swallow</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> inghiottisco or inghiotto. <i>Subj.</i> inghiottisca or inghiotta etc. <i>Imp.</i> inghiottisci or inghiotti	
insistere, <i>insist</i>	See assistere	
intessere, <i>interweave</i>		intessuto or intesto
intridere, <i>knead</i>	intriși	intrișo
intrudere, <i>intrude</i>	intruși	intrușo
invadere, <i>invade</i>	invași	invașo
ire, <i>go</i>	<i>Pres. ind. ite. Past descr.</i> ivo, ivi, etc. <i>Past abs.</i> isti, iste, ĩrono. <i>Past part. ito. Poet. Defective</i>	
istruire, <i>instruct</i>	See costruire	
lȅdere, <i>offend</i>	leși (<i>rare</i>)	leșo
lȅggere, <i>read</i>	lȅssi	lȅtso
licere or lȅcere, <i>allow</i>	<i>Past part.</i> lȅcito or lȅcito <i>Impersonal. Defective</i>	
lucere, <i>shine</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> luci, luce, lūcono. <i>Past descr.</i> lucevo, lucȅvano. <i>Subj. pres.</i> luca, lūcano; <i>past</i> lucȅssi etc. <i>Pres. part.</i> lucȅndo (<i>adj.</i> lucȅnte). <i>Defective</i>	
lȕdere, <i>play</i>	lusi	luso <i>Rare</i>
maledire, <i>curse</i>	See benedire	
mantenȅre, <i>maintain</i>	See tenere	
mentire, <i>lie, deceive</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> mȅnto, mentisco. <i>Subj.</i> mȅnta, mentisca. <i>Imp.</i> mȅnti etc.	
mȅrgere, <i>plunge</i>	mȅrsi	mȅrso
mȅscere, <i>mix</i>		misto or mesciuto
mȅttre, <i>put</i>	miși or mȅssi	mȅsso
mȕlcere, <i>soothe</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> mȕlci, mȕlce. <i>Past descr.</i> molȅvo etc. <i>Imp.</i> mȕlci. <i>Subj. past</i> molȅssi etc. <i>Pres. part.</i> molȅndo <i>Defective. Poetical</i>	
mȕrdere, <i>bite</i>	mȕrsi	mȕrso

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

morire, <i>die</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> muqio, muqri, muqre, moriamo, morite, muqiono. <i>Fut.</i> morrò, morirò. <i>Imp.</i> muqri. <i>Subj.</i> muqia, mqra (<i>poet.</i>), moriamo, moriate or moiate, muqiano, mōrano (<i>poet.</i>). <i>Part. pres.</i> morēnte, moriēnte; <i>past</i> mqrto	
mūngere, <i>milk</i>	munsi	munto
muqvere, <i>move</i>	mōssi	mōsso
nāscere, <i>be born</i>	nacqui	nato
nascōndere, <i>hide</i>	nascōsi	nascōsto or nascōso
neglīgere (<i>cf. 5, c</i>), <i>neglect</i>	neglēssi	neglētto
nuqcere, <i>harm</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> nuqco or nōccio, nuqcono or nōcciono, etc. <i>Past abs.</i> nōcqui. <i>Past part.</i> nociuto	
nutrire, <i>nourish</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> nutro, nutrisco. <i>Subj.</i> nutra, nutrisca	
offēndere, <i>offend</i>	offēsi	offēso
offrire or offerire, <i>offer</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> qffro, offerisco. <i>Past abs.</i> offērsi or offrii. <i>Subj.</i> qffra, offerisca. <i>Past part.</i> offēрто	
opprimere, <i>oppress</i>	See comprimere	
ottenēre, <i>obtain</i>	See tenere	
parēre, <i>appear</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> paio, pari, pare, paiamo, parēte, pāiono. <i>Past abs.</i> parvi or parsi. <i>Fut.</i> parrò. <i>Imp.</i> lacking. <i>Subj.</i> paia etc., pāiano. <i>Past part.</i> parso or paruto	
partire, <i>leave, go away</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> parto; "share," partisco	
patire, <i>suffer</i>	Rare forms: pato, pati, pate, pātono; <i>p. part.</i> passo.	
pentirsi, <i>repent</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> mi pēnto etc. <i>Imp.</i> pēntiti. <i>Subj.</i> si pēnta etc.	
percipere, <i>perceive</i>	<i>Past part.</i> percetto	
percuqtere, <i>strike</i>	percqssi	percqso
	The diphthong is preserved in the <i>ind. pres.</i> wherever the tonic accent falls upon the o.	
pērdere, <i>lose</i>	pērsi, perdēi, or perdētti; pērso or perduto. The compounds disperdere and sperdere have only the irregular forms.	
permēttre, <i>permit</i>	See mettere	
persistere, <i>persist</i>	See assistere	
persuadere, <i>persuade</i>	persuași	persuașo
pervertire, <i>pervert</i>	See avvertire	

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

piacere, <i>please</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> piaccio, piaci, piace, piacciamo, piacete, piacciono. <i>Past abs.</i> piacqui. <i>Subj.</i> piaccia; piacciamo, piacciate, piacciano. <i>Past part.</i> piaciuto	
piāngere, <i>weep</i>	piansi	pianto
pīngere, <i>push</i>	See dipingere	<i>Rare in prose</i>
piq̄vere (<i>impersonal</i>), <i>rain</i>	piovve	piovuto
plāudere, <i>applaud</i>	See applaudire	<i>Poetical</i>
pōrgere, <i>stretch forth</i>	pōrsi	pōrto
porre (pōnere), <i>place</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> pongo, poni, pone, poniamo or ponghiamo, ponete, pōngono. <i>Past abs.</i> posi. <i>Fut.</i> porrò. <i>Imp.</i> poni. <i>Subj.</i> ponga; poniamo or ponghiamo, poniate, pōngano. <i>Part. pres.</i> ponendo; <i>past</i> posto	
possedere, <i>possess</i>	See sedere	
potere, <i>be able</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> posso, puoi, può, possiamo, potete, pōs-sono (pōnno, <i>poet.</i>). <i>Fut.</i> potrò. <i>Imp.</i> wanting. <i>Subj.</i> possa; possiamo, possiate, pōssano. <i>Past part.</i> potuto	
precēdere, <i>precede</i>	precēssi or precedetti	preceduto
prediligere, <i>prefer</i>	predilēssi	predilētto
prelūdere, <i>prelude</i>	See alludere	
prēmere, <i>crush</i>	preSSI, premei, premetti	
prēndere, <i>take</i>	preSI	preso
	Comprendere, sorprendere, imprendere, <i>are conjugated like</i> prendere	
presūmere, <i>assume</i>	presunsi	presunto
produrre, <i>produce</i>	See addurre	
profferire, <i>proffer</i>	See offerire	
promēttēre, <i>promise</i>	See mettere	
protēggere, <i>protect</i>	protēssi	protētto
pūngere, <i>prick</i>	punsi	punto
rādere, <i>shave</i>	rasi	raso
recidere, <i>sever</i>	See decidere	
redimere, <i>redeem</i>	redēnsi	redēnto
redire or riēdere, <i>return</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> riēdo, riēdi, riēde; riēdono. <i>Past descr.</i> redivo. <i>Past abs.</i> redirono. <i>Subj.</i> (<i>rare</i>) riedesse and riedēssero <i>Defective. Poetical</i>	
rēggere <i>rule</i>	rēssi	rētto
	<i>Compounds conjugated like</i> reggere	

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

rēndere, <i>render</i>	reſi, rendeſi <i>or</i> rendeſti; reſo <i>or</i> renduto. Arrēn- dere, arreſo	
reprimere, <i>repress</i>	See comprimere	
reſiſtere, <i>resist</i>	See aſſistere	
reſpīngere, <i>repulse</i>	See ſpingere	
richieḡdere, <i>demand</i>	See chiedere	
riḡdere, <i>laugh</i>	riſi	riſo
ridurre, <i>reduce</i>	See addurre	
riſſēttēre, <i>reflect</i>	riſſeſſi	riſſeſſo
	<i>In ſenſe of "consider" regular</i>	
riſūlgere, <i>shine</i>	riſuſſi	<i>Part. wanting</i>
rilūcere, <i>shine</i>	riluſſi	<i>Part. wanting</i>
rimanere, <i>remain</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> rimango, rimani, rimane, rimaniamo <i>or</i> rlmanghiamo, rimanete, rimāngono. <i>Past abs.</i> rimaſi. <i>Fut.</i> rimarrò. <i>Imp.</i> rimani. <i>Subj.</i> rimanga. <i>Past part.</i> rimasto <i>or</i> rimaso	
ripōnere, <i>replace</i>	See porre. <i>More usual form,</i> riporre	
riſolare, <i>re-sole</i>	riſuoḡlo, riſuoḡli, etc.; <i>diphthong occurs wherever o</i> <i>is accented</i>	
riſōlvere, <i>resolve</i>	See aſſolvere	
riſpōndere, <i>reply</i>	riſpoſi	riſpoſto
riuſcire, <i>succeed</i>	See uſcire	
rōdere, <i>gnaw</i>	rōſi	rōſo
rōmpere, <i>break</i>	ruppi	rōtto
rotare, <i>turn, whirl</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> ruōto, ruōti, etc.; <i>diphthong occurs</i> <i>wherever o is accented</i>	
ſalire, <i>go up</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> ſalgo, ſali, ſale, ſalghiamo <i>or</i> ſagliamo, ſalite, ſālgono. <i>Past abs.</i> ſalii <i>or</i> ſaliſi. <i>Imp.</i> ſali. <i>Subj.</i> ſalga, ſalghiamo, ſālgano, etc. <i>Past part.</i> ſalito	
ſapere, <i>know</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> ſoḡ, ſai, ſa, ſappiamo, ſapeḡe, ſanno. <i>Past abs.</i> ſeppi. <i>Imp.</i> ſappi, ſappiate. <i>Subj.</i> ſappia. <i>Fut.</i> ſaprò. <i>Part. pres.</i> ſapiēte; <i>past</i> ſaputo	
ſcēgliere (ſcērrē), <i>choose</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> ſcēḡo, ſcēḡli, ſcēḡlie, ſcēḡliamo <i>or</i> ſcelghiamo, ſcēḡliete, ſcēḡgono. <i>Past abs.</i> ſcēḡſi. <i>Subj.</i> ſcēḡa etc. <i>Past part.</i> ſcēḡto	
ſcēndere, <i>descend</i>	ſcēſi	ſcēſo
ſcērnere, <i>discern</i>	ſcērſi <i>or</i> ſcērneſi	<i>Past part. wanting</i>

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

scindere, <i>sever</i>	scissi	scisso
	Prescindere <i>has</i> prescindetti <i>also</i>	
sciogliere or sciorre, <i>loosen</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> scioglio, sciogli, scioglie, sciogliamo, sciogliete, sciogliono. <i>Past abs.</i> sciolsi. <i>Fut.</i> scioglierò or sciorrò. <i>Imp.</i> sciogli. <i>Subj.</i> sciogla. <i>Past part.</i> sciolto	
scolpire, <i>carve</i>	scolpii or poet. sculsi	scolpito or poet. sculto
sconnettere, <i>disconnect</i>	See annettere	
scoprire, <i>discover</i>	See coprire	
scorgere, <i>perceive</i>	scorsi	scorto
scrivere, <i>write</i>	scrissi	scritto
scuotere, <i>shake</i>	scossi	scosso
	<i>Diphthong</i> uo <i>preserved only where the accent falls on it</i>	
şdrućire, <i>rip</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> şdrućio or şdrućisco. <i>Subj.</i> şdrućia or şdrućisca	
sedere, <i>sit</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> seggio or siędo, siędi, sięde, sediamo, sedete, sęggono or siędono. <i>Past abs.</i> sedęi. <i>Imp.</i> siędi. <i>Subj.</i> sęga or sięda, sęggano or siędano. <i>Past part.</i> seduto	
sedurre, <i>seduce</i>	See addurre	
seguire, <i>follow</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> sęuo, sęui, etc. <i>Subj.</i> sęua etc. <i>Imp.</i> sęui. Conseguire <i>in sense of</i> "obtain," <i>regular.</i> Esequire <i>regular</i>	
sentire, <i>feel, smell</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> sęto, sęti, etc. <i>Subj.</i> sęta etc. <i>Imp.</i> sęti	
seppellire, <i>inter</i>		sepolto or seppellito
servire, <i>serve</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> sęro, sęri. <i>Subj.</i> sęra. <i>Imp.</i> sęri	
sodisfare, <i>satisfy</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> sodisfş or sodisfaccio, sodisfi, sodisfa, sodisfacciamo, sodisfate, sodisfano. <i>Subj.</i> sodisfi or sodisfaccia etc., sodisfacciamo, sodisfacciate, sodisfino or sodisfacciano. <i>Imp.</i> sodisfa, sodisfate. See fare	
soffolcere, <i>support</i>	soffolse	soffolto <i>Defective. Rare</i>
soffrire, <i>suffer</i>	See offrire	
solere (defective), <i>be wont</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> sşlio, suqli, suqle, sşliamo, solete, sşglio. <i>Subj.</i> sşlia etc. <i>Past abs., fut., past fut., imp., wanting; supplied by</i> esser solito. <i>Past part.</i> sşlito	
solvere, <i>undo</i>	solvei (solvetti)	soluto <i>Poetical</i>

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

sonare, <i>ring</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> suonò, suonì. <i>Diphthong occurs wherever the accent falls on o</i>		
sopprimere, <i>suppress</i>	<i>See</i> comprimere		
sorbire, <i>sip</i>	<i>See</i> assorbire		
sorgere, <i>arise</i>	sorsi	sorto	
sospēndere, <i>suspend</i>	sospesi, sospeso. <i>So</i> appendere, impendere; pendere <i>is reg.</i> , dipendere <i>either reg. or irreg.</i>		
sostenere, <i>sustain</i>	<i>See</i> tenere		
spāndere, <i>spill</i>		spanduto or poet. spanto	
spārgere, <i>slobber</i>	sparsi	sparso or rare sparto	
sparire, <i>disappear</i>	<i>See</i> apparire		
spēndere, <i>spend</i>	spesi	speso	
spēngere or spēgnere, <i>extinguish</i>	spensi	spento	
spērdere, <i>lose</i>	<i>See</i> perdere		
spērgere, <i>disperse</i>	spersi	sperso	<i>Rare</i>
spīngere, <i>push</i>	spinsi	spinto	
spōrgere, <i>project</i>	sporsi	sporto	
stare, <i>be, stay</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> stò, stai, sta, stiamo, state, stanno. <i>Past descr.</i> stavo etc. <i>Past abs.</i> stetti, stesti, stette or (poet.) stie, stemmo, steste, stettero. <i>Imp.</i> sta', state. <i>Subj.</i> stia etc., stiamo, stiate, stiano; <i>past</i> stessi etc. <i>Past part.</i> stato. <i>Ri-stare and sopra-stare, like stare:</i> ristò, ristai, etc.		
stēndere, <i>extend</i>	<i>See</i> tendere		
strīngere, <i>press</i>	strinsi	stretto	
strūggere, <i>melt</i>	strussi	strutto	
	Distruggere <i>like</i> struggere		
succēdere, <i>succeed</i>	<i>See</i> concedere		
sūggere, <i>suck</i>	suggei or sussi.	<i>Past part. lacking.</i>	<i>Rare</i>
sussistere, <i>subsist</i>	<i>See</i> assistere		
švēllere or švēlgere (švērre), <i>uproot</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> švēlgo, švēlgi or švēlli, švēlge or švēlle; švelgiamo or švelghiamo, švelgete, švēlgono. <i>Past abs.</i> švēlsi. <i>Fut.</i> švellerrò. <i>Subj.</i> švēlga, švelghiamo, švēlgano. <i>Past part.</i> švelto		
švenire, <i>swoon</i>	<i>See</i> venire. <i>Fut.</i> švenirò, šverrò		
tacere, <i>be silent</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> taccio, taci, tace, tacciamo, tacete, taciono. <i>Past abs.</i> tacqui. <i>Imp.</i> taci. <i>Subj.</i> taccia; tacciamo, tacciate, tacciano. <i>Past part.</i> taciuto		

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

tēdere, <i>extend</i>	tēsi	tēso	
tenere, <i>hold</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> tēngo, tiēni, tiēne, teniamo <i>or</i> tenghiamo, tenēte, tēngono. <i>Past abs.</i> tēnni. <i>Fut.</i> terrò. <i>Imp.</i> tiēni. <i>Subj.</i> tēnga, teniamo <i>or</i> tenghiamo, <i>etc.</i> <i>Past part.</i> tenuto		
tēgere, <i>wipe</i>	tērsi	tērso	<i>Rare</i>
tingere, <i>tint</i>	tinsi	tinto	
tōgliere <i>or</i> tōrre, <i>take away</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> tōlgo, tōgli, tōglie, togliamo, togliete, tōlgono. <i>Past abs.</i> tōlsi. <i>Fut.</i> torrò <i>or</i> toglierò. <i>Imp.</i> tōgli, tō'. <i>Subj.</i> tōlga <i>etc.</i> <i>Past part.</i> tōlto		
tonare, <i>thunder</i>	<i>Pres.</i> tuono. <i>Diphthong occurs on the accent.</i>		
tōrcere, <i>twist</i>	tōrsi	tōrto	
tossire, <i>cough</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> tōsso. <i>Subj.</i> tōssa. <i>Imp.</i> tōssi. (<i>Rarely</i> tossisco <i>etc.</i>)		
tradurre, <i>translate</i>	<i>See addurre</i>		
trarre (trāere), <i>drag</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> traggo, trai, trae, traghiamo, traete, trāggono. <i>Past abs.</i> trassi, traesti, trasse, traemmo, traeste, trāssero. <i>Fut.</i> trarrò. <i>Imp.</i> trai. <i>Subj.</i> tragga <i>etc.</i> , traghiamo, trāggano. <i>Past part.</i> tratto. <i>The compounds</i> attrarre, contrarre, distrarre, ritrarre, <i>etc.</i> , <i>like</i> trarre		
uccidere, <i>kill</i>	uccisi	ucciso	
udire, <i>hear</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> qdo, qdi, qde, udiamo, udite, qdono. <i>Subj.</i> qda; udiamo, udiate, qdano. <i>Imp.</i> qdi, udite. <i>Fut.</i> udirò <i>or</i> udrò. <i>Past abs.</i> udii. <i>Past part.</i> udito		
ūngere, <i>anoint</i>	unsi	unto	
ūrgere, <i>urge</i>	<i>Forms in use: Ind. pres.</i> urge, ūrgono. <i>Past descr.</i> urgevo, urgēvano. <i>Subj. pres.</i> urga, ūrgano; <i>past</i> urgesse, urgēssero. <i>Part. pres.</i> urgente, urgendo. <i>Fut.</i> urgerà, urgeranno <i>Defective</i>		
uscire (<i>rarely</i> escire), <i>go out</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> esco, esci, esce, usciamo, uscite, ēscono. <i>Subj.</i> ēsca; usciamo, usciate, ēscano. <i>Imp.</i> esci, uscite. <i>Past abs.</i> uscii. <i>Past part.</i> uscito		
valere, <i>be worth</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> valgo, vali, vale, vagliamo <i>or</i> valghiamo, valēte, vālgono. <i>Past abs.</i> valsi. <i>Fut.</i> varrò. <i>Imp.</i> vali. <i>Subj.</i> valga <i>or</i> vaglia, valghiamo <i>or</i> vagliamo, valghiate, vālgano <i>or</i> vāgliano. <i>Past part.</i> valso <i>or</i> valuto		

LIST OF IRREGULAR VERBS

vedere, <i>see</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> vëdo or vëggo, vëdi, vëde, vediamo, vedëte, vëdono or vëggono (<i>poet.</i> vëggio, vëggiono). <i>Past abs.</i> vidi. <i>Fut.</i> vedrò. <i>Imp.</i> vëdi or vë', vedëte. <i>Subj.</i> vëda or vëgga, <i>poet.</i> vëggia; vediamo, vediate, vëdano or vëggano, <i>poet.</i> vëggiano. <i>Part. pres.</i> vedënte or vëggënte; <i>past visto</i> or veduto. Prevedere and provvedere have futures prevederò and provvederò. Other compounds of vedere, like vedere		
venire, <i>come</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> vëngo, viëni, viëne, veniamo, venite, vëngono. <i>Past abs.</i> vënni. <i>Fut.</i> verrò. <i>Imp.</i> viëni, venite. <i>Subj.</i> vënga, <i>poet.</i> vëgna. <i>Part. pres.</i> veniënte or vëgnënte; <i>past</i> venuto. Compounds of venire conjugated like venire		
vestire, <i>dress</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> vësto, vësti, vëste, etc. <i>Past part.</i> vestito, <i>poet.</i> vestuto		
vilipëndere	See appendere		
vîncere, <i>conquer</i>	vinsi	vinto	
vîvere, <i>live</i>	<i>Past abs.</i> vissi. <i>Fut.</i> vivrò. <i>Past part.</i> vissuto (rarely vivuto)		
volere, <i>wish, will</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> vòglio or vò', vuòi, vuòle, vogliamo, volëte, vòglio. <i>Past abs.</i> vòlli. <i>Fut.</i> vorrò. <i>Imp.</i> vògli, vogliate. <i>Subj.</i> vòglia etc., vogliamo, vogliate, vògliano		
vōlgere, <i>turn</i>	vòlsi	vòlto	
vōlvere, <i>turn</i>	vòlsi	vòlto	Rare
	Devolvere has a <i>past part.</i> devoluto		
votare, <i>empty</i>	<i>Ind. pres.</i> vuòto, vuòti, etc., diphthong occurring whenever the accent falls on o.		



ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

a, ad (39), at, to
abbandonare abandon
abbasso below; downstairs
abbiamo *1 pl. pres. ind. of avere*
abitante *m.* inhabitant
abitare dwell, reside
ābito *m.* coat
abituarsi (a) accustom oneself
 (to)
accadere happen
accanto (a) next, next door (to)
accendere light, kindle
accettare accept
acciaio *m.* steel
accidente *m.* accident
accomodarsi make oneself comfort-
 able, sit down
accompagnare accompany; match
accordarsi agree
accordo *m.* agreement
accorgersi di notice, become aware
 of
accrescere increase
acqua *f.* water
acquistare acquire
acre sharp, bitter
adatto adapted, suitable
addosso (a) on top, on the back
 (of)
adiatico *adj.* Adriatic
adulto adult, mature
affare *m.* affair; *pl.* business
affermare affirm, declare

affettuoso affectionate, cordial
affisso *m.* placard, notice
affollato crowded, thronged
agguantare seize upon
agire act
agitatore *m.* agitator
agli, ai, 75
ago *m.* needle; hand (of clock)
Agostino Augustine
agosto *m.* August
l'Aia the Hague
aiutare help
al, allo, 75; alle sei at six o'clock
albergo *m.* hotel
ālbero *m.* tree; mast
alcuno some, some one
allegro joyful
all'odola *f.* lark
allora then, at that time
almeno at least
alterare alter
altezza *f.* height; highness
alto high
altrettanto as much again
altro other; ~! of course!
altrui of others
alzarsi rise, get up
amare love
ambedue both
ambizione *f.* ambition
ambizioso ambitious
l'America *f.* America
americano American

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- amica** (*pl. -che*) *f.* friend
amico (*pl. -ci*) *m.* friend
Amleto Hamlet
ammalato ill
amministrativo administrative
ammirare admire
amore *m.* love
anche also
ancora yet, still, again
andare (149) go; **andarsene** (127) go away
andō 3 *sg. p. abs. of andare*
anello *m.* ring
angelo *m.* angel
angolo *m.* corner; **far ~ con** be at the corner of
angusto narrow
annaffiare water
annaffiatōio *m.* watering-pot
anno *m.* year; **buon ~** Happy New Year
annoverare enumerate
antemeridiano of the morning
antichità *f.* antiquity
anticipatamente beforehand, in advance
antico ancient
antimilitarista *m.* anti-militarist
antologia *f.* anthology
ape *f.* bee
aperto open
apparecchiare set table
appartamento *m.* apartment
appartenere belong
appassire wither
appena hardly; no sooner
applicare apply
appollaiarsi roost
approvare approve
appuntare pin
aprile *m.* April
aprire open
arancio *m.* orange-tree
architetto *m.* architect
ardere burn
ardito bold
ardore *m.* ardor
argento *m.* silver
aria *f.* air
Aristotile Aristotle
armi *f. pl.* arms
arrestare arrest
arrivare arrive
arrivo *m.* arrival
arte *f.* art
artista *m.* artist
ascoltare listen
aspettare wait, await
aspettativo *m.* expectancy
assai very; much
assortito to match, like
assurdo absurd
astuccio *m.* sewing-case
attendere await
attento attentive; **stare ~** pay attention
attenzione *f.* attention; **fare ~** pay attention
attillato close fitting; well dressed
attimo *m.* instant
attrarre draw, attract
augurare wish, wish well
austriaco Austrian
automobile *c.* automobile
autore *m.* author
autunno *m.* autumn
avanti before, ahead; ~ **che** *conj.* *w. subj.* before
avaro *m.* miser
avere (120) have; ~ **da** have to; **aver**

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

caldo, **freddo**, be hot, cold; **avere fretta**, **furia**, be in a hurry; **avversela** a male take ill, be offended

avverò *1 sg. fut. ind. of avere*

avvenire (138) happen

avventarsi a rush upon

avverare aver, confirm

avvertire advise, warn

avvezzare accustom

avviarsi take one's way

avvicinarsi a approach

avvisarsi bethink oneself

avviso *m.* placard

avvocato *m.* lawyer

azzurro blue

babbo *m.* papa

baciare kiss

bacio *m.* kiss

badare take care

bagagliaio *m.* baggage-room

bagaglio *m.* baggage, trunk

bagnato wet

bagno *m.* bath

balenare lighten

bambino, -a, child

banda *f.* band

bandiera *f.* flag

barattare exchange

barca *f.* boat

basso low

bastare suffice, be enough

bastone *m.* cane

battaglia *f.* battle

battere beat

baule *m.* trunk; fare il ∞ pack
one's trunk

bāvero *m.* coat-collar

bēbē *m.* baby

bēl for **bēllo**

Bēlga (*pl.* -gi, -ghe) Belgian

il Bēlgio Belgium

bellezza *f.* beauty

bēllico pertaining to war

bellicoso warlike

bellino pretty

bēllo fine, beautiful; **bēll' e fatto**
ready-made

benchē *conj. w. subj.* although

bēne, **bēn**, well

benefizio *m.* benefit

benissimo very well indeed

benzina *f.* gasoline

bēre drink

bianco white

biasmare blame

bicchiere *m.* drinking-glass

bigio gray

biglietto *m.* ticket; ∞ d'andata e
ritorno round-trip ticket

bilāncio *m.* balance, account

bilione *m.* trillion (U.S.), billion (Eng.)

bimbo, -a, baby

biognare *impers.* need

biogno *m.* need

bocconi 'on one's face

bōia *m.* executioner

bolletta *f.* check, receipt

bollire boil

Borbone Bourbon

borsa *f.* purse, bag

bōsco *m.* wood

bottega *f.* shop

bottiglia *f.* bottle

bōve *m.* ox

braccio *m.* arm

brano *m.* shred, fragment

bravo brave; clever

brēccia *f.* breach

brēve short

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

britännico <i>Britannic</i>	capo <i>m.</i> head; a ∞ chino with bowed head
bruciare burn	caporale <i>m.</i> corporal
bruscamente abruptly	cappello <i>m.</i> hat; ∞ sodo derby hat; ∞ a cencio soft hat
brutto ugly	carattere <i>m.</i> character, disposition
büio <i>m.</i> dark; al ∞ in the dark	carbonaro <i>m.</i> charcoal-burner
buono, buon, good; buon giorno good morning; buona sera good afternoon, good evening	cârcere <i>m.</i> prison
burro <i>m.</i> butter	cardo <i>m.</i> thistle
bûssola <i>f.</i> compass, bearings	carezza <i>f.</i> caress
busta <i>f.</i> envelope	cârca <i>f.</i> load; office
buttare throw; ∞ via throw away	caricare load; wind up
	cârico loaded; wound up
cacciare hunt, drive out	carino charming, pretty
cadere fall	Carlo Charles
caduco weak	carne <i>f.</i> meat
caffè <i>m.</i> coffee; café	caro dear
caldo warm, hot; fa ∞ it is warm weather	carponi on all fours
calmo calm	carrizza <i>f.</i> carriage
calore <i>m.</i> heat	carta <i>f.</i> paper; ∞ protocollo foolscap
calzino <i>m.</i> sock	cartasuga <i>f.</i> blotting-paper
calzolaio <i>m.</i> shoemaker	cartellino <i>m.</i> sheet, label
calzoni <i>m. pl.</i> trousers	cartello <i>m.</i> shop-sign
câmera <i>f.</i> chamber; ∞ da letto bed- room	cartolaio <i>m.</i> stationer
cameriere <i>m.</i> waiter	cartolina postale post card
camminare walk	casa <i>f.</i> house; a ∞ homeward, home; in ∞ at home; stare in ∞ stay in; star di ∞ reside
campagna <i>f.</i> country	le Cascine "The Dairies," a park in Florence
campione <i>m.</i> sample	caso <i>m.</i> case; in ogni ∞ in any case; ∞ mai in case
cane <i>m.</i> dog	castello <i>m.</i> castle
cannone <i>m.</i> cannon	catena <i>f.</i> chain
cantare sing	cattivo bad
canzone <i>f.</i> song	cavaliere <i>m.</i> knight, man on horse- back
capello <i>m.</i> hair	cavallo <i>m.</i> horse; andare a ∞ ride horseback
capino <i>m.</i> crown of hat	cavare take out
capire understand	
capitale <i>f.</i> capital	
capitare chance to be, happen in	
capitolo <i>m.</i> chapter	

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

cēdere yield	cinque five
cēlebre celebrated	cioccolata <i>f.</i> chocolate
celeste light blue	circa about, approximately
cencio <i>m.</i> rag; cappello a ∞ soft hat	Ciro Cyrus
cenno <i>m.</i> signal, nod	città <i>f.</i> city
centesimo <i>m.</i> centime	cittadino <i>m.</i> citizen
centimetro <i>m.</i> centimeter	ciuco <i>m.</i> donkey
centinaio <i>m.</i> collective hundred	civetta <i>f.</i> coquette
cēto hundred, a hundred	civile civilized
centrale central	civiltà <i>f.</i> civilization
cētro <i>m.</i> center; al ∞ down town	classe <i>f.</i> class
cercare look for; ∞ <i>di</i> (<i>w. inf.</i>) try	clāssico classic
cervello <i>m.</i> brain	cogli, còi, 75
Cēsare Caesar	cōgliere gather, pluck
cessare cease	cognata <i>f.</i> sister-in-law
che which, that	cognato <i>m.</i> brother-in-law
chi who, whom	còl, còllo, còlla, 75
chiacchierare chat	colazione <i>f.</i> luncheon; far ∞ take
chiamare call; chiamarsi be called, be named	luncheon
Chiara Clara	collana <i>f.</i> necklace
chiaro clear, light (color)	cōllera <i>f.</i> anger
chicca <i>f.</i> sweetmeat	collina <i>f.</i> hill
chieša <i>f.</i> church	còlmo <i>m.</i> summit
chilo <i>m.</i> kilogram	colorato colored; tan
chino bent; a capo ∞ with bowed head	colore <i>m.</i> color
chiōcciola <i>f.</i> snail; scala a ∞ wind- ing stair	còlpa <i>f.</i> blame, fault
chirurgo <i>m.</i> surgeon	coltello <i>m.</i> knife
chiūdere shut	comandare command
ci, ce, pron. us; adv. there; c'è, ci sono , there is, there are	comando <i>m.</i> command
ciarpetta <i>f.</i> necktie, scarf	combattere fight
ciascuno each one	còme as, like
cieco blind	cominciare begin
cilindro <i>m.</i> cylinder; cappello a ∞ tall hat	commissiōne <i>f.</i> errand
cima <i>f.</i> summit; in ∞ a on top of	commosso moved
cinquanta fifty	commovēte moving
	cōmodo convenient, comfortable; far ∞ come handy; star ∞ be comfortable
	compagno, -a , companion
	comparire appear

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

compire fulfill, complete	convenire (138) be suitable, be fitting
compleanno <i>m.</i> birthday	conversazione <i>f.</i> conversation
complimento <i>m.</i> compliment; far complimenti stand on ceremony	copertone <i>m.</i> blanket
compra <i>f.</i> purchase	copiare copy
comprare buy	coppia <i>f.</i> couple
comunicante connecting, communicating	coprire cover
comunicare communicate	coraggio <i>m.</i> courage
con with	cornetta <i>f.</i> horn
condannare condemn	corrèggere correct
condurre conduct	cōrrere run
confine <i>m.</i> boundary	corrispondere correspond
conforto <i>m.</i> comfort	corsa <i>f.</i> course, run
confrontare compare	cortese kind
congiurare conspire	corto short
conoscenza <i>f.</i> acquaintance	cosa <i>f.</i> thing
conoscere know, be acquainted with	coscienza <i>f.</i> consciousness
conquistatore <i>m.</i> conqueror	così thus, so
considerare consider	costa <i>f.</i> coast
considerevole considerable	costaggiù down there
consigliere <i>m.</i> adviser, counselor	costare cost
consiglio <i>m.</i> advice	cotone <i>m.</i> cotton
consistere consist	cōttimo <i>m.</i> contract; a ~ by the piece
cōnsole <i>m.</i> consul	cravatta <i>f.</i> necktie, cravat
consumato used up	crèdere believe
contadino, -a , peasant	crēscere grow
contante <i>m.</i> counting, cash; a contanti in cash	cristiano Christian
conte <i>m.</i> count	Cristòforo Colombo Christopher Columbus
contentarsi (di) content oneself (with)	crociata <i>f.</i> crusade
contento contented	cucchiaio <i>m.</i> spoon
contessa <i>f.</i> countess	cucina <i>f.</i> kitchen; cookery
continuare continue	cucire sew
conto <i>m.</i> bill; tornar ~ be of advantage; non mērita il ~ it is not worth while	cugino, -a , cousin
contrário contrary	cuì to whom, of whom, to which, of which
contro against	cultura <i>f.</i> culture
	cuocere cook
	cuoio <i>m.</i> leather

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

cuore *m.* heart
 da by, from
 dacchè since (*temporal*)
 dagli, dai, dal, dallo, dalla, 75
 danno *3 pl. of dare*
 danno *m.* damage, injury
 dappertutto everywhere
 dare (131) give; ∞ su face on; ∞
 il buon viaggio wish (one) a pleas-
 ant journey
 davanti a in front of
 davvero indeed
 decimo tenth
 decina *f. (collective)* ten
 dedicare dedicate
 degenerare degenerate
 degli, dei, del, dello, della, 75
 denaro *m.* money
 dente *m.* tooth
 dentro (di) within
 deplorare regret, lament
 deprimere depress
 deputato *m.* deputy, representative
 desiderare desire
 desiderio *m.* desire
 desinare dine
 destro right
 determinare determine
 detto *p. p. of dire*
 devi, deve, 2-3 *sg. pres. ind. of dovere*
 di of; di là da beyond; di qua da
 on this side of
 dì *m.* day
 dia *sg. pres. subj. of dare*
 dialogo *m.* dialogue
 dica *sg. pres. subj. of dire*
 dice says
 dicembre *m.* December
 dichiarare declare
 diciannove nineteen

diciassette seventeen
 diciotto eighteen
 dicono *3 pl. pres. ind. of dire*
 dieci ten
 dietro a behind
 difendere defend
 difesa *f.* defense
 difetto *m.* fault, defect
 difficile difficult
 diffondere scatter
 dirlato straight ahead
 dighiacciare thaw
 dimenticare forget
 diminuire diminish
 dimorare dwell, reside
 dimostrare show
 dinanzi a in front of
 dinastia *f.* dynasty
 dio *m.* god
 dire (175) say
 direzione *f.* direction
 dirigere direct
 discosto (a) distant (from)
 discreto modest, discreet
 discutere discuss
 disfatta *f.* defeat
 disgrazia *f.* misfortune
 disgraziatamente unfortunately
 dispaccio *m.* telegram
 disperato desperate
 dispiacente sorry
 dispiacere displease
 disse *3 sg. p. abs. of dire*
 distendere spread
 ditale *m.* thimble
 dito *m.* finger
 diventare become
 diverso different
 divertirsi amuse oneself
 dividere divide

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

dà <i>1 sg. pres. ind. of dare</i>	ecco here is, there is, behold
dobbiamo <i>1 pl. pres. ind. of dovere</i>	eco <i>c.</i> echo
dodici twelve	educato polite
dolce <i>m.</i> sweetmeat, dessert; <i>adj.</i> sweet	effettuare effect
dolere (172) grieve; <i>w. dat.</i> ache	egli, ei , he
dolorosamente sorrowfully, painfully	ēgolino they (<i>m.</i>)
domandare ask; ∞ di ask for (a person)	elegante elegant
domani to-morrow	elevato elevated
domēnica <i>f.</i> Sunday	eligere elect
domēstico <i>m.</i> servant; <i>adj.</i> domestic	ella she
donna <i>f.</i> woman; woman-servant	ēlleno they (<i>f.</i>)
dopo <i>prep.</i> after; ∞ chē <i>conj.</i> after	elogio <i>m.</i> praise, eulogy
doppio double	emozione <i>f.</i> emotion
dormire sleep	energia <i>f.</i> energy
dorso <i>m.</i> back	Enrico Henry
dotare endow	entrambi both
dotto learned	entrare enter
dove where	entusiasmo <i>m.</i> enthusiasm
dovere <i>v.</i> (188) owe; <i>m.</i> duty	era <i>f.</i> era
dovesse <i>3 sg. p. subj. of dovere</i>	eredità <i>f.</i> heredity
dovunque <i>conj. w. subj.</i> wherever	erōe <i>m.</i> hero
dozzina <i>f.</i> dozen	eroicamente heroically
drammatico dramatic	esclusivamente exclusively
dubitare doubt	esēmpio <i>m.</i> example
duca <i>m.</i> duke	esērcito <i>m.</i> army
ducato <i>m.</i> duchy	esiliare exile
due two; Due Sicilie <i>f. pl.</i> Kingdom of the Two Sicilies	esitare hesitate
dunque then, accordingly	esperto skillful, expert
duodēcimo twelfth	esporre (196) expose
duomo <i>m.</i> cathedral	espressione <i>f.</i> expression
durare last	esprime <i>3 sg. pres. ind. of esprimere</i>
e, ed (39), and	esprimere express
è is	ēssere (96) be
eccitamento <i>m.</i> excitement	esso, -a , he, him, she, her, it
	estate <i>f.</i> summer
	età <i>f.</i> age; in ∞ di at the age of
	eterno eternal
	etrusco Etruscan
	evenienza <i>f.</i> event, occurrence
	evitare avoid

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

fa 3 <i>sg. pres. ind. of fare</i>	ferro <i>m.</i> iron
fa' 2 <i>sg. imper. of fare</i>	ferroviario railway (<i>adj.</i>)
facchino <i>m.</i> porter	fērvēre burn, be fervent
fāccia <i>f.</i> face; in ∞ a opposite	fēsta <i>f.</i> holiday
fāccio 1 <i>sg. pres. ind. of fare</i>	fiacco weak
faceva 3 <i>sg. past descr. of fare</i>	fico <i>m.</i> fig
fācile easy	figlia <i>f.</i> daughter
facoltà <i>f.</i> college (of university)	figlio <i>m.</i> son
falco <i>m.</i> falcon, hawk	figurare figure
fallire fail	figurarsi imagine
fallo <i>m.</i> miss, failure, error; senza ∞ without fail	figurino <i>m.</i> pattern; manikin
fame <i>f.</i> hunger; aver ∞ be hungry	Filippo Philip
famiglia <i>f.</i> family	filosōfico philosophical
famōso famous	finalmente finally
fango <i>m.</i> mud	finchē as long as; ∞ non until
fantasia <i>f.</i> ornament	fine <i>f.</i> end; <i>m.</i> aim; alla ∞ at last
fare (163) make, do; far caldo be hot weather; far frēddo be cold weather; far colazione take break- fast; far passare , far entrare , show in; far tardi be late	finestra <i>f.</i> window
fatale fatal	finire finish
fatica <i>f.</i> fatigue, effort	fino fine
faticoso wearisome	fino a up to, as far as; fin da from (<i>time</i>); fin dove how far
fatto <i>m.</i> fact, deed; <i>p.p. of fare</i>	finzione <i>f.</i> fiction, pretense
favore <i>m.</i> favor; per ∞ please	fiocco <i>m.</i> bow
favorire favor, favor with	fiore <i>m.</i> flower
fazzoletto <i>m.</i> handkerchief	fiorentino Florentine
febbraio <i>m.</i> February	fiore bloom
fēcero 3 <i>pl. p. abs. of fare</i>	fiorito in bloom
fēde <i>f.</i> faith	Firenze Florence
fedeltà <i>f.</i> fidelity	fischio <i>m.</i> whistle
felice happy	fiume <i>m.</i> river
feltro <i>m.</i> felt	fōdera <i>f.</i> lining
ferire wound, strike	fōglia <i>f.</i> leaf
ferita <i>f.</i> wound	fondino <i>m.</i> shape, foundation
fermāglio <i>m.</i> brooch	fōndo <i>m.</i> back, bottom, end; in ∞ a at the back <i>etc.</i> of
fermarsi stop	fōrbici <i>f. pl.</i> scissors
fermo firm, still	forchetta <i>f.</i> fork
	fōrma <i>f.</i> form, last
	formicolare swarm

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

fornaio <i>m.</i> baker	generale <i>adj.</i> general; <i>m.</i> general
fornire furnish	generalmente usually, generally
forse perhaps	gēnere <i>m.</i> sort, kind
forte strong	gēnero <i>m.</i> son-in-law
fortuna <i>f.</i> fortune, good luck	generoso generous
forza <i>f.</i> force; a ~ di by dint of	genitori <i>m. pl.</i> parents
forzato forced	gennaio <i>m.</i> January
fotografia <i>f.</i> photograph	gente <i>f.</i> folk, people
fra among, between	gentile kind, agreeable
francese French	ghiacciare freeze
Francesco Francis	ghiaccio <i>m.</i> ice
la Francia France	già already; once, formerly
francobollo <i>m.</i> postage-stamp	giacchetta <i>f.</i> jacket
frate <i>m.</i> friar, brother	il Giappone Japan
fratello <i>m.</i> brother	giardino <i>m.</i> garden
freddo cold; fa ~ it is cold	ginocchio <i>m.</i> knee
freno <i>m.</i> brake	ginocchi on one's knees
freSCO cool	giocare (110, d) play
fretta <i>f.</i> haste; aver ~ be in haste	gioia <i>f.</i> joy
frettoloso hurried	gioielliere <i>m.</i> jeweler
fronte <i>f.</i> front; forehead; far ~ a resist	gioiello <i>m.</i> jewel
frugale frugal	Giorgio George
frutto <i>m.</i> fruit	giornale <i>m.</i> newspaper
fu the late, deceased	giornata <i>f.</i> day, period of a day; a ~ by the day
fucilazione <i>f.</i> execution, shooting	giorno <i>m.</i> day; di ~ by day
fuggire flee	giòvane young
fūlmine <i>m.</i> thunderbolt	giovanetto, -a, young person
fumo <i>m.</i> smoke	Giovanni, Giovannino, John
fungo <i>m.</i> mushroom	giovare be of use
fuoco <i>m.</i> fire	giovedì <i>m.</i> Thursday
fuori outside; ~ di porta outside the city; andar ~ go out	gioventù <i>f.</i> youth
	girare turn
galantuomo <i>m.</i> honorable man	giratina <i>f.</i> short walk
gallina <i>f.</i> hen	giro <i>m.</i> tour, circular journey
ganci <i>m. pl.</i> hooks (and eyes)	giù down
garofano <i>m.</i> carnation	giubba <i>f.</i> dress-coat
gelare freeze	giudizioso sensible, judicious
gelato <i>m.</i> ice-cream	giugno <i>m.</i> June
	Giulio Julius

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

giungere arrive
 giurare swear
 Giuseppe Joseph
 giusto just, right
 gli to him; the (*m. pl.*, 71, b, c)
 gloria *f.* glory
 gnocco *m.* dumpling
 gomito *m.* elbow
 gondola *f.* gondola
 gota *f.* cheek
 governatore *m.* governor
 governo *m.* government
 grammatica *f.* grammar
 grande large, great
 granducato *m.* grand duchy
 grasso fat
 grave heavy
 grazie *f. pl.* thanks
 grazioso pretty, charming, graceful
 greco Greek
 gridare cry, shout
 grigio gray
 grossezza size, magnitude
 grosso big
 gru *f.* crane
 gruppo *m.* group
 guadagnare earn
 guancia *f.* cheek
 guantaio *m.* glover
 guanto *m.* glove
 guardare look, look at
 guardia *f.* conductor, guard
 guarire recover, be cured
 guarnizione *f.* trimming
 guerra *f.* war
 guida *f.* guide
 gusto *m.* taste
 idea *f.* idea
 ieri yesterday

ignorante ignorant
 il, i, the (*m. sg. and pl.*)
 illustre illustrious
 imbandire serve (a meal)
 immediatamente immediately
 imparare learn
 impari odd, uneven
 impedire prevent, hinder
 imperatore *m.* emperor
 impermeabile *m.* rain-coat
 impero *m.* empire
 impervio impervious
 impiccare hang (a man)
 impiegato *m.* employee
 imporre (196) impose
 importare import
 impossibile impossible
 impostare post, mail
 imprigionare imprison
 improvviso unforeseen; all' ~ unexpectedly
 imprudente imprudent
 in in, into
 incassare set
 incasso *m.* receipts
 inchiostro *m.* ink
 incominciare commence
 incontrare meet
 indarno in vain
 indipendenza *f.* independence
 indietro back, backward
 individuo individual
 indomani *m.* (the) next day
 indovinare guess
 industria *f.* industry
 inesauribile inexhaustible
 infatti in fact
 infelice unhappy
 inferiore inferior, lower
 inferno *m.* Inferno, hell

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

<i>infimo</i> lowest	<i>lana</i> <i>f.</i> wool
<i>inganno</i> <i>m.</i> deceit	<i>lanciare</i> throw
<i>ingegnere</i> <i>m.</i> engineer	<i>lapis</i> <i>m.</i> pencil
<i>ingegno</i> <i>m.</i> talent, genius	<i>larghezza</i> <i>f.</i> width
<i>l'Inghilterra</i> <i>f.</i> England	<i>largo</i> wide
<i>inglese</i> English	<i>lasciare</i> leave, allow
<i>Inglese</i> <i>m.</i> Englishman	<i>latino</i> Latin
<i>ingrato</i> ungrateful	<i>latta</i> <i>f.</i> tin
<i>innalzare</i> raise	<i>latte</i> <i>m.</i> milk
<i>insegna</i> <i>f.</i> shop sign	<i>lavamano</i> <i>m.</i> washstand
<i>insegnare</i> teach	<i>lavarsi</i> bathe, wash
<i>insieme</i> together	<i>lavorare</i> work
<i>insigne</i> remarkable	<i>lavoro</i> <i>m.</i> task
<i>insudiciare</i> soil	<i>lè</i> to her; the (<i>f. pl.</i>)
<i>integro</i> whole, entire	<i>legge</i> <i>f.</i> law
<i>intelligente</i> intelligent	<i>leggendo</i> reading
<i>intendere</i> understand	<i>leggere</i> read
<i>interrotto</i> interrupted	<i>leggièro</i> light; light-colored
<i>intitolare</i> entitle	<i>legno</i> <i>m.</i> wood; carriage
<i>intravedere</i> glimpse	<i>lei</i> her; you, <i>sg.</i> (65, a)
<i>invecchiare</i> grow old	<i>lèttera</i> <i>f.</i> letter
<i>invece</i> instead; on the contrary	<i>letteratura</i> <i>f.</i> literature
<i>inverno</i> <i>m.</i> winter	<i>lètto</i> <i>p. p.</i> of <i>lèggere</i>
<i>invviare</i> send	<i>lètto</i> <i>m.</i> bed
<i>io</i> I	<i>levare</i> lift; <i>levarsi</i> rise
<i>isola</i> <i>f.</i> island	<i>lezione</i> <i>f.</i> lesson
<i>istituire</i> establish	<i>li</i> them (<i>m.</i>)
<i>istitutore, -trice</i> , instructor, teacher	<i>lì</i> there
<i>istituzione</i> <i>f.</i> institution	<i>liberazione</i> <i>f.</i> liberation
<i>l'Italia</i> <i>f.</i> Italy	<i>libero</i> free
<i>italiano</i> Italian	<i>libertà</i> <i>f.</i> liberty
	<i>libraio</i> <i>m.</i> bookseller
<i>la, lè, the</i> (<i>f. sg. and pl.</i>); her, them (<i>f.</i>)	<i>libro</i> <i>m.</i> book
<i>là</i> there	<i>licenza</i> <i>f.</i> leave
<i>labbro</i> <i>m.</i> lip	<i>lièto</i> gay, cheerful
<i>lagnarsi</i> complain	<i>limone</i> <i>m.</i> lemon
<i>lago</i> <i>m.</i> lake	<i>lingua</i> <i>f.</i> language; tongue
<i>lāico</i> lay, layman	<i>lira</i> <i>f.</i> lira, twenty cents
<i>lāmpada</i> <i>f.</i> lamp	<i>liscio</i> smooth, plain
	<i>lite</i> <i>f.</i> lawsuit

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

livornese Leghornese
Livorno Leghorn
lò him; the (*m. sg.*, 71, *b*)
lodare praise
il Lombardo-Vēneto Lombardo-Venetia
Lōndra London
lontano (da) distant (from)
loro their, them; you, *pl.* (65, *a*)
lotta *f.* struggle
lotto *m.* lottery
lūglio *m.* July
lui him
Luigi Louis
lume *m.* light, lamp
lunedì *m.* Monday
lunghezza *f.* length
lungi far
lungo long
luogo *m.* place
lusso *m.* luxury
lustrare polish, black
lustrascarpe *m.* bootblack
lutto *m.* mourning; a ~ in mourning

ma but
mācchia *f.* stain; thicket
māccina *f.* machine; ~ da scrivere typewriter
madre *f.* mother
maestà *f.* majesty
maestro, -a, teacher
māggio *m.* May
maggiore greater; elder
mai ever; non . . . ~ never
malamente badly
malanno *m.* misfortune
malattia *f.* illness
male badly; far ~ a hurt; non c'è ~ pretty well; ~ di testa headache

malgrado *m.* displeasure; ~ **che** *conj. w. subj.* notwithstanding that
mamma, mamma, *f.* mamma
māmmola *f.* violet
mancanza *f.* lack; sentire la ~ di miss
mancare fail, be lacking
māncia *f.* fee, tip
mandare send
mane *f.* morning (*poet.*); da ~ a sera from morning till night
mangiare eat
mānica *f.* sleeve
mānico *m.* handle
maniera *f.* manner
mano *f.* hand; a ~ by hand; di seconda ~ at second hand; dar la ~ a shake hands with
māntice *m.* bellows
mārcia *f.* march
marciapiēde *m.* sidewalk
mare *m.* sea; al ~ by the sea; in ~ at sea
marina *f.* navy
marinaio *m.* sailor
marito *m.* husband
martedì *m.* Tuesday
martirio *m.* martyrdom
marzo *m.* March
māschera *f.* mask
maschio male
māssimo greatest
matēria *f.* subject, matter, material
mattina *f.* morning
mazzolino *m.* bouquet
medesimo same, self
medicina *f.* medicine
mēdico *m.* physician
mēglio better (*adv.*)
mēla *f.* apple
memōria *f.* memory

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

mēno less (<i>adv.</i>); fare a ~ di do without; a ~ chē <i>conj. w. subj.</i> unless	mișero miserable, wretched
mēnte <i>f.</i> mind; a ~ by heart	mișura <i>f.</i> measure; su ~ to order
mentire lie	mite gentle
mēntre while	Mōdena a city in northern Italy
merciaio <i>m.</i> dry-goods merchant	modenēse of Modena
mercoledì <i>m.</i> Wednesday	moderno modern
meridionale southern	modesto modest
meritare deserve	modista <i>f.</i> milliner
mēse <i>m.</i> month	mōglie (<i>pl.</i> mogli) <i>f.</i> wife
mēssa <i>f.</i> Mass	mōlla <i>f.</i> spring, mainspring
mestiēre <i>m.</i> trade, craft	mōlle <i>f. pl.</i> tongs
metà <i>f.</i> half	moltitūdine <i>f.</i> multitude
metallo <i>m.</i> metal	molto , -i, much, many
mētro <i>m.</i> meter	momento <i>m.</i> moment; a momenti in a minute
metrōpoli <i>f.</i> metropolis	mōnaco <i>m.</i> monk
mēttēre put, put on; mēttersi a be- gin; mēttersi a sedere sit down	monarca <i>m.</i> monarch
mēzzanotte <i>f.</i> midnight	monārchico monarchical
mēzzo <i>m.</i> half; middle; in ~ a in the middle of	mōndo <i>m.</i> world
mēzzogiorno <i>m.</i> mid-day	monēllo <i>m.</i> rascal
mi , me, me	monēta <i>f.</i> coin, piece of money
miglio (<i>pl.</i> miglia) <i>m.</i> mile	montagna <i>f.</i> mountain
migliore better (<i>adj.</i>)	montare mount, climb
Milano Milan	montone <i>m.</i> sheep
milione <i>m.</i> million	morire (156) die
militare military	mormorare murmur
militarișmo <i>m.</i> militarism	morte <i>f.</i> death
militarista <i>m.</i> militarist	morto dead
mille thousand, a thousand	mostrare show
minaccia <i>f.</i> threat	mostro <i>m.</i> monster
minacciare threaten	moto <i>m.</i> motion
miniēra <i>f.</i> mine	movimento <i>m.</i> movement
minimo least	muggire low
ministro <i>m.</i> minister	mughetto <i>m.</i> lily-of-the-valley
minore less; younger	muovere (110, d, i) move
minuto <i>m.</i> minute	muricciuolo <i>m.</i> low wall
mio my	muro <i>m.</i> wall
	mușeo <i>m.</i> museum
	mutare change; ~ di pensiero change one's mind

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

Nāpoli Naples
nāscere be born
nascōndere hide
nascōsto hidden; di ∞ secretly
nastro, nastrino, m. ribbon
Natale m. Christmas; **buon ∞**
 Merry Christmas
natura f. nature
naturale natural
navale naval
nazionale national
nazionalità f. nationality
nazione f. nation
ne adv. thence; *pron.* of it, of them
nē conj. neither, nor; ∞ . . . ∞ neither
 . . . nor
nēbbia f. fog
necessārio necessary
negōzio m. shop
nel, nello, nella, negli, nei, 75
nemico m. enemy
nemmeno not even
neppure nor . . . either; not even
nero black
nessuno no one
neve f. snow
nevicare snow
nido m. nest
niēte nothing; you're welcome
nipote, nipotino, m. nephew
nitrire neigh
nō no
nōbile noble
nōce f. walnut
nōi we, us
nōia f. annoyance; **dar ∞ a** annoy
nōioso annoying
nōme m. name
nōn not, no
nondimēno nevertheless

nōnno m. grandfather, grandparent
nōno ninth
nonostante chē conj. w. subj. not-
 withstanding that
nōstro our, ours
notizie f. pl. news
nōtte f. night; di ∞ by night
novanta ninety
nōve nine
novembre m. November
novità f. novelty, notion
nozione f. notion, idea
nōzze f. pl. wedding
nulla nothing
nuora f. daughter-in-law
nuovo new; di ∞ again
nutrire nourish

o, ođ (39), or; o . . . o either . . . or
o or o now, well now
occasione f. occasion, opportunity
ōcchio m. eye; **a quattr' ōcchi** tête-à-
 tête; **dar nell' ∞** be conspicuous
occidentale western
occōrrere impers. need; **occorrente**
 requisite, wanted
occupare occupy
offrire offer
oggi to-day
ogni every
ognuno every one
olmo m. elm
ombrello m. umbrella
onda f. wave
onomāstico m. saint's-day
onore m. honor
ōpera f. work
operaio m. workman
ōra now; **ōr ∞** just now; **ōr sōno** ago
oramāi, ormāi, henceforth

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

ordinamento *m.* arrangement

ordinare order

ordine *m.* order

orecchino *m.* earring

orecchio *m.* ear; ∞ *da mercante*
deaf ear

organizzazione *f.* organization

orlo *m.* edge

oro *m.* gold

orologio *m.* watch

orrore *m.* horror

osare dare

oscuro obscure

osservare observe

osso *m.* bone

ottanta eighty

ottavo eighth

ottimo best

otto eight

ottobre *m.* October

ove where

pacco *m.* parcel

pace *f.* peace

padre *m.* father

padrone *m.* landlord

paesaggio *m.* landscape

paese *m.* country; village

pagare pay, pay for

pagina *f.* page

paglia *f.* straw

paio *m.* (*pl.* *paia*) pair

palazzo *m.* palace

palla *f.* ball

panchetto *m.* footstool

pane *m.* bread

paniere *m.* basket

panna *f.* whipped cream

panorama *m.* view

Päolo Paul

paradiso *m.* paradise

paragonare compare

pareggiare equal

parente *m.* relative

parere (161) appear

pari even

Parigi Paris

parlare speak

pärröco *m.* parish priest

parte *f.* part, side, share

partire depart

parvenire (138) arrive

Pasqua *f.* Easter

passare pass

passeggiare walk

passaggiata *f.* walk; fare una ∞
take a walk

passaggio *m.* walk

passo *m.* step; passage

pasta *f.* cake

patire suffer

pätria *f.* country, fatherland

patrimönio *m.* patrimony

patriöta *m.* patriot

patto *m.* bargain; a ∞ *che conj. w.*
subj. on condition that

paüra *f.* fear; aver ∞ *di* be afraid of

pazienza *f.* patience

pazzo mad

peccato *m.* sin; what a pity

peggio worse (*adv.*)

peggiöre worse (*adj.*)

pei, pel, 75

pelle *f.* skin

pellegrino *m.* pilgrim

penna *f.* pen; ∞ *a serbatöio* fountain
pen

pensare think, reflect; ∞ *a* think of

pensiëro *m.* thought; dar ∞ *a* worry
(*tr.*); stare in ∞ worry (*intr.*)

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

pensiōne *f.* board; boarding-house;
boarding-school
pentirsi repent
per for; **per uno** apiece
pera *f.* pear
perchè why; because; so that
perciò therefore
pērdere lose
peregrinare wander, go on pilgrim-
age
pericolo *m.* danger
pericoloso dangerous
permesso *m.* permission, permit me
permēttre permit
pero *m.* pear-tree
però however
perseguitare persecute
persōna *f.* person
pesante heavy
pēsko *m.* peach-tree
pēssimo worst
Petrarca Petrarch
petto *m.* breast
pezzo *m.* piece
piacere a (185) please; **per** ~
please; **far** ~ **a** do a favor for
piāggia *f.* slope
piāngere weep
pianista *m.* pianist
piano *m.* plain; *adv.* softly, gently
pianta *f.* plant
piattino (m.) da tazza saucer
piatto *m.* plate, dish; course
piazza *f.* square, open place
piccino tiny
piccolo small
piēde *m.* foot; **a piēdi** on foot
piēga *f.* plait
il Piemonte Piedmont
piemontese Piedmontese

piēno full
piētra *f.* stone
pigliare take
piōvere rain
pittore *m.* painter, artist
più more
piuma *f.* plume
piuolo *m.* rung; **scala a piugli** ladder
piuttōsto rather
pneumātico *m.* tire
poco *adv.* little, a little; *pl.* **pōchi** *adj.*
few, a few; **a** ~ **a** ~ little by little
poēta *m.* poet
poetare poetize
pōi then
poichè since (*causal*)
politica *f.* politics
politico *adj.* political; *m.* statesman
pōlvēre *f.* powder
pomeridiano of the afternoon
pompare pump
pōnte *m.* bridge
pontificio papal, pontifical
pōpolo *m.* people
pōrgere stretch out
pōrre (196) put
pōrta *f.* door, gate
portare carry
portata *f.* reach, ability; **a** ~ **di**
mano within reach of one's hand
pōrto *m.* harbor
posata *f.* place at table, cover
posiziōne *f.* position, location
possibile possible
possibilità *f.* possibility
pōsso *1 sg. pres. ind. of potere*
pōsta *f.* post, mail; **a** ~ on purpose
postale postal; **cartolina** ~ post card
postino *m.* postman
pōsto *m.* place, room

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

potere (168) can, be able; <i>non</i> ∼ <i>a</i> <i>meno</i> <i>di</i> cannot help	problema <i>m.</i> problem
potrēbbero 3 <i>pl. past fut. of potere</i>	produzione <i>f.</i> production
pōvero poor	professore <i>m.</i> professor
povertà <i>f.</i> poverty	profondamente profoundly
pranzare dine	proibire prevent, forbid
pranzo <i>m.</i> dinner	promettere promise
pratica <i>f.</i> practice	pronto ready; all aboard
prático practical; ∼ <i>di</i> familiar with	proprietà <i>f.</i> property
prato <i>m.</i> meadow	prōprio own
preferire prefer	prōva <i>f.</i> trial; fitting
pregare ask, pray	provare try, try on
prēgio <i>m.</i> value	prudente prudent
prēgo don't mention it	pulire clean
prēndere take; prēndersela take offense	punire punish
preoccuparsi di be concerned with	puntare aim
preparare prepare	punto <i>m.</i> point
presentare present	purchè <i>conj. w. subj.</i> provided that
presidente <i>m.</i> president	pure however; pray
prestare lend	purgatōrio <i>m.</i> purgatory
prēsto quickly, soon	
presumere assume	qua here
prevalere (220) prevail	quaderno <i>m.</i> note-book
prezioso precious	quadrettino <i>m.</i> check
prezzo <i>m.</i> price	quadro <i>m.</i> picture
prigione <i>f.</i> prison	qualche (<i>sg. only</i>) some
prima before, earlier; quanto ∼ <i>as</i> soon as possible; ∼ chē <i>conj. w.</i> <i>subj.</i> before; ∼ <i>di</i> <i>prep.</i> before	quale, -i , such as
primavera <i>f.</i> spring	qualora whenever
primitivo primitive	qualunque whatever
primo first	quando when
principale principal	quanto how much; <i>in</i> ∼ <i>a</i> as for, regarding; per ∼ however
principe <i>m.</i> prince	quaranta forty
principessa <i>f.</i> princess	quarto <i>m.</i> quarter, fourth
principiare begin	quattōrdici fourteen
princípio <i>m.</i> beginning; fin dal ∼ from the first	quattro four
	quello that; quel chē that which, what
	quercia <i>f.</i> oak
	questo this; quest' altro next, coming

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

quiète <i>f.</i> quiet	riabbracciare embrace again
quindici fifteen	riaprire reopen
quinto fifth	riavere recover, get back
	ricco rich
raccomandare mend; recommend;	ricevere receive
raccomandarsi warn, urge	richiedere demand
raccomandazione <i>f.</i> warning, recom-	ricontare count over
mendation	ricordarsi di remember
raccontare narrate	ridare give again, give back
rado rare; di ∞ seldom	ridere laugh
raffreddore <i>m.</i> cold; prendere un ∞	ridicolo ridiculous
catch cold	rifare remake, rebuild
ragazza <i>f.</i> girl	rifiutare refuse
ragazzo <i>m.</i> boy	rigato striped
ragione <i>f.</i> reason; aver ∞ be right	rigoroso rigorous
rallentare slacken speed	rimanere (129) remain
rame <i>m.</i> copper, brass	rimedio <i>m.</i> remedy; non c'è ∞ there
rappresentare represent	is no help for it
re <i>m.</i> king	rimproverare reprove
reale royal	rimprovero <i>m.</i> reproof
recare bring, take; recarsi take one's	rincrescere <i>impers.</i> pain, cause sor-
way	row; mi rincresce I'm sorry
recente recent; di ∞ recently	rinomato famous
recluta <i>f.</i> recruit	rinunziare a renounce
redimere redeem	riparare take refuge
redingote (<i>Fr.</i>) <i>f.</i> frock-coat	ripetere repeat
règgere rule	risata <i>f.</i> laugh, laughter
Reggio a city in northern Italy	rischio <i>m.</i> risk
regina <i>f.</i> queen	riso <i>m.</i> laugh
regnante <i>m.</i> ruler	risorgimento <i>m.</i> resurrection
regno <i>m.</i> kingdom	risparmiare save, spare
relativo relating	rispettabile respectable
remo <i>m.</i> oar; barca a ∞ row-boat	rispondere respond
Reño Rhine	risultato <i>m.</i> result
repubblicano republican	ritornare return
resistenza <i>f.</i> resistance	ritratto <i>m.</i> portrait
restare remain	riunire assemble
resto <i>m.</i> rest; change (money)	riuscire (204) succeed
rete <i>f.</i> net	rivedere see again; a rivederla
retta <i>f.</i> heed; dar ∞ give heed	au revoir

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

rivoltare turn back	sarta <i>f.</i> dressmaker
rivoluzionário revolutionary	sarto <i>m.</i> tailor
rôba (<i>collective</i>) <i>f.</i> things	sãvio wise
rocchetto <i>m.</i> spool	la Savoia Savoy
Roma Rome	şbadigliare yawn
romanzo <i>m.</i> novel	şbagliare make a mistake
rômpere break	şbarazzare rid
rôşa <i>f.</i> rose	şbarcare land
rôssso red	şbarco <i>m.</i> disembarkation
rôta <i>f.</i> wheel	şbăttere rout
rotare (110, <i>d</i>) turn	scaffale <i>m.</i> shelf
rovêscio <i>m.</i> reverse side; a ~ up- side down; piôvere a ~ rain in torrents	scala <i>f.</i> stair; ~ a chiôcciola winding stair; ~ a piuqli ladder
rôzzo rough	scalino <i>m.</i> step of stair
rumorôso noisy	scarafâggio <i>m.</i> beetle
	scârico run down
	scarpa <i>f.</i> shoe
sâbato <i>m.</i> Saturday	scâtola <i>f.</i> box
sacco <i>m.</i> bag	scêgliere (211) choose
sacrifizio <i>m.</i> sacrifice	scellerato criminal
sacro sacred	scêndere descend
sala <i>f.</i> hall; ~ da pranzo dining-room	schianto <i>m.</i> crash
salire go up	schioppo <i>m.</i> gun
salita <i>f.</i> rise, slope	sciênza <i>f.</i> science
salone <i>m.</i> parlor	scintilla <i>f.</i> spark
salotto <i>m.</i> sitting-room	sciolto loose
saltare in aria be blown up	sciôpero <i>m.</i> strike
salutare salute	sciupare spoil
salute <i>f.</i> health, safety, salvation	scôglio <i>m.</i> reef
saluto <i>m.</i> greeting	scolare <i>m.</i> pupil
salvare save	scolástico scholastic
salvezza <i>f.</i> safety	scollato low-necked
salvo safe; in ~ in safety	scommessa <i>f.</i> wager
sangue <i>m.</i> blood	scompartimento <i>m.</i> compartment
santo <i>m.</i> saint; <i>adj.</i> holy	scopo <i>m.</i> purpose
santo, san, Saint	scoppiare burst
sapere (132) learn, know, know how; ~ di smack of	scoprire discover
sapiënte wise	scorso last, past
saracino Saracen	scozzese Scotch; checked, plaid
	scricchiolare creak

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

scrittore *m.* writer
scrivere write
scudo *m.* shield
scuola *f.* school
scuotere (110, *d*, 1) shake
scuro dark
scusa *f.* excuse
se if
sè 3 *sg.* and *pl. disj. refl.*
sebbene *conj. w. subj.* although
secolo *m.* century
secondo second; *prep.* according to
sedere sit
sēdici sixteen
sēggiola *f.* chair
segno *m.* sign
segreto *m.* secret
seguire follow
seguire follow
sēi six
seicento six hundred
selva *f.* forest
selvaggio wild, savage
sembrare seem
sēmplice simple
sēmpre always
senatore *m.* senator
Senna *f.* Seine
sentimento *m.* sentiment
sentinella *f.* sentinel
sentire feel
senza without
sepolcreto *m.* cemetery
sera *f.* evening; *buona* ∼ good after-
noon, good evening
serbatoio *m.* reservoir; *penna a* ∼
fountain pen
serenamente serenely
sērio serious; *sul* ∼ seriously
serrare lock

servire serve; ∼ *di* serve as; *ser-*
virsi di make use of
servizio, servizino, *m.* service
sessanta sixty
sēsto sixth
sēta *f.* silk
sēte *f.* thirst; *aver* ∼ be thirsty
settanta seventy
sētte seven
settembre *m.* September
settimana *f.* week
sēttimo seventh
sfacciato bold
sgōnfio empty, flat, deflated
sgridare scold
si 3 *sg.* and *pl. refl. pron.*
sì yes; so
sia *sg. subj. of ēssere*
siamo 1 *pl. pres. ind. of ēssere*
siccome as, since
la Sicilia Sicily
sicuro sure
signora *f.* lady, married woman,
Mrs.
signore *m.* gentleman, sir, Mr.
signorina *f.* young lady, unmarried
woman, Miss
silēnzio *m.* silence
sīmbolo *m.* symbol
simpātico nice, sympathetic, con-
genial
sincerità *f.* sincerity
sincero sincere
singulto *m.* sob
sinistro left
slittare slide
smarrirsi lose one's way
sociale social
socialista *m.* socialist
sodisfatto satisfied

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- sodo** hard, solid · **cappello** ∼ Derby hat
soffrire suffer
soggetto *adj.* subject; *m.* subject
soggezione *f.* subjection; timidity, embarrassment; **aver** ∼ be timid, nervous
soglia *f.* threshold
sognare dream
sogno *m.* dream
soldato *m.* soldier
sole *m.* sun
solenne solemn
solito: **per il** ∼ usually; **come al** ∼ as usual
solitudine *f.* solitude
solo single, only (*adj.*)
soltanto only (*adv.*)
somma *f.* sum
sommo highest, supreme
sonare (110, d) ring, play
sonnechiare nap
sonno *m.* sleep; **aver** ∼ be sleepy
soprabito *m.* overcoat
soprattutto above all
sopravvivere survive
sorbire sip
sorella *f.* sister
sorellina *f.* little sister
sorpesa *f.* surprise
sorte *f.* kind; lot
sortire go out
sostegno *m.* support
sottana *f.* petticoat, skirt
sotterraneo underground
sotto under
la Spagna Spain
spagnolo Spanish
spalla *f.* shoulder
sparare fire
spargere scatter
sparire disappear
spasso *m.* walk; **andare a** ∼ go to walk
spaventare frighten
spazzola *f.* brush
speciale special
spèce *f.* kind, sort; **far** ∼ a surprise
speculatore *m.* speculator
spedale *m.* hospital
spedire send
speditamente fluently
sperare hope
spesa *f.* expense
spesso often
spettacolo *m.* spectacle
spezzare destroy, tear to pieces
spia *f.* spy
spicciarsi hasten
spiegare unfold
spirito *m.* spirit
sporgersi lean out
sportello *m.* ticket window, car window
sta' a sg. imper. of stare
stagione *f.* season; **mezza** ∼ between seasons
stamane this morning
stampa *f.* press
stancarsi become tired
stanco tired
stanotte to-night; last night
stanza *f.* room
stare (166) be, stay; ∼ di casa reside
starnutire sneeze
starò 1 *sg. fut. ind. of stare*
stasera this evening; this afternoon
stato *m.* state

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

statuto *m.* constitution
stazione *f.* station
Stefano Stephen
sterzare turn (a vehicle)
stesso same, self; *io* ∼ I myself
stimare consider
stivale *m.* boot
stoffa *f.* goods
storia *f.* history, story
strada *f.* road; ∼ *sotterranea* under-ground railway
strage *f.* butchery
straniere *m.* foreigner, alien
straordinario extraordinary
strapazzo *m.* abuse
strèpito *m.* noise
stretto narrow; *p. p.* of *stringere*
stringa *f.* shoe-lace
stringere squeeze, press
strumento *m.* instrument
studiare study
stúdio *m.* study
studioso studious
stupefatto amazed
su, sur (39), on; above
sùbito immediately
sublime sublime
succedere a succeed (*tr.*)
succhiare suck
sugli, sui, sul, sullo, sulla, 75
suo his, her
suocero *m.* father-in-law
suolo *m.* soil
superiore upper, superior
superiorità *f.* superiority
supplizio *m.* execution, torture
supremo supreme
svegliare waken
svventura *f.* misfortune
svizzeri Swiss

svogliato unenthusiastic, unwilling
svoltare swerve
tacco *m.* heel of shoe
tacere (185; 1 *pl. ind. pres.* *taciamo*)
 be silent
tagliare cut
tale such; *un* ∼ such a
Tamigi Thames
tanto, -i, so much, so many
tardi late; *far* ∼ be late
tasca *f.* pocket
tassa *f.* tax
tavola *f.* table
tazza *f.* cup
tè *m.* tea
teatro *m.* theater
tedesco German
tela *f.* linen
telefonare telephone
téma *m.* theme
téma *f.* fear
temere fear
tèmpo *m.* time, weather; *a* ∼ on time; *per* ∼ early; *col* ∼ in time, in the course of time; *fa bel* ∼ it is fine weather
tenere hold
terminare terminate
termosifone *m.* hot-water furnace
tèrra *f.* earth
terrazza *f.* balcony
terribile terrible
território *m.* territory
tèrzo third
tèsa *f.* hat-brim
tèsta *f.* head
Tevere *m.* Tiber
ti, tè, thee
tiene 3 *sg. ind. pres.* of *tenere*

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

tingere tinge; tingersi be colored	trēno <i>m.</i> train
tipico typical	trēnta thirty
tirannia <i>f.</i> tyranny	tricolore tri-colored
tiranno <i>m.</i> tyrant	trionfo <i>m.</i> triumph
tirare pull; ∞ vento blow; ∞ via continue	triplice triple
toccare touch; ∞ a concern, be the turn of	triplo triple
tacco <i>m.</i> stroke of bell; al ∞ at one P.M.	tristezza <i>f.</i> sadness
Tommaso Thomas	troppo too, too much
tonare (110, <i>d</i>) thunder	trovare find
tono <i>m.</i> tone, tint	truppe <i>f. pl.</i> troops
tornacento <i>m.</i> advantage	tu thou
tornare return; ∞ conto (a) come out right, be of advantage (to)	tuo thy
torre <i>f.</i> tower	tuono <i>m.</i> thunder
torrente <i>m.</i> torrent	Turco Turk
torto <i>m.</i> wrong; aver ∞ be wrong	tutto all
la Toscana Tuscany	ubbidire a obey
tossire cough	ubriaco drunk
tovaglia <i>f.</i> tablecloth	uccello <i>m.</i> bird
tra between, among	udire (192) hear
tradimento <i>m.</i> betrayal, treachery	ufficiale <i>m.</i> officer
tradire betray	uguale equal, exactly like
traditore, -tōra or -trice , traitor, traitress	ultimo last
tranne except; ∞ che <i>conj. w. subj.</i> except that	umano human
trattare treat; trattarsi di be a question of	un a, one
tratto <i>m.</i> trait; a un ∞ suddenly, all at once	undecimo eleventh
traversare cross	undici eleven
travestire disguise	unico only, unique
tre three	unità <i>f.</i> union
tredecimo thirteenth	unito united
trēdici thirteen	università <i>f.</i> university
tremare tremble	uno (59, <i>b</i>), un , una , a, one
tremendo tremendous	uomo <i>m.</i> (<i>pl.</i> uōmini) man
	uopo <i>m.</i> need; è d' ∞, fa d' ∞, it is necessary
	uovo <i>m.</i> (<i>pl.</i> uōva) egg
	urlo <i>m.</i> howl
	urtare hurl
	uscio <i>m.</i> exit, doorway
	uscire (204) go out

ITALIAN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY

- uscita** *f.* exit
uva *f.* grape
va goes
vacanza *f.* vacation
vacca *f.* cow
valere (220) be worth; **valersi** di
 avail oneself of
valigia *f.* valise
valle *f.* valley
vampiro *m.* vampire
vanno 3 *pl. ind. pres. of andare*
vasto vast
vecchio old
vede sees
vedere see; **non** ~ **l'ora** di not be
 able to wait to, long to
vedetta *f.* scout
vela *f.* sail; **far** ~ set sail
vendemmia *f.* vintage
vendere sell
vendita *f.* sale
venerdì *m.* Friday
Venezia Venice
veneziano Venetian
venire (138) come
ventaglio *m.* fan
venti twenty
vento *m.* wind; **tirar** ~ blow
veramente truly
verde green
vergogna *f.* shame
vergognarsi be ashamed
verità *f.* truth
vero true
verso towards
vestiario *m.* wardrobe; **roba** da ~
 clothing
vestirsi dress oneself
vestito, vestitino, m. dress
vettura *f.* carriage
vi, ve, *adv.* = **ci**; *pron.* you (*dat.*
 and acc.)
via *adv.* off, away; **e via** dicendo et
 cetera
via *f.* street
viaggiare travel
viaggiatore *m.* traveler
viaggio *m.* journey; **buon** ~ a pleas-
 ant journey to you
vicenda *f.* turn; a ~ in turn
vicino *m.* neighbor; ~ a *prep.* near
viñni 2 *sg. pres. ind. of venire*
vile cowardly
villa *f.* country-place
vincere conquer, win
vinto *p.p. of vincere*
virtù *f.* virtue, power
visita *f.* visit; **fare una** ~ a call
 upon
visitare visit
viso *m.* face
vista *f.* view; **far** ~ di make a pre-
 tense of
visto *p.p. of vedere*
vita *f.* life
vite *f.* grape-vine
vittima *f.* victim
vittoria *f.* victory
Vittorio Emanuele Victor Emman-
 uel
vittorioso victorious
vivacità *f.* vivacity
vivere live, be alive
vivo alive
vogliamo 1 *pl. pres. ind. of volere*
voglio 1 *sg. pres. ind. of volere*
vòi you
volante *m.* steering-wheel
volentieri gladly, willingly

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

volere (133) wish, will; ∞ bene a
love

volontà *f.* will

volta *f.* time, a time; una ∞ once

voltarsi turn (*intr.*)

voluto desired, willed; *p.p.* of vo-
lere

Vossignoria *f.* Your Lordship

vostro your

vuole 3 *sg. pres. ind. of volere*

zia *f.* aunt

zio *m.* uncle

zitto hush

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

a, an, un, uno, una	agree accordarsi
able capace; be ∼ potere	ahead avanti; straight ∼ diritto
aboard a bordo; all ∼ pronti	aim puntare
about <i>prep.</i> intorno a, dintorno a; <i>adv.</i> circa; be ∼ to star per	air aria <i>f.</i>
absurd assurdo	alive vivo
abuse strapazzo <i>m.</i>	all tutto; above ∼ soprattutto
accept accettare	already già
accompany accompagnare	also anche
according to secondo	alter alterare
account bilancio <i>m.</i>	always sempre
accustom avvezzare, abituare	amazed stupefatto
ache dolore	ambition ambizione <i>f.</i>
acquaintance conoscenza <i>f.</i>	America l' Amērica <i>f.</i>
acquainted with : be ∼ conōscere	American americano
acquire acquistare	among tra, fra
act agire	amuse divertire; ∼ oneself divertirsi
Adriatic <i>adj.</i> adriatico	ancient antico, -chi
advantage vantaggio, tornaconto <i>m.</i> ; be of ∼ to tornar conto a	and e, ed
advice consiglio <i>m.</i>	anger cōllera <i>f.</i>
adviser consigliere <i>m.</i>	annoy dar noia a
affair affare <i>m.</i>	annoyance noia <i>f.</i>
affectionate affezionato	anthology antologia <i>f.</i>
afraid : be ∼ (of) aver paura (di)	any <i>adj.</i> alcuno; <i>pron.</i> ne
after <i>prep.</i> dopo; <i>conj.</i> dopo che	anything qualunque cosa, ogni cosa
afternoon dopopranzo <i>m.</i> ; <i>adj.</i> po- meridiano; good ∼ buona sera	apartment appartamento <i>m.</i>
afterward dopo	apiece per uno
again di nuovo	appear comparire
against contro, contra	apple pomo <i>m.</i> ; mēla <i>f.</i>
age età <i>f.</i> ; at the ∼ of in età di	approach avvicinarsi a
ago fa, or sono	April aprile <i>m.</i>
	Aristotle Aristōtile
	arm braccio <i>m.</i>
	arms armi <i>f. pl.</i>

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- army** eșșercito *m.*
arrangement ordinamento *m.*
arrive arrivare, giüngere, parvenire
art arte *f.*
artist artista *c.*
as siccome; ~ **for** in quanto a
ashamed: be ~ vergognarsi
ask (for) domandare (di)
assemble riunirsi
assume presumere
at a, ad
attention: pay ~ stare attento
attentive attento
attract attrarre
August agosto *m.*
Augustine Agostino
aunt zia *f.*
Austrian austriaco
author autore, scrittore *m.*
automobile automobile *c.*
autumn autunno *m.*
avail oneself (of) valersi (di)
avoid evitare
await attendere, aspettare
away via

baby bimbo, -a
back dōsso *m.*; **at the** ~ **of** in fondo a; **on the** ~ **of** addōsso a
bad cattivo; **too** ~! peccato!
badly male
bag sacco *m.*, borsa *f.*
baggage bagaglio *m.*; ~ **room** bagagliaio, depōsito *m.*
baker fornaio *m.*
balcony terrazza *f.*
ball palla *f.*
band banda *f.*
basket paniere *m.*
bath bagno *m.*

battle battāgia *f.*
be ēssere
beach spiāggia *f.*
bearings *see* compass
beat battere
beautiful bello
beauty bellezza *f.*
because perché
become diventare, divenire
bed letto *m.*
bed-room cāmera (*f.*) da letto
bee ape *f.*
beetle scarafaggio *m.*
before (*time*) *adv.* prima; *prep.* prima di; *conj.* prima che
before (*place*) *prep.* innanzi a, dinanzi a, davanti a; *adv.* avanti, innanzi
begin cominciare, principiare
beginning principio *m.*
behind *adv.* indietro, dietro; *prep.* dietro a
Belgian belga
Belgium il Belgio
believe credere
belong appartenere
below *prep.* sotto; *adv.* abbasso
benefit beneficio *m.*
best *adj.* il migliore; *adv.* il meglio; **do one's** ~ fare di tutto, fare il possibile
betray tradire
better *adj.* migliore; *adv.* meglio
between fra
beyond *prep.* al di là di, di là da, oltre
big grosso
bill conto *m.*
bird uccello *m.*
birthday giorno natale, compleanno *m.*

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

black nero	burn ardere, bruciare
blame colpa <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> biasimare, dare addosso a	but ma
blind cieco	butchery strage <i>f.</i>
blood sangue <i>m.</i>	butter burro <i>m.</i>
bloom fiorire; in ∞ fiorito	buy comprare
blotter cartasuga, cartasugante <i>f.</i>	by da; (beside) accanto a
blow tirar vento; ∞ up saltare in aria	café caffè <i>m.</i>
blue azzurro, celeste	cake pasta <i>f.</i>
board, boarding-house, boarding-school, pensione <i>f.</i>	call chiamare; ∞ on far visita a; be called chiamarsi
boat barca <i>f.</i>	can, be able, potere
boil bollire	cane bastone <i>m.</i>
bold ardito	cannon cannone <i>m.</i>
book libro <i>m.</i>	caress carezza <i>f.</i>
bookseller libraio <i>m.</i>	carnation garofano <i>m.</i>
boot stivale <i>m.</i> ; ∞ black lustrascarpe <i>m.</i>	carriage carrozza, vettura <i>f.</i> , legno <i>m.</i>
born nato; be ∞ nascere	carry portare
both tutt' e due, entrambi	case caso <i>m.</i> ; in any ∞ in ogni caso
bottom fondo <i>m.</i> ; at the ∞ of in fondo a	cash: in ∞ a contanti
boundary confine <i>m.</i>	castle castello <i>m.</i>
bouquet mazzolino <i>m.</i>	cathedral duomo <i>m.</i> , cattedrale <i>f.</i>
Bourbon Borbone <i>m.</i>	cease cessare [cimitero <i>m.</i>
box scatola <i>f.</i>	cemetery sepolcreto, campo santo,
boy ragazzo <i>m.</i>	central centrale
brain cervello <i>m.</i>	century secolo <i>m.</i>
breach breccia <i>f.</i>	ceremony: stand on ∞ far complimenti
bread pane <i>m.</i>	chair seggiola <i>f.</i>
break rompere	change mutare, cambiare; ∞ one's mind mutar di pensiero; <i>n.</i> (money) resto <i>m.</i>
breast petto <i>m.</i>	chapter capitolo <i>m.</i>
bridge ponte <i>m.</i>	charcoal-burner carbonaro <i>m.</i>
brim (hat-) tesa <i>f.</i>	Charles Carlo
bring portare	chase cacciare
Britannic britannico	chat chiacchierare
brother fratello <i>m.</i>	cheek guancia <i>f.</i>
brother-in-law cognato <i>m.</i>	child fanciullo, -a, bambino, -a
brush spazzola <i>f.</i>	chocolate cioccolata <i>f.</i>
bunch mazzolino <i>m.</i>	

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

choose scēgliere	congenial simpātico
Christian cristiano	connecting comunicante
Christmas Natale <i>m.</i> ; Merry ~	conqueror conquistatore <i>m.</i>
Buon Natale	consciousness coscienza <i>f.</i>
Christopher Cristōforo	consist (of) consistere (<i>in</i>)
church chiesa <i>f.</i>	constitution statuto <i>m.</i>
citizen cittadino <i>m.</i>	consul cōnsole <i>m.</i>
city città <i>f.</i>	continue continuare
civilization civiltà <i>f.</i>	contrary contrario; on the ~ <i>in</i> -
civilized civile	vece
clap (one's hands) bāttere (le mani)	convenient cōmodo
Clara Chiara	conversation conversazione <i>f.</i>
class classe <i>f.</i>	cook cuoco <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> cuocere, fare la
classic clāssico	cucina
close chiudere	cooking cucina <i>f.</i>
coast cōsta <i>f.</i>	copper rame <i>m.</i>
coffee caffè <i>m.</i>	corner āngolo <i>m.</i> ; be at the ~ <i>of</i>
coin moneta <i>f.</i>	far āngolo cōn
cold frēddo; be ~ aver frēddo; it	corporal caporale <i>m.</i>
is ~ fa frēddo; catch ~ prēndere	correct corrīgere
un raffreddore	correspond corrispōndere
collar collare <i>m.</i> ; coat ~ bāvero <i>m.</i>	cost costare
college (of University) facoltà <i>f.</i>	cotton cotone <i>m.</i>
color colore <i>m.</i> ; be colored tingersi	cough tossire
Columbus Colōmbo	count cōnte <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> contare
come venire	countess contessa <i>f.</i>
comfortable cōmodo; make oneself	country (rural) campagna <i>f.</i> ; (<i>polit.</i>)
~ accomodarsi	paese <i>m.</i> ; (<i>fatherland</i>) pātria <i>f.</i>
command comandare, ordinare	couple coppia <i>f.</i>
commence cominciare	courage coraggio <i>m.</i>
communicate comunicare	course corsa <i>f.</i> ; of ~ naturalmente
companion compagno, -a	cousin cugino, -a
compartment scompartimento <i>m.</i>	cover coprire
compass būsola <i>f.</i>	cow vacca <i>f.</i>
complain lagnarsi	cowardly vile
compliment complimento <i>m.</i>	crane gru <i>c.</i>
condition condizione <i>f.</i> ; on ~ that	criminal scellerato
a patto che (<i>v. subj.</i>)	crusade crociata <i>f.</i>
conduct condurre	cry grido <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> gridare
conductor guārdia <i>f.</i>	cup tazza <i>f.</i>

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

cut tagliare

Cyrus Ciro

daily quotidiano

dairy cascina *f.*

damage danno *m.*; *v.* dannare

danger pericolo *m.*

dangerous pericoloso

dark buio *m.*; *adj.* scuro

daughter figlia *f.*

daughter-in-law nuora *f.*

dawn alba *f.*

day giorno *m.*; period of a ~ giornata *f.*; ~ by ~ giorno a giorno; by the ~ a giornata; by ~ di giorno

daybreak: at ~ sul far del giorno

dead morto

dear caro

death morte *f.*

deceit inganno *m.*

December dicembre *m.*

declare dichiarare

defeat sconfitta *f.*

defend difendere

defense difesa *f.*

degenerate degenerare

demand richiedere

depart partire

depress deprimere

descend scendere

desire desidero *m.*; *v.* desiderare

desired voluto

dessert dolce *m.*

dialogue dialogo *m.*

die morire

difficult difficile

dine desinare, pranzare

dining-room sala *f.* da pranzo

dint: by ~ of a forza di

direct dirigere

disagreeable sgradevole

disappear sparire

discover scoprire

disembarkation sbarco *m.*

disguise travestire

dish piatto *m.*

displease dispiacere a

distant lontano, discosto

disturb disturbare

divide dividere

do fare; *aux.* 62, b, I; how do you ~? come sta?

dog cane *m.*

domestic domestico

done fatto

door porta *f.*

double doppio

doubt dubbio *m.*; *v.* dubitare

down giù; ~ there laggiù, costaggiù; ~ town al centro; ~ stairs abbasso

dozen dozzina *f.*

dramatic drammatico

dream sogno *m.*; *v.* sognare

dress vestito *m.*; ~ oneself vestirsi

dressmaker sarta *f.*

drive condurre; ~ out cacciare

drunk ubriaco

duchy ducato *m.*; grand ~ granducato *m.*

duke duca *m.*

dumpling gnocco *m.*

duty dovere *m.*

dwell abitare, dimorare

each ciascuno

ear orecchio *m.*

early per tempo

earth terra *f.*

east levante *m.*

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

Easter Pasqua <i>f.</i>	ever mai
eastern orientale	every ogni
easy fācile	everybody ognuno, tutti
echo ȅco <i>c.</i>	everything tutto
effect effettuare	everywhere dappertutto
egg uovo <i>m.</i>	except tranne
eight otto	excursion gita <i>f.</i>
eighteen diciotto	excuse scușare
eighteenth dȅcimo ottavo	execution supplizio <i>m.</i>
eighth ottavo	executioner boia <i>m.</i>
eighty ottanta	exercise-book quaderno <i>m.</i>
elbow gōmito <i>m.</i>	exile eșilio <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> eșiliare
elder maggiore	exit uscita <i>f.</i>
elect eligere	expense spȅsa <i>f.</i>
elegant elegante	expose esporre
eleven ūndici	express esprimere
eleventh undiceșimo	
elm olmo <i>m.</i>	face faccia <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> far frōnte a; on one's ~ bocconi
embrace abbracciare	fact : in ~ infatti
emperor imperatore <i>m.</i>	fail fallire
empire impero <i>m.</i>	fair bello; it is ~ weather fa bel tȅmpo
end fine <i>f.</i> ; at the ~ of in fōndo a	faith fede <i>f.</i>
endow dotare	falcon falco <i>m.</i>
enemy nemico <i>m.</i>	fall cadere; ~ upon avventarsi su
England l'Inghilterra <i>f.</i>	family famiglia <i>f.</i>
English inglese	famous famōso, rinomato
enough assai, bastante; be ~ bastare	fan ventāglio <i>m.</i>
enter entrare	fat grasso
entrance entrata <i>f.</i>	father padre <i>m.</i>
enumerate annoverare	father-in-law suȅcero <i>m.</i>
envelope busta <i>f.</i>	fatigue fatica <i>f.</i>
equal uguale	fault colpa <i>f.</i>
era ȅra <i>f.</i>	favor favore <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> favorire
establish stabilire, istituire	fear paura <i>f.</i> , timore <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> aver paura, temere
et cetera ȅ così in sȅguito, ȅ via dicȅndo	February febbraio <i>m.</i>
Etruscan etrusco	feel sentire
even <i>adj.</i> pari; <i>adv.</i> pure; not ~ neppure	felt feltro <i>m.</i>
evening sȅra <i>f.</i> ; good ~ buȅna sȅra	

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

festival festa *f.*
few pochi, -e
fidelity fedeltà *f.*
fifteen quindici
fifteenth quindicēsimο
fifth quinto
fifty cinquanta
fig fico *m.*
fight combattere
figure figurare
finally finalmente
find trovare
fine bello; fino
finger dito *m.*
finish finire, terminare
fire fuoco *m.*; *v.* sparare; set on ~
 dar fuoco a
first primo
fitting prova *f.*
five cinque
flag bandiera *f.*
flee fuggire.
Florence Firenze
Florentine fiorentino
flower fiore *m.*
fluently speditamente
fog nebbia *f.*
folk gente *f.*
follow seguire, seguire
foot piede *m.*; on ~ a piedi
footstool panchetto *m.*
for per; (*time*) da; as ~ in quanto a
force forza *f.*
forced forzato
foreign straniera *m.*
foreigner forestiere, straniera *m.*
forest foresta *f.*
forget dimenticare
fork forchetta *f.*
forty quaranta

four quattro; on all ~s carponi
fourteen quattōrdici
fourteenth decimoquarto
fourth quarto
franc lira *f.*
France la Frāncia
Francis Francesco
free libero
freeze gelare
French francese
Frenchman Francēse *m.*
friar frate *m.*
Friday venerdì *m.*
friend amico, -a
from da; (*time*) fin da
front fronte *f.*; in ~ of davanti a
frugal frugale
fruit frutto *m.*
fulfill avverare
full pieno

garden giardino *m.*
gather cōgliere
general *adj.* generale; *n.* generale *m.*
generally generalmente
genius genio *m.*
gentle mite
gentleman signore *m.*
George Giorgio
German tedesco
Germany l'Alemagna *f.*
get ottenere; ~ back riavere; ~ up
 levarsi
girl ragazza *f.*; little ~ bambina *f.*
give dare; ~ up rinunciare a
glass bicchiere *m.*; (*material*) ve-
 tro *m.*
glimpse intravedere
glory gloria *f.*
glove guanto *m.*

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

glover guantaio *m.*
 go andare; ∞ out andar fuori; ∞ up salire; ∞ in entrare; ∞ away partire
 god dio *m.*
 God Iddio *m.*
 gold oro *m.*
 gondola gōndola *f.*
 gone partito
 good buono; ∞ morning buon giorno
 good-by (*polite*) a rivederla, (*fam.*) addio
 goodness bontà *f.*
 goods stoffa *f.*; dry ∞ merceria *f.*
 govern governare
 government governo *m.*
 grammar grammatica *f.*
 grandfather nonno *m.*
 grandmother nonna *f.*
 grape uva *f.*
 grape-vine vite *f.*
 gray grigio
 great grande
 Greek greco
 green verde
 greet salutare
 greeting saluto *m.*
 ground suolo *m.*
 group gruppo *m.*
 grow crēscere
 guard guārdia *f.*
 guess indovinare; ∞ right darci dentro
 guide guida *f.*
 gun schioppo *m.*

 Hague: The ∞ l'Aia
 hair capello *m.*
 half *adj.* mezzo; *n.* metà *f.*
 hall sala *f.*

hand mano *f.*; within reach of one's ∞ a portata di mano; by ∞ a mano; at second ∞ di seconda mano
 handkerchief fazzoletto *m.*
 handsome bello
 handy: come ∞ far comodo
 hang impiccare
 happen accadere, succedere
 happy felice; ∞ New Year buon fine e principio d'anno
 hard duro, difficile
 hardly appena
 hasten spicciarsi
 hat cappello *m.*
 have avere; ∞ to avere da
 hawk falco *m.*
 he egli, esso
 head testa *f.*, capo *m.*; with bowed ∞ a capo chino
 health salute *f.*
 hear sentire, udire
 heart cuore *m.*; by ∞ a mente; take it to ∞ prendersela
 heart-broken afflitto
 heat calore *m.*
 heavy pesante
 heed dar retta a
 heel (*of shoe*) tacco *m.*; (*of foot*) calcagno *m.*
 help aiuto *m.*; *v.* aiutare; not be able to ∞ non poter a meno di
 hen gallina *f.*
 henceforth di qui innanzi, oramai
 Henry Enrico
 her *pron.* la, le; *poss.* il suo *etc.*
 here qui, qua; ∞ is, ∞ are, ecco, c'è, ci sono
 heritage retaggio *m.*
 hero eroe *m.*

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

heroic erōico
herself lei stessa; (*refl.*) si
hesitate esitare
high alto
highness altezza *f.*
him gli, lui, lo
himself lui stesso; (*refl.*) si
his il suo, la sua, *etc.*
history stōria *f.*
hold tenere
holiday festa *f.*
home: at ∞ da noi; in casa
homeward a casa
honor onorare
hook gāncio *m.*
hope speranza *f.*; *v.* sperare
horse cavallo *m.*
horseback: ride ∞ andar a cavallo
hospital ospedale *m.*
hot caldo; it is ∞ fa caldo
hotel albergo *m.*
hour ora *f.*
house casa *f.*; at the ∞ of da
how come; ∞ do you do? come sta?
 ∞ much, ∞ many, quanto, -i
however *conj.* però, pure; *adv.* per
 quanto
human umano
hundred cēto
hunger fame *f.*
hungry: be ∞ aver fame
hunt cacciare
hurl lanciare
hurry fretta *f.*; *v.* spicciarsi; be in
 a ∞ aver fretta, aver fūria
husband marito *m.*

I io
ice ghiaccio *m.*
ice-cream gelato *m.*

if se
ignorant ignorante
ill ammalato; fall ∞ ammalare
imagine immaginare, figurarsi
immediately sūbito
impervious impervio
important: be ∞ importare
impose imporre
imprudent imprudente
in in; (*time*) fra
increase accrēscere
indeed davvero
independence indipendenza *f.*
inexhaustible inesauribile
inferior inferiore
ingrate ingrato *m.*
ink inchiostro *m.*
inside (of) dentro (a)
instead (of) invece (di)
instrument strumento *m.*
intelligent intelligente
into in
introduce presentare
iron ferro *m.*
island isola *f.*
it esso, lo
Italian italiano
Italy l' Italia *f.*

jacket giacchetta *f.*
January gennaio *m.*
Japan il Giappone
jewel gioiello *m.*
John Giovanni
Joseph Giuseppe
journey viaggio *m.*
joy gioia *f.*
joyful allegro
Julius Cæsar Giulio Cēzare
July lūglio *m.*

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- June** giugno *m.*
just giusto; ∞ now or ora
kilogram chilogramma *m.*
kind gēnere *m.*, spēcie, sorte *f.*; *adj.*
 buono, cortese
king re *m.*
kingdom regno *m.*
kiss bacio *m.*
kitchen cucina *f.*
knee ginocchio *m.*; on one's ∞ s gi-
 nocchioni
knife coltello *m.*
know sapere, conōscere

label cartellino *m.*
laborious laborioso
lacking: be ∞ mancare
ladder scala a piuoqli
lady signora *f.*; young ∞ signorina *f.*
lake lago *m.*
lamp lume *m.*
land sbarcare
language lingua *f.*
large grande
lark allōdola *f.*
last forma *f.*; *v.* durare; *adj.* ūlti-
 mo, (*past*) scorso; at ∞ alla fine
late tardi; the ∞ il fu; be ∞ far tardi
laugh riso *m.*; *v.* ridere
law legge *f.*
lawsuit lite *f.*
lawyer avvocato *m.*
lay posare; ∞ the cloth mēttre la
 tovaglia
layman laico *m.*
leaf foglia *f.*
lean out spōrgersi
learn imparare; ∞ of sapere
learned dōtto

least mīnimo; at ∞ almeno
leather cuoio *m.*
leave *tr.* lasciare; *intr.* partire; *n.*
 licenza *f.*
left sinistro
Leghorn Livorno
lemon limone *m.*
length lunghezza *f.*
less meno
lessen diminuire
lesson lezione *f.*
let (*allow*) lasciare; *cf.* § 92, a
letter lēttēra *f.*
liberty libertà *f.*
lie giacere; mentire
life vita *f.*
light luce *f.*; *v.* accēndere; *adj.*
 chiaro, leggiēro
lighten balenare, lampeggiare
like sīmile; should ∞ vorrēi *etc.*
lily-of-the-valley mughētto *m.*
linen lino *m.*; tela *f.*
lining fōdera *f.*
lip labbro *m.*
lira *f.* lira (twenty cents)
listen (to) ascoltare
literature letteratura *f.*
little pōco; ∞ by ∞ pōco a pōco;
 adj. piccōlo
live vīvere; (*dwell*) abitare, dimo-
 rare, star di casa
load cārica *f.*; *v.* caricare
loaded cārico
lock serratura *f.*; *v.* serrare
London Londra
long lungo; ∞ to non veder l'ora
 di; as ∞ as tantochè, finchè
look, look at, guardare; ∞ for cer-
 care
lordship: your ∞ Vossignoria *f.*

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

lose pērdere
lot sōrte *f.*
Louis Luigi
love amōre *m.*; *v.* amare
low *adj.* basso; *v.* muggire
lower inferiōre
luck: good ∞ fortuna *f.*
luckily meno male
luggage bagāglio *m.*
luncheon colaziōne *f.*; take ∞ far
 colaziōne

Madam Signōra *f.*
mail pōsta *f.*; *v.* impostare
mainspring mōlla *f.*
majesty maestà *f.*
majority maggiōr parte *f.*
make fare
mamma mamma, mamma *f.*
man uōmo *m.*; honorable ∞ galan-
 tuōmo *m.*
manner maniera *f.*
many molti
march marcia *f.*
March marzo *m.*
married woman signōra *f.*
martyr mārtime *m.*
mask māschera *f.*
mass mēssa *f.*
mast ālbero *m.*
match fiammifero *m.*; *v.* accompa-
 gnare
matter importare
may, can, potēre
May maggio *m.*
me mi, me
meadow prato *m.*
meat carne *f.*
meet incontrāre; conōscere
memory memoriā *f.*

merchant mercante *m.*
metal metallo *m.*
metropolis metrōpoli *f.*
middle mēzzo *m.*; in the ∞ of in
 mēzzo a
midnight mēzzanōtte *f.*
might potēre *etc.*; *or subj.*
mild mite
military militare
milk latte *m.*
milliner modista *f.*
mind mēte *f.*
mine miniēra *f.*; il mio *etc.*
minute minuto *m.*
miser avaro *m.*
misfortune sventura, disgrazia *f.*
miss sentire la mancanza di
Miss Signorina *f.*
mistake sbaglio *m.*; *v.* sbagliare
modern modēno
moment mōmento *m.*; in a ∞ a mo-
 mēti
monarch monarca *m.*
monarchist monārchico *m.*
Monday lunedì *m.*
money denaro *m.*
monk mōnaco *m.*
monster mōstro *m.*
month mēse *m.*
moon luna *f.*
more più
morning mattina *f.*; good ∞ buōn giōr-
 no; say good ∞ dare il buōn giōrno
most il più
mother madre *f.*
mother-in-law suōcera *f.*
mount salire, montare
mountain montagna *f.*
mourning lutto *m.*; in ∞ a lutto
move muōvere

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

movement <i>moto m.</i>	niece <i>nipote f.</i>
Mr. <i>Signore m.</i>	night <i>notte f.</i>
Mrs. <i>Signora f.</i>	nine <i>nove</i>
much <i>molto</i> ; <i>as</i> ∞ <i>again</i> <i>altrettanto</i>	nineteen <i>diciannove</i>
mud <i>fango m.</i>	nineteenth <i>dēcimo nōno</i>
murmur <i>mormorare</i>	ninety <i>novanta</i>
mushroom <i>fungo m.</i>	ninth <i>nōno</i>
my <i>il mio, la mia, etc.</i>	no <i>nō</i> ; ∞ <i>one</i> <i>nessuno</i> ; (<i>not any</i>)
myself <i>io stesso</i> ; <i>refl.</i> <i>mi</i>	<i>nōn</i> (<i>preceding vb.</i>)
name <i>nome m.</i>	noise <i>rumore, strēpito m.</i>
nap <i>sonnecchiare</i>	none <i>nessuno</i>
Naples <i>Nāpoli</i>	noon <i>mezzogiorno m.</i>
narrow <i>strētto</i>	nor <i>nē</i>
nation <i>nazione f.</i>	north <i>tramontana f., nōrte m.</i>
navy <i>marina f.</i>	northern <i>settentrionale</i>
near <i>vicino (a)</i>	not <i>nōn</i>
necessary <i>necessārio</i> ; <i>be</i> ∞ <i>bişo-</i>	nothing <i>niēnte, nulla</i>
<i>gnare, occōrrere</i>	notice <i>avviso m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> <i>accōrgersi</i> (<i>di</i>)
neck <i>collo m.</i>	notwithstanding (<i>that</i>) <i>nōn ob-</i>
necklace <i>collana f.</i>	<i>stante</i> (<i>chē</i>) (<i>conj. w. subj.</i>)
necktie <i>cravatta, ciarpetta f.</i>	novel <i>romanzo m.</i>
need <i>bişogno m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> <i>avēre bişogno</i> <i>di</i>	November <i>novēmbre m.</i>
neigh <i>nitrire</i>	now <i>ora, adesso</i>
neighbor <i>vicino m.</i>	nowadays <i>al giorno di oggi, oggidì</i>
neither <i>nē</i> ; ∞ . . . <i>nor</i> <i>nē</i> . . . <i>nē</i>	number <i>nūmero m.</i>
nephew <i>nipote m.</i>	oak <i>quercia f.</i>
nest <i>nido m.</i>	oar <i>remo m.</i>
never <i>nōn</i> . . . <i>mai</i>	observe <i>osservare</i>
nevertheless <i>tuttavīa</i>	obstinate <i>şvogliato</i>
new <i>nuovo</i> ; New Year's <i>capo d'an-</i>	occur <i>avēre luogo</i>
<i>no</i> ; Happy New Year <i>buon capo</i>	occurrence <i>eveniēza f.</i>
<i>d'anno</i> ; to wish a happy new year	o'clock : <i>at six</i> ∞ <i>alle sēi</i>
<i>augurare il buon anno</i>	October <i>ottōbre m.</i>
news <i>notizie f. pl.</i>	of <i>di</i>
newspaper <i>giornale m.</i>	off <i>lungi, via</i>
next (<i>near</i>) <i>accanto a</i> ; (<i>coming</i>)	offend <i>offēndere</i> ; <i>be offended</i> <i>avē-</i>
<i>prōssimo, quest' altro</i> ; ∞ <i>door</i>	<i>sela a male</i>
<i>accanto</i>	offer <i>offrire</i>
nice <i>simpātico</i>	officer <i>ufficiale m.</i>

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

- often** spesso
old vecchio; **grow** ~ invecchiare
on su, sur
once una volta; **at** ~ subito
one un, uno, -a
only *adj.* solo, unico; *adv.* soltanto;
 but, only (*w. acc.*), non . . . che
open *adj.* aperto; *v.* aprire
opportunity occasione *f.*
opposite in faccia a, dirimpetto a
or o, od
orange arancia *f.*
orange-tree arancio *m.*
order ordine *m.*; *v.* ordinare; **to** ~
 su misura
other altro
ought dovere *etc.*
our il nostro, la nostra, *etc.*
ourselves noi stessi; (*refl.*) ci
out fuori; **go** ~ andar fuori
outside (of) all' infuori (di)
over su, sopra
overcoat soprabito *m.*
owe dovere
own *adj.* proprio; *v.* possedere

package pacco *m.*
page pagina *f.*
pain dolore *m.*; *v.* dolere
pair paio (*pl.* paia) *m.*
palace palazzo *m.*
papa babbo *m.*
paper carta *f.*; **news** ~ giornale *m.*
parents genitori *m. pl.*
Paris Parigi
parish-priest parroco *m.*
parlor salotto *m.*
part parte *f.*
pass passare
patience pazienza *f.*

patriot patriota *m.*
pattern figurino *m.*
Paul Paolo
pay, ~ **for**, pagare
peace pace *f.*
peach pesca *f.*
pear pera *f.*
peasant contadino, -a
pen penna *f.*; **fountain** ~ penna a
 serbatoio
pencil lapis *m.*
people popolo *m.*; gente *f.*
perceive accorgersi (di)
perhaps forse
permit permettere
persecute perseguitare
person persona *f.*
Petrarch Petrarca
Philip Filippo
philosophical filosofico
photograph fotografia *f.*
physician medico *m.*
pianist pianista *c.*
picture quadro *m.*
piece pezzo *m.*; (*money*) moneta *f.*;
 tear to ~s far a brani; **by the** ~ a
 cōttime
Piedmont il Piemonte
Piedmontese piemontese
pilgrim pellegrino *m.*
pilgrimage: **go on** ~ peregrinare
pin spillo *m.*; *v.* appuntare
pity pietà *f.*; **what a** ~ peccato!
place luogo, posto *m.*; (*at table*)
 posata *f.*; *v.* porre
plant pianta *f.*
plate piatto *m.*
play giocare; (*an instrument*) sonare
please per piacere, per favore;
 v. piacere a

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

pleasure piacere <i>m.</i> ; do a ∞ to far piacere a	princess principessa <i>f.</i>
pleat piega <i>f.</i>	prison prigione <i>f.</i> , carcere <i>m.</i>
pocket tasca <i>f.</i>	problem problema <i>m.</i>
poet poeta <i>m.</i>	professor professore <i>m.</i>
point punta <i>f.</i>	promise promessa <i>f.</i>
polish lustrare	property proprietà <i>f.</i>
polite educato	proprietor padrone <i>m.</i>
political politico	provided that purchè (<i>v. subj.</i>)
politician politico <i>m.</i>	prudent prudente
politics politica <i>f.</i>	punish punire
poor povero	pupil scolare <i>m.</i>
port porto <i>m.</i>	purchase compra <i>f.</i>
porter facchino <i>m.</i>	purpose scopo <i>m.</i> ; on ∞ a posta
portrait ritratto <i>m.</i>	purr far le fusa
possess possedere; ∞ oneself of agguantare	purse borsa <i>f.</i>
post posta <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> impostare	put, put on, mēttre
postage-stamp francobollo <i>m.</i>	queen regina <i>f.</i>
postal postale	question domanda <i>f.</i> ; be a ∞ of trattarsi di
post-card cartolina (<i>f.</i>) postale	quiet quieto, tranquillo
postman postino <i>m.</i>	
poverty povertà <i>f.</i>	rain pioggia <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> piūvere
powder polvere <i>f.</i>	raincoat impermeabile <i>m.</i>
power potere <i>m.</i>	raise levare, alzare, innalzare
practice pratica <i>f.</i>	rather piuttosto
praise lodare	read leggere
pray <i>v.</i> pregare; <i>adv.</i> pure	ready pronto; ∞-made bell' e fatto
precious prezioso	really veramente
prefer preferire	reason ragione <i>f.</i>
prepare preparare	rebuild rifare
president presidente <i>m.</i>	receipts incasso <i>m.</i>
press stampa <i>f.</i>	receive ricēvere
pretense finzione <i>f.</i> ; make ∞ of far vista di	recently di recente
pretty carino, grazioso	recommend raccomandare
prevail prevalere	recover <i>tr.</i> riavere; <i>intr.</i> guarire
prevent impedire	recruit recluta <i>f.</i>
primitive primitivo	red rosso
prince principe <i>m.</i>	redeem redimere
	reef scoglio <i>m.</i>

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

refuge rifugio <i>m.</i> ; take ∞ rifugiarsi	rose roşa <i>f.</i>
refuse rifiutare	rough rozzo
regard (<i>greeting of remembrance</i>) saluto <i>m.</i>	row-boat barca (<i>f.</i>) a remi
regret deplorare, rincrescere a, dis- piacere a; I ∞ mi rincresce	rule rēgola <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> rēggere
relative parēnte <i>m.</i> ; <i>adj.</i> relativo	ruler regnante <i>m.</i>
remain rimanere	run corsa <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> cōrrere; ∞ down <i>adj.</i> scārico
remainder rēsto <i>m.</i>	sad triste
remake rifare	sadness tristezza <i>f.</i>
remember ricordarsi di	safe sicuro
renounce rinunziare a	safety sicurezza, salvezza <i>f.</i> ; in ∞ in salvo
repeat ripētere	sail vela <i>f.</i> ; set ∞ far vela
repent pentirsi	sailor marinaio <i>m.</i>
reply risposta <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> rispōndere	saint santo <i>m.</i>
reproof rimprōvero <i>m.</i>	Saint san, santo
reprove rimproverare	saintly santo
republic repūblica <i>f.</i>	saint's-day onomāstico <i>m.</i>
republican repubblicano	sale vēndita <i>f.</i>
respectable rispettabile	same stēso
rest rēsto, ripōso <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> riposarsi	sample campīone <i>m.</i>
result risultato <i>m.</i>	Saturday sābato <i>m.</i>
resurrection risorgimento <i>m.</i>	saucer piattino (<i>m.</i>) da tazza
return ritōrno <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> tornare, ritor- nare	savage selvaggio <i>adj.</i>
Rhine Rēno <i>m.</i>	save <i>v.</i> salvare, (<i>money</i>) risparmiare; <i>prep.</i> tranne
ribbon nastro <i>m.</i>	Savoy la Savōia <i>f.</i>
rich ricco <i>m.</i>	say dire
rid oneself sbarrarsi	says dice
right dēstro; be ∞ aver ragione	scatter spārgere, diffōndere
rigorous rigorōso	school scuōla <i>f.</i>
ring anēllo <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> sonare	scissors fōrbici <i>f. pl.</i>
rise levarsi, alzarsi	scold sgridare
risk rīschio <i>m.</i>	score ventina <i>f.</i>
river fiume <i>m.</i>	scout vedetta <i>f.</i>
road strada <i>f.</i>	scrap brano <i>m.</i>
Roman romano	sea mare <i>m.</i> ; at ∞ in mare; by the ∞ al mare
Rome Rōma	season stagione <i>f.</i>
room stanza <i>f.</i>	
roost appollaiarsi	

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

second	secondo	should	<i>past fut. or subj.</i>
secret	segreto <i>m.</i>	shoulder	spalla <i>f.</i>
secretly	di nascosto	shout	grido <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> gridare
see	vedere	show	mostrare, dimostrare; ~ in far passare
seem	sembrare	Sicily	la Sicilia
seen	visto	side	parte <i>f.</i> ; on this ~ of al di qua di; on that ~ of al di là di
Seine	Senna <i>f.</i>	sign	affisso, cartello <i>m.</i> ; segno <i>m.</i>
seldom	di rado	signal	cenno <i>m.</i>
self	<i>see myself, himself, etc.</i>	silence	silenzio <i>m.</i>
sell	vendere	silk	seta <i>f.</i>
send	mandare, inviare, spedire	silver	argento <i>m.</i>
sentinel	sentinella <i>f.</i>	simple	semplice
September	settembre <i>m.</i>	since	(<i>time</i>) dacchè; (<i>cause</i>) poichè
seriously	sul serio	sincere	sincero
servant	servo, -a	sing	cantare
serve	servire; (<i>meal</i>) imbandire	sip	sorbire
service	servizio <i>m.</i>	sir	Signore <i>m.</i>
set table	apparecchiare	sister	sorella <i>f.</i>
seven	sette	sister-in-law	cognata <i>f.</i>
seventeen	diciassette	sit	sedere; ~ down accomodarsi
seventeenth	décimo sèttime	six	sei
seventh	sèttime	sixteen	sèdici
seventy	settanta	sixteenth	décimo sesto
several	parècchi	sixth	sèsto
sew	cucire	sixty	sessanta
shake	scuotere; ~ hands with dar la mano a	skirt	sottana <i>f.</i>
shall I	(<i>in questions</i>) de'vo	sleep	sonno <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> dormire
shame	vergogna <i>f.</i>	sleepy	: be ~ aver sonno
share	parte <i>f.</i>	sleeve	mànica <i>f.</i>
she	ella, essa, lei	small	pìccolo
sheep	pècora <i>f.</i>	smoke	fumo <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> fumare
sheet	lenzuolo; (<i>of paper</i>) foglio <i>m.</i>	sneeze	starnutare
shelf	scaffale <i>m.</i>	snow	neve <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> nevicare
shield	scudo <i>m.</i>	so	così; ~ much, ~ many, tanto, tanti; ~ that perchè (<i>zw. subj.</i>)
shoe	scarpa <i>f.</i>	sob	singulto <i>m.</i>
shoemaker	calzolaio <i>m.</i>	socialist	socialista <i>m.</i>
shoot	tirare	sock	calzino <i>m.</i>
shop	bottega <i>f.</i>		
short	corto, brève		

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

soft dolce	station stazione <i>f.</i>
softly piano	stay restare, rimanere
soil suolo <i>m.</i>	steel acciaio <i>m.</i>
soldier soldato <i>m.</i>	step passo <i>m.</i>
solitude solitudine <i>f.</i>	Stephen Stēfano
some <i>adj.</i> qualche; <i>pron.</i> ne	still ancora, tuttavia
son figlio <i>m.</i>	stone pietra <i>f.</i>
son-in-law gēnero <i>m.</i>	stop fermarsi
song canzone <i>f.</i>	story storia <i>f.</i>
soon prēsto, tōsto; as ~ as tōsto chē; as ~ as possible quanto prima; no ~er . . . than appena . . . chē	straight dritto; ~ ahead difilato
sorrow dolore <i>m.</i>	strange strano
sorrowful afflitto, doloroso	stranger straniere <i>m.</i>
sorry dispiacente; be ~ dispiacere a; I am ~ mi dispiace	straw paglia <i>f.</i>
south mezzogiorno	street via <i>f.</i>
southern meridionale	stretch out pōrgere
Spaniard Spagnuolo <i>m.</i>	strike sciōpero <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> colpire
Spanish spagnuolo	struggle lotta <i>f.</i>
spark scintilla <i>f.</i>	study stūdio <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> studiare
speak parlare	succeed riuscire; <i>tr.</i> succēdere a
spectacle spettācolo <i>m.</i>	suck succhiare
spectacles occhiali <i>m. pl.</i>	suddenly improvvisamente, a un tratto
speculator speculatore <i>m.</i>	suffer soffrire, patire
spend (<i>time</i>) passare; (<i>money</i>) spēdere	suffice bastare
spirit spīrito <i>m.</i>	suitable : be ~ convenire
spool rocchetto <i>m.</i>	sum somma <i>f.</i>
spoon cucchiaio <i>m.</i>	summer estate <i>f.</i>
spot mächia <i>f.</i>	summit colmo <i>m.</i>
spread distēdere	sun sole <i>m.</i>
spring (<i>season</i>) primavera <i>f.</i> ; (<i>motive</i> <i>power</i>) molla <i>f.</i>	Sunday domēnica <i>f.</i>
spy spia <i>f.</i>	superior superiore
stain mächia <i>f.</i>	support sostēgno <i>m.</i>
stair scala <i>f.</i> ; winding ~ scala a chiōcciola	supreme suprēmo
state stato <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> dichiarare	sure sicuro
statesman politico <i>m.</i>	surgeon chirurgo <i>m.</i>
	surprise sorpresa <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> sorprēdere
	swarm sciame <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> formicolare
	swear giurare
	sweet dolce
	sweetmeat dolce <i>m.</i> ; chicca <i>f.</i>

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

Swiss şvizzero	they essi, esse
table tāvola <i>f.</i> ; set the ∞ apparecchiare; ∞ cloth tovaglia <i>f.</i>	thicket mächchia <i>f.</i>
tailor sarto <i>m.</i>	thimble ditale <i>m.</i>
take prēndere, pigliare; ∞ off levarsi; ∞ away tōgliere; ∞ one's way avviarsi; ∞ out cavare	thing cōsa <i>f.</i>
talent ingegno <i>m.</i>	things rōba <i>f. collective</i>
tall alto	think pensare; (<i>believe</i>) crēdere
task lavōro <i>m.</i>	third tērzo
tax tassa <i>f.</i>	thirst sēte <i>f.</i>
tea tè <i>m.</i>	thirsty : be ∞ aver sēte
teach insegnare	thirteen trēdici
teacher maēstro, -a; istitutore, -trice	thirteenth dēcimo tērzo
telegram telegramma, dispaccio <i>m.</i>	thirty trēta
telephone telefonare	this quēsto
tell dire; raccontare	thither lì, là
ten diēci	Thomas Tommaso
tenth dēcimo	thou tu
terrible terribile	though benchè, sebbene
territory territōrio <i>m.</i>	thought pensiēro <i>m.</i>
tête à tête a quattr'occhi	thousand mille
Thames Tamigi <i>m.</i>	threat minaccia <i>f.</i>
than di, chē, di quēl chē	threaten minacciare
thanks grāzie <i>f. pl.</i>	three trē
that <i>dem. pron.</i> quēllo; <i>rel. pron.</i> chē; <i>conj.</i> chē	threshold sōglia <i>f.</i>
thaw şgelare, dighiacciare	throw gettare, buttare; ∞ away buttar via
the il, la; <i>pl.</i> i, gli, le	thunder tuōno <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> tonare
theater teatro <i>m.</i>	thunderbolt fūlmine <i>m.</i>
thee ti, tè	Thursday giovedì <i>m.</i>
their il loro, la loro, <i>etc.</i>	thus così
them li, le, loro	thy il tuo, la tua, <i>etc.</i>
theme tēma <i>m.</i>	thyself tu stēso; <i>refl.</i> ti
themselves loro stēssi; <i>refl.</i> si	Tiber Tēvere <i>m.</i>
then allōra, dunque	ticket biglietto <i>m.</i> ; round-trip ∞ biglietto d'andata e ritorno; first-class ∞ biglietto di prima classe
thence indi, nē	ticket-window sportēllo <i>m.</i>
there lì, là; ∞ is , ∞ are , c'è, ci sono, (<i>dem.</i>) ecco	tight strētto
therefore dunque	time tēpo <i>m.</i> ; (<i>a time</i>) vōlta <i>f.</i> ; on ∞ a tēpo; short ∞ pōco
	tin latta <i>f.</i>

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

tiny mīnimo, piccino	twentieth ventēesimo
tired stanco; become ∼ stancarsi	twenty venti
to a, ad	twice due vōlte
to-day oggi	two due
together insiēme	typewriter mēcchina (<i>f.</i>) da scrīvere
to-morrow domani	typical tīpico
tongs mōlle <i>f. pl.</i>	tyranny tirannīa <i>f.</i>
too, too much, troppo ; ∼ many troppi	tyrant tiranno <i>m.</i>
tooth dēnte <i>m.</i>	ugly brutto
top cima <i>f.</i> ; on ∼ of in cima a	umbrella ombrēllo <i>m.</i>
torture supplizio <i>m.</i>	uncle zio <i>m.</i>
tour giro <i>m.</i>	under sōtto
towards vērso	understand capire, intēndere
tower torre <i>f.</i>	unequal ineguale
trade mestiere; commercio <i>m.</i>	uneven impari
train trenō <i>m.</i>	unhappy infelice
traitor, -ress, traditore, -tora	union unità <i>f.</i>
travel viaggiare	unite unire
traveler viaggiatore <i>m.</i>	university università <i>f.</i>
treachery tradimento <i>m.</i>	unless a mēno chē (<i>w. subj.</i>)
tree ālbero <i>m.</i>	until fino a
tremble tremare	up su; get ∼ levarsi
tricolored tricolōre	upon su
trimming guarniziōne <i>f.</i>	upper superiore
triple trīplice, triplo	us ci, noi
troops truppe <i>f. pl.</i>	use uso <i>m.</i> ; make ∼ of servirsi di; be of ∼ to servire a
trousers calzōni <i>m. pl.</i>	usual sōlito; as ∼ come al sōlito
trunk baule <i>m.</i> ; pack one's ∼ fare il baule	usually generalmēte, per il sōlito
truth veritā <i>f.</i>	vacation vacanza <i>f.</i>
try provare, cercare di; ∼ one's best fare di tutto; ∼ on provare	vain : in ∼ indarno
Tuesday martedì <i>m.</i>	valley valle <i>f.</i>
Turk Turco <i>m.</i>	value prēgio <i>m.</i> ; be of ∼ valere
turn voltarsi; ∼ back rivoltare; in ∼ a vicēnda; be the ∼ of toccare a	vast vasto
Tuscany la Toscana	veil vèlo <i>m.</i>
twelfth dēcimo sēcōdo	Venetian veneziano
twelve dōdici	Venice Venēzia
	very mōlto

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

view vista <i>f.</i>	west ponente <i>m.</i>
village villaggio, paese <i>m.</i>	western occidentale
vintage vendemmia <i>f.</i>	wet bagnato
violet mämmola <i>f.</i>	what che, quel che
virtue virtù <i>f.</i>	whatever <i>adj.</i> qualunque; <i>pron.</i> checcchè
visit vīṣita <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> viṣitare	when quando
wager scommessa <i>f.</i>	whenever qualora (<i>v. subj.</i>)
wait, wait for, aspettare	where dove
waiter cameriere <i>m.</i>	wherever dovunque (<i>v. subj.</i>)
walk <i>v.</i> camminare, andare a piedi	whether se
walk passeggiata, giratina <i>f.</i> , spasso <i>m.</i> ; take a ~ andare a spasso, fare una passeggiata	which che, il quale
wall muro <i>m.</i>	while mentre; be worth ~ meritare il conto
walnut noce <i>f.</i>	white bianco
wander peregrinare	who <i>rel.</i> che; <i>interr.</i> chi
war guerra <i>f.</i> ; wage ~ mover guerra	whom <i>rel.</i> che, cui; <i>interr.</i> chi
warfare guerra <i>f.</i> ; of ~ bēllico	whose <i>rel.</i> cui, di cui; <i>interr.</i> di chi
warlike bellicoso	why perchè
warm caldo; be ~ aver caldo	wicked scellerato
wash lavare; ~stand lavamano <i>m.</i>	wide largo
watch orologio <i>m.</i> ; <i>v.</i> guardare, vegliare	width larghezza <i>f.</i>
water acqua <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> annaffiare	wife moglie <i>f.</i>
wave onda <i>f.</i>	will volontà <i>f.</i> ; <i>v.</i> volere
way via, strada <i>f.</i> ; lose one's ~ smarrirsi; take one's ~ avviarsi, recarsi; on the ~ strada facendo	win vincere
we noi	wind up caricare
weak dēbole, caduco, fiacco	wind vento <i>m.</i>
weather tempo <i>m.</i> ; it is fine ~ fa bēl tempo	window finestra <i>f.</i>
wedding nqzze <i>f. pl.</i>	winter inverno <i>m.</i>
Wednesday mercoledì <i>m.</i>	wise savio, sapiente
week settimana <i>f.</i>	wish volere, desiderare; ~ well augurare
weep piangere	with cōn
welcome benvenuto; you're ~ niente	wither appassire
well bēne; ~ then ebbēne, dunque; ~ now o or o	without senza; do ~ fare a meno di
	woman donna <i>f.</i> ; married ~ signora <i>f.</i> ; unmarried ~ signorina <i>f.</i>
	wood bosco <i>m.</i> ; (<i>material</i>) legno <i>m.</i>
	wool lana <i>f.</i>

ENGLISH-ITALIAN VOCABULARY

work <i>ōpera f., lavoro m.; v. lavorare</i>	yard <i>corte f.</i>
workman <i>operaio m.</i>	yawn <i>sbadigliare</i>
world <i>mondo m.</i>	year <i>anno m.</i>
worse <i>adj. peggiore; adv. peggio</i>	yes <i>sì</i>
worst <i>il peggiore; il peggio</i>	yesterday <i>iēri</i>
worry <i>tr. dar pensiero a; intr. stare</i> <i>in pensiero, darsi pensiero</i>	yet <i>ancora, tuttavia</i>
worth <i>: be ∞ valere</i>	you <i>voi, tu, Lei; cf. 65, a, b, c</i>
would <i>volere; past fut. or subj.</i>	young <i>giōvane</i>
wound <i>ferita f.; v. ferire</i>	your <i>il vostro, il tuo, il Suo</i>
wound up <i>adj. cārico</i>	yourself <i>voi stesso, tu stesso, Lei</i> <i>stesso; refl. vi, ti, si</i>
write <i>scrivere</i>	yourselves <i>voi stessi, Loro stessi;</i> <i>refl. vi, si</i>
writer <i>scrittore m.</i>	youth <i>gioventù f.</i>
wrong <i>: be ∞ aver torto</i>	

INDEX

[Numbers refer to sections]

- a, idioms with, 227, *a*
- Accent, graphic, 18-21
 - acute, 21
 - circumflex, 20
 - grave, 19
 - meaning distinguished by, 19, *e*
- Accent, tonic, 9-15
 - marks of, in this book, 9
 - meaning distinguished by, 15
 - in truncated words, 33
 - in verbs, 13, *a*
- Addition of d or r for euphony, 39
- Address, person in, 65, *a-d*; 100, *c*
- Adjectives, 82-88
 - agreement, 83
 - with two or more nouns, 83, *b*
 - sg. adj. with pl. n., 83, *c*
 - capitalization of, 88, *a*
 - demonstrative, 86; 190
 - interrogative, 87; 191
 - invariable, 85, *b*
 - irregular, 85, *a*
 - position of, 84
 - prepositions with, 223
 - used substantively, 88
 - with subst. understood, 88, *b*
- Adverbs, 89; 212-219
 - comparison of, 115; 116; 117
 - formation of, 89, *a*; 214
 - position of, 212; 216, *u*
 - of affirmation, 215; 230, *b*, 3
 - of manner, 214; 219, *a*; 227
 - of negation, 216
 - of place, 217; 219, *b*
 - of quantity, 89, *b*; 160; 218
 - of time, 219, *c*
- Age, 153
- 'ago,' 151, *d*
- alcuno, 206, *a*
- 'all,' 160, *c*
- Alphabet, 1
- altro, 208, *c*, *d*
- altrui, 208, *b*
- andare, 149
 - idioms with, 149, *b*
 - special uses of, 149, *a*
- 'any,' 77; 124; 206, *a*, 1, 2, 3; 208, *c*
- Aphesis, 35
- Apocope, 37
- Archaic forms, 44-47
- Arithmetical formulae, 159, *b*
- Article, *see* Definite and Indefinite
- Article repeated, 61
- Augmentatives, 228, *a*; 229
- Auxiliary
 - agreement of past part. with, 99; 104, *c*, 1, 2; 194, *b*
 - avere used as, 68; 101, *b*, *c*; 121
 - 'do,' 62, *b*, 1; 215, *c*
 - essere used as, 98; 101, *a*, *c*
 - modal auxiliaries, 186
- avere, 68; 101; 120; 121
 - idiomatic uses of, 123
 - past part. with, 122
- 'be,' 96
- bello, forms of, 85, *a*
- 'both,' 150, *d*; 207, *f*
- buono, forms of, 85, *u*
- 'can,' *see* Modal auxiliaries, *sapere*
- Capitalization, 41-43
 - capitals omitted, 42
 - capitals used contrary to English usage, 43
 - of adjectives, 88, *a*
- Cardinal numerals, 150
 - 'about' with, 158, *a*, 1

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- care, verbs ending in, 110, *a*, 1
- Century, number of, 151, *c*; 157, *c*
- cere, verbs ending in, 110, *c*
- che, 114, *a*; 115, *b*, 1, 2, *c*; 169, *i*,
note 2; 189, *b*; 230, *b*, 2, 3, 4
- ci (adv.), 126; 217, *b*, *c*
- ci (pron.), 94; 125, *b*, 1; 224, *b*
- ciare, verbs ending in, 110, *a*, 2
- ciò, 190, *d*
- Close vowels, 3, *a*, *c*, *f*
- co, masculines in, 178, *c*
- Collective nouns, agreement with,
183
- Collective numerals, 158, *a*
with special meanings, 158, *b*
- Comparatives, 115
of equality, 119
irregular, 117, *a*
with special meanings, 117, *b*
- Compound nouns, 181; 225
- Compound tenses, 68; 96; 120
- Conjugations, 90, *a*
- Conjunctions, 230
- Conjunctive pronoun objects
forms, 94
changes in, 125, *b*
position, 95, *a*, *b*
of two objects, 125, *a*
with dependent inf., 167
curtailment of inf. before, 95, *b*, 2
direct becoming indirect, 167, *c*, 2
initial consonants doubled in,
100, *b*
used redundantly, 100, *d*, *e*
used as subject, 100, *g*
with compound prep. and verb,
222, *a*
with ecco, 100, *a*
- Consonants, 5
- Contraction of prepositions, 75
- d, addition of, for euphony, 39
- da, idiomatic uses of, 103; 112;
123, *a*; 139; 162, *c*; 227, *b*
- dare, 131
idioms with, 131, *a*
- Dates, 150, *c*; 151, *a*, *b*, *c*; 157, *c*
- Definite article
forms, 70
their uses, 71; 72
- syntax, 73; 146; 147
agreement with two nouns, 148
in dates, 146, *f*; 151
distributive, 146, *g*
idiomatic uses, 146, *k*
omission of, 147
used for possessive, 107, *c*;
146, *e*
with proper names, 146, *c*, *d*, *h*
- Demonstrative adjective, 86; 190
- Demonstrative pronoun, 190
- di, 78; 164, *b*, 1; 174, *b*, 3, *c*, 3; 205,
a; 221, *b*; 227, *c*
- Dialogues
In un albergo, p. 154
L' Arrivo, p. 134
L' Automobile, p. 219
Dal calzolaio, p. 202
Dalla modista, p. 245
Dalla sarta, p. 163
Dal sarto, p. 188
Si fanno le compre, p. 250
- Diminutives, 228, *b*; 229
- Diphthongs, 4, *a*, *b*; 53
- dire, 175
- Disjunctive pronoun, 135; 136
nominative, 65; 135, *a*
objective, 135, *b*
uses of, 65, *a*, 1; 136
- 'do,' auxiliary, 62, *b*, 1; 215, *c*
- dolere, 172
- Double consonants, 5, *b*
- Doublings, special, 5, *b*, 2
- dovere, 188
special uses of, 187, *c*
- ecco, 100, *a*; 217, *c*
- ed for e, 39
- Elision, 22-28; 52
in contracted forms, 28
- essere, 96
used as auxiliary, 98; 101, *a*, *c*
- Exclamations, 191, *a*; 230, *b*, 2; 231
- fare, 163
idioms with, 163, *b*
with dependent inf., 163, *a*; 167, *c*
- Fractions, 157, *b*
- 'from,' 227, *d*, 2
- Future, 69; 141

INDEX

- gare, verbs ending in, 110, *a*, 1
- Gender, 80; 197-203
 - distinguished by form, 80, *b*; 197
 - distinguished by meaning, 80, *a*; 198
 - masculines in *a*, 202
 - in names of animals, 200
 - in nouns of human relationship, 201
 - rank, feminine forms of words denoting, 203
 - two genders, nouns of, 199
- Genitive, *see* Possessive
- gere, verbs ending in, 110, *c*
- Gerund, English, transl. into Italian, 193, *d*
- Gerundive, Italian, 193, *b*
- giare, verbs ending in, 110, *a*, 2
- gli (hard *g*), 5, *c*
- grande, forms of, 85, *a*
-
- 'half,' 157, *b*, 1
- 'have,' 120
 - 'have to,' 123, *a*
- 'here,' 126, *a*; 217; 219, *b*
- 'he who,' 190, *c*, 2
- 'however,' 230, *a*
-
- i*, euphonic, 38
- iare, verbs ending in, 110, *b*
- Idioms, *see* *andare*, *da*, *dare*, etc.,
 - Adverbs, Prepositions, Time, Weather, etc.
- Imperative
 - formation, in irr. verbs, 130, *e*
 - negative, 92, *b*
 - third person of, 92, *a*
- Impersonal English expressions,
 - translation of, 106, *b*
- Impersonal verbs, 164
 - with subjunctive, 164, *b*
 - use of *di* with, 164, *b*, 1
- Indefinite article
 - forms, 58
 - their uses, 59; 60
 - syntax of, 61; 66; 162
- Indefinite pronouns, 205-210
 - alphabetical list, 205
 - with *di*, 205, *a*
 - negative, 210
-
- Indicative, *see* Tenses
- Infinitive, 173; 174
 - government of, 174
 - uses of, 173
 - with *a*, 174, *b*, 1; *c*, 2
 - with *da*, 174, *a*; *c*, 4
 - with *di*, 174, *b*, 3; *c*, 3
- Inflections, *see* Conjugations
- Interjections, 231
- Interrogative adjective, 87; 191
- Interrogative construction, 62
- Interrogative pronouns, 191
- Invariable adjectives, 85, *b*
- Invariable nouns, 176
- Inversion, 145; 194, *c*
- io, plural of nouns in, 178, *a*, 2
- Irregular verbs, pp. 261-273
 - formation, 130
 - past absolutes of, 120, *a*
 - principal parts of, 120, *b*; 130
 - regular forms of, 128
- issimo, ending, 116, *d*
- 'it,' anticipative subject, 100, *g*, 2
 - in predicate after *essere*, 100, *e*
 - 'it is I,' etc., 65, *f*
- 'its,' 107, *c*
-
- Lei, in address, 65, *a*, 1; 100, *c*
- Letters, *see* Alphabet, Consonants, Vowels
- loro, 125, *a*, 1; 136, *i*, 1
-
- mai, 191, *b*; 216, *f*, 1
- 'may,' *see* Modal auxiliaries
- Marks of pronunciation, 2, *a*; 5, *e*; 9
- Measurements, 155
- meco, etc., 136, *a*, 1
- Metathesis, 40
- Modal auxiliaries, 186; 187
 - in compound tenses, 186, *b*
 - with inf., 186, *d*
 - special uses of, 187
- Money, 154
- Moods, *see* Imperative, Indicative, Subjunctive
- morire, 156
- Multiplicatives, 159, *a*
- 'must,' *see* Modal auxiliaries
- 'myself,' etc., *see* Reflexives

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- nascere**, past tenses of, 140, *d*, 1
ne (adv.), 126; 217, *b*
ne (pron.), 107, *c*; 124; 224, *b*
 for *ci*, 94, *a*, 1
 'never,' 216, *b*, 1; *f*
no for **non**, 216, *d*
non, 216, *a*, *b*, *f*
 pleonastic, 169, *a*, 1
 position, 216, *a*
 'not,' 216
Nouns, *see* Gender, Plural
 compound, 181; 225
 position as object of dependent
 infinitive, 167, *c*, 1
Number, *see* Plural
Numerals, *see* Cardinal, Ordinal
- o**, **uo**, in verbs, 110, *d*
Objects, *see* Conjunctive and Nouns
Old forms, *see* Archaic
 'one,' 106, *b*; 207
 'only,' 216, *b*
Open vowels, 3, *b*, *d*, *g*
Ordinal numerals, 157
 agreement, 157, *a*
 century numbers, 157, *c*
 fractions, 157, *b*
 'half,' 157, *b*, 1
 order, 157, *d*, *e*
 uses, 157, *b-d*
Orthographical peculiarities of
 verbs, 110
Orthography, *see* Variant forms
 'other,' 208, *d*
 'ought,' *see* Modal auxiliaries
- parere**, 161
Parole bisdrucchiole, 13
Parole piane, 10
Parole sdrucciole, 12
Parole tronche, 11
Participle, past, 194
 absolute construction, 195
 agreement, 194, *b*
 inversion, 194, *c*
Participle, present, 193
 English, transl. into Italian, 102;
 193, *c*
 Italian, transl. into English, 193,
 a, *b*
- Partitive**, 77; 124
Passive, 97
 English, transl. into Italian, 106, *a*
 with *andare*, *rimanere*, *venire*, 97,
 a, 1
Past absolute, 74; 140, *a*
 irregular construction of, 120, *a*
Past descriptive, 140, *c*
Past future, 79; 93; 142
Past tenses, *see* Tenses
Person in address, 65, *a-d*; 100, *c*
Personal pronouns, 65
 see Conjunctive, Disjunctive
piacere, 185
Pitch in speech, 14
Plural of nouns, 67; 176-184
 in compound nouns, 181
 defective, 182
 feminine, 177
 invariable, 176
 irregular, 179
 masculine, 178
 meaning distinguished by, 182, *d*
 in proper nouns, 180
 sg. used for, with parts of body,
 184
Poetic forms, *see* Archaic
porre, 196
Possessive with di, 78
Possessive adjective, 107
 agreement, 107, *b*
 definite article omitted, 108
 definite article used for, 109
 'its,' 107, *c*
potere, 168; 187, *b*
Prepositions, 221-227
 with adjectives, 223
 alphabetical lists of, 226
 compound, 222
 conjunctive object used with,
 222, *a*
 contracted with article, 75
 idioms with, 227
 with objects of verbs, 224, *b*
 repeated with each noun, 76
 simple, 221, *a*
 with pronouns, 221, *b*
Present indicative, *see* Tenses
Principal parts of verbs, 91; 120, *b*;
 130

INDEX

- Probability, future of, **141, a, 1**
- Pronouns, *see* Conjunctive, Demonstrative, Disjunctive, Indefinite, Interrogative, Relative
- Pronoun subject omitted, **63, a**
- Pronunciation, **2-5**
 - close vowels, **3, a, c, f**
 - consonant sounds, **5**
 - marks, **2, a; 5, e; 9**
 - meaning distinguished by, **3, e, h; 5, b, e, 4, d; 15**
 - mispronunciations, **2, b**
 - open vowels, **3, b, d, g**
 - Tuscan peculiarities of, **5, d**
 - vowel sounds, **2**
 - words for practice, **16, 17**
- qualche, 206, c, 1**
- r, euphonic, 39**
- Reciprocal verbs, **104, b**
- Reflexive pronoun, **94, c**
 - as dative of reference, **105, b, 3**
 - omitted from dependent inf., **105, b, 2**
 - for possessive, **105, c**
- Reflexive verbs, **104-106**
 - with *zd* conjunctive object, **127**
 - with prepositions, to translate English transitives, **105, b, 1**
 - uses, **104, b; 105**
 - special uses, **106**
- Regular verbs, **90**
 - construction of, **91**
- Relative pronoun
 - forms, **114**
 - uses, **189**
- Rhyme, **55**
- rimanere, 129**
- s, pronunciation of, 5, e, 1, 2**
- s impure, 59, a, 1**
- santo, forms of, 85, a**
- sapere, 132**
 - special meanings of, **132, a**
- scegliere, 211**
- sè, 136, i**
- Semivowels, **4**
- sentire, conjugation of, 111, a**
- 'shall,' see Future, dovere**
- 'should,' see Past future**
- si, see Reflexive**
- Singular for plural with parts of body, **184**
- 'so' after verbs of thinking etc., 100, e, 1; 215, b, 1**
- 'some,' 'some one,' 77; 124; 206**
- 'some more,' 208, d, 2**
- Spelling, *see* Variant forms
- stare, 166**
 - idioms with, **166, b**
 - special meanings of, **166, a**
- Subject, inversion of, **145**
- Subjunctive
 - in dependent clauses, **169**
 - in conditions, **93**
 - with *credere*, **137**
 - with impersonal verbs, **164, b**
 - after superlatives, **118**
 - after verbs of wishing, **113**
 - in independent clauses, **171**
 - future for, **169, i, note 1**
 - sequence of tenses with, **170**
- Suffixes, *see* Augmentatives, Diminutives
- Superlative, **116**
 - absolute, **116, d**
 - article omitted, **116, b**
 - preposition used with, **116, c**
 - subjunctive with, **118**
- Syllabification, **6-8**
- Syllables, division of, at end of line, **8**
- Syncope, **36**
- Tenses of the indicative, **139-142**
 - compound, **68; 96; 120**
 - future, **69; 141**
 - past absolute, **74; 140, a**
 - past descriptive, **140, c**
 - past future, **79; 93; 142**
 - past perfect, **140, d**
 - present, **139**
 - present perfect, **140, b**
 - second past perfect, **140, e**
 - sequence of, **143**
- 'than,' 115, b, c, d**
- 'there,' 217**
- Time
 - of day, **152**
 - idioms of, **151, e; 152, e; 160, d; 219, c**

AN ITALIAN GRAMMAR

- 'to,' 227, *d*, 1
- Triphthongs, 4, *c*; 53, *a*
- Truncation, 29-33
 - conditions of, 30
 - irregular, 32
 - poetic, 31, *d*
 - regular, 31, *a*, *b*, *c*
 - titles truncated, 31, *c*
- Tuscan peculiarities of pronunciation, 5, *d*
- udire, 192
- uno, 59, *b*; 150, *a*; 207
- uscire, 204
- valere, 220
- Variant forms of words, 34-40
- venire, 138
 - special uses of, 138, *a*
- Verbs, *see* Regular, Irregular, Tenses
 - agreement of
 - with subject, 144
 - with collectives, 183
 - inversion of subject, 145
 - sequence of tenses, 143; 170
- Versification, 50-57
 - blank verse, 56
 - diphthongs, 53
 - elision, 52
 - lines, 51
 - rhyme, 55
 - strophes, 57
 - syllables, 54
- vi (adv.), 126; 217, *b*, *c*
- vi (pron.), 94; 125, *b*, 1
- volere, 133
 - special meanings of, 133, *a*; 187, *a*
- Vowels, 2
- Weather, expressions of, 165
- 'what,' rendering of, 190, *a*, 5, *a*; 191; 191, *a*
- 'whatever,' 'whoever,' 209, *b*
- 'will,' *see* Future
- 'would,' *see* Past future
- 'you,' 65, *a*, *b*, *c*, *d*; 100, *c*
- z, pronunciation of, 5, *e*, 3, 4

